

New Hello!

By a group of supervisors



الصف الثالث الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني



ENGLISH



AL TALADA BOOKSTORE

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

E-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com

www.elmoasserbooks.com

15014

3rd Prep.
2022
SECOND TERM

Contents

	page
Unit 7 Our world	13
Unit 8 Protecting our planet	73
Unit 9 Build a greener world	131
Review C	189
Unit 10 To space and back	192
Unit 11 Media now and in the past	254
Unit 12 Into the future	311
Review D	369



UNIT 7

Our world

SB pages 2-11 WB pages 70-76



Objectives

• Reading :

A fact file about natural wonders of Egypt; a project about Wadi al-Hitan; Black Beauty by Anna Sewell; an information text about mongooses

• Writing :

A fact file about a natural wonder; a short article about an animal

• Listening :

A talk about habitats; a description of a natural wonder; a discussion about a story; conversations

asking for clarification

• Speaking :

Talking about animals, animal habitats and natural wonders; expressing lack of understanding and asking for clarification

• Language :

The past simple passive with and without by

• Life Skills :

Respect for diversity in nature

• العلامة (A) تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة (B) تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

استدعاء
كل وحدة تعلم

Master your term للمتابعة اليومية و الشهريه في
• قاموس المعاصر اللغوي • ملحق المعاصر للأزهر الشريف
• ملحق A week is enough

لائحة
الأسئلة

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

natural wonders	العجائب الطبيعية	oasis (n) - oases	واحة-واحات
shooting stars (n)	الشهب	national park (n)	محمية طبيعية / حديقة عامة
meteorite (n)	نيزك	coast (n)	ساحل
surround(ed)(v)	يحيط بـ	shape (n)	شكل
date palm trees	أشجار النخيل	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
destroy (ed) (v)	يهدم	volunteer (ed) (v), (n)	يتطوع - متطوع
pollute (d) (v)	يلوث	spring (n)	ينبع (مياه)
newsagent (n)	بائع صحف		

Natural habitats

coastal habitat	البيئة الساحلية	rainforest habitat	بيئة الغابة المطيرة
grassland habitat	البيئة العشبية (المراعي)	wetland habitat	بيئة الأرض الرطبة
polar habitat	البيئة القطبية	désert habitat	البيئة الصحراوية
mountain habitat	البيئة الجبلية	forest habitat	بيئة الغابات

Animals

orangutan	إنسان الغاب	polar bear	الدب القطبي
caracal	حيوان الوشق المصري (الكاركال)	frog	ضفدع
turtle	سلحفاة		

تلميح: Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضي على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية انظر نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 2 & 3 WB page 70

Nile Delta	دلتا النيل	cover (ed) (v)	يغطي
area (n)	منطقة	wet (adj)	مبتل
warm (adj)	دافئ	guess(ed)(v)	يظن
model (n)	نموذج	call(ed)(v)	يسمى - يدعى

Lesson 2

SB pages 4 & 5 WB page 71

contain (ed) (v)	يحتوى على	dive (d) (v)	يغطس
field (n)	حقل	locals = local people (n)	السكان المحليون
fact file	ملف الحقائق	appearance (n)	المظهر الخارجي
believe (d) (v)	يؤمن - يصدق	cause (d) (v)	يسبب
fence (n)	سياج - سور	magazine (n)	مجلة
robot (n)	إنسان آلي	factory (n)	مصنع
strange (adj)	غريب	tourist(n)	سائح
wind (n)	رياح	continue (d) (v)	يستمر
article (n)	مقال	bright (adj)	صافي / نقي

Famous places

أماكن مشهورة

White Desert National Park	محمية الصحراء البيضاء	Kharga Oasis	واحة الخارجة
Al Nayzak Lake	بحيرة النيزك	Gebel Elba	جبل علبة (محمية طبيعية)
Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	Wadi al-Weshwashy	وادي الوشواشي
Red Sea coast	ساحل البحر الأحمر	(في مدينة نويبع جنوب سيناء)	
		Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
find	found	found
know	knew	known
make	made	made
fall	fell	fallen
lay	laid	laid
build	built	built
cut	cut	cut
grow	grew	grown
sell	sold	sold
drive	drove	driven

تلميح هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات. وللمزيد من التعريفات (انظر قاموس المعاصر للغوى).

Study these definitions

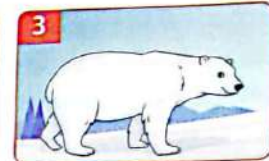
ادرس هذه التعريفات

habitat	the natural home of an animal or plant	البيئة الطبيعية
coastal habitat	these habitats are next to the sea. You often find rocks there	البيئة الساحلية
desert habitat	these habitats are large areas of land where it is always very dry, there are few plants, and a lot of sand or rocks	البيئة الصحراوية
forest habitat	these habitats are large areas of land that are covered with trees	بيئة الغابات
grassland habitat	these habitats usually have large green areas and no mountains	البيئة العشبية (المراعي)
mountain	a very high hill	جبل
polar habitat	these habitats are always cold and are often covered by ice	البيئة القطبية
rainforest habitat	these habitats have a lot of trees. They are usually very hot and rains a lot	بيئة الغابة المطيرة
wetland habitat	there is not always rain in these habitats, but there is always a lot of water	بيئة الأرض الرطبة
fill	make something full, so there is no space for any more of something	يملأ
oasis	an area in the desert where you can find water	واحة
polar bear	a large, white bear which lives on the ice of the Arctic	الدب القطبي
mountain habitat	these habitats are mostly rock and there isn't much soil for growing things	البيئة الجبلية
wonder	something that makes you feel it is beautiful or amazing	عجبة - أعجوبة

II Listening and Reading

Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 2



1. Orangutans live in rainforests and spend nearly⁽¹⁾ their entire lives⁽²⁾ in trees.
2. Sea turtles rarely⁽³⁾ leave the ocean, except to lay eggs⁽⁴⁾ in the sand.
3. The polar bear is one of the few animals that can live in a polar habitat.
4. Caracals live in grasslands because they like to hide⁽⁵⁾ in the long grass.
5. Frogs are wetland animals that are able to live on land as well as⁽⁶⁾ in water.

Check Vocabulary

- بالإضافة إلى (6) يختبئ (5) تضع البيض (4) نادراً (3) حياتهم بأكملها (2) تقريباً (1)

on Lesson 1 SB page 3

There are many different habitats around the world. Coastal habitats are along the coast⁽¹⁾ of the sea. Some animals that live in the sea, such as the sea turtle, will visit land for egg laying. Grasslands are usually found in the centre of large areas of land, between mountains and deserts. This is the natural habitat of animals such as the caracal, which like to hide in the long grass. Grasslands are found all over the world.



Check Vocabulary

- ساحل (1)

Warm, wet habitats that get the most rain, are called rainforests. Trees grow very tall here, so that they can get **sunlight**⁽²⁾. More than half of the world's animals live in the rainforest, including the orangutan.

A wetland is a place where the land is often **covered by**⁽³⁾ water, for example the Nile Delta. Wetland animals like frogs are able to live on land as well as in water.

The top and bottom of the Earth are covered by ice. These areas are known as polar habitats. The polar bear is one of the few animals that can live in the cold **temperatures**⁽⁴⁾ there.

Check Vocabulary

(2) ضوء الشمس (3) تغطي بـ (4) درجات الحرارة

on Lesson 2 SB page 5

Randa : Which place do you think should be on the list of Egypt's **natural wonders**⁽¹⁾, Nihal ?

Nihal : I would choose Wadi al-Weshwashy.

Randa : Wadi al-Weshwashy ? Where's that ?

Nihal : It's on the way to South Sinai, just 15 kilometres away from **Nuweiba**⁽²⁾. It's in the mountains of South Sinai.

Randa : I see. That's a long way away. What kind of place is it ?

Nihal : There are areas of water called **springs**⁽³⁾ there. They make small lakes high in the mountains. They are known as the Green Springs.

Randa : I've never heard of this amazing place ! Can you swim there ?

Nihal : Oh yes, Randa, it's a wonderful place for swimming. It's mostly visited by the local **Bedouin**⁽⁴⁾ people who live near there. In fact, Wadi al-Weshwashy is looked after by them. You can ask local **tour guides**⁽⁵⁾ to take you there on a day trip **otherwise**⁽⁶⁾, it's really difficult to get to. But I think that's why it's such a special place.



Check Vocabulary

(1) عجائب طبيعية (2) مدينة تويبع (3) ينابيع مياه (4) بدوي (5) مرشد سياحي (6) من ناحية أخرى

Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 4

Natural wonders⁽¹⁾ of Egypt

Egypt is visited by more than 14 million tourists every year. We have made a list of the natural wonders of Egypt that we think visitors should know about.



	(1) White Desert National Park ⁽²⁾	(2) Al Nayzak Lake ⁽³⁾	(3) Gebel Elba ⁽⁴⁾
Where ?	This huge desert starts on the western side of the River Nile and continues into Libya.	This natural lake is a three-hour drive from Hurghada.	This national park is surrounded by ⁽⁵⁾ grasslands, between the Red Sea coast and the mountains.
What ?	It contains five oases ⁽⁶⁾ , with rocks that the wind has made into strange shapes ⁽⁷⁾ .	The lake is called the Shooting Star ⁽⁸⁾ by locals, because it is believed that a piece of a star (a meteorite ⁽⁹⁾) fell into it. The lake is cut out of the rock in the shape of an eye and is filled with ⁽¹⁰⁾ the bright blue water of the Red Sea.	This national park takes its name from the mountain in the middle of it.

Check Vocabulary

(1) عجائب طبيعية (2) مدينة تويبع (3) ينابيع مياه (4) بدوي (5) مرشد سياحي (6) من ناحية أخرى (7) أشكال (8) الشهاب (9) النيزك (10) ممتلئ بـ

Why is it a "wonder" ?

The colours change at different times of day, and make them beautiful to look at.

It is described by visitors as one of the best places to **dive**⁽¹¹⁾ and swim.

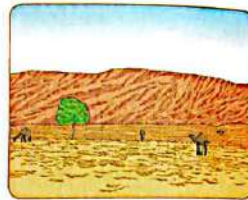
It is unusually green and home to many animals and birds. However, as it isn't easy to reach, it isn't visited often. Its **location**⁽¹²⁾ should help to **protect**⁽¹³⁾ the wildlife there.

Check Vocabulary

يغوص (11) موقع (12) يحمي (13)

on Lesson 2 WB page 71

The Kharga Oasis⁽¹⁾ is surrounded by desert, far from the River Nile. It is visited by more and more tourists every year. Hundreds of **date palm trees**⁽²⁾ are grown here. The dates are sold in many shops in the **area**⁽³⁾. You can also fill your bags with the baskets, shoes and **furniture**⁽⁴⁾ that are also made from the date palm trees. The Kharga Oasis is one of Egypt's natural wonders!



Check Vocabulary

أثاث (4) منطقة (3) نخيل التمر (2) واحة الخارجة (1)



on Lesson 2 SB page 5

There are some beautiful natural wonders in Egypt, such as the White Desert National Park and the Al Nayzak Lake. There are also some wonderful man-made wonders⁽¹⁾, such as the Great Pyramids and the Citadel of Qaitbay in Alexandria. These and other places are popular places and they are visited by thousands of tourists every year.

Check Vocabulary

عجائب من صنع البشر (1)

Egypt also has some wonders that aren't visited by many tourists, like Gebel Elba. This is because it is difficult to reach. Another wonder that is difficult to reach is the Lost City of **Thonis-Heracleion**⁽²⁾. This is because the city is now under the **Mediterranean Sea**⁽³⁾ near Alexandria. It was found by an **archaeologist**⁽⁴⁾ called Franck Goddio in 2000. Thonis-Heracleion was an important city before it was destroyed by the sea more than 1,500 years ago. When it was discovered, Franck Goddio saw lots of very old statues, temples and **monuments**⁽⁵⁾.

Another wonder is the **Great Sand Sea**⁽⁶⁾ in the south of Egypt. This is a part of the Western desert, and here you can find lots of big **sand dunes**⁽⁷⁾. Some unusual glass is also found in the Great Sand Sea. It is believed that this glass is more than 29 million years old. The glass is very special and some of it was found in **King Tutankhamen's tomb**⁽⁸⁾.

Egypt's natural and man-made wonders are among the most beautiful in the world. Have you visited any of them ?

Check Vocabulary

الآثار (5) عالم آثار (4) البحر المتوسط (3) المدينة المفقودة (ثونيس هرقلليون) (2)
مقبرة الملك توت عنخ آمون (8) كلبان رمليّة (7) بحر الرمال الأعظم (6)

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 coast (n) - shore - beach - bank

* **coast** (n) ساحل (حدود البلد تجاه البحر)

ex.: - My dad has a villa on the Northern **coast**.

- Egypt has eastern and western **coasts**.

* **shore** (n) شاطئ (الأرض التي على حافة البحر أو البحيرة)

ex.: - I like walking along the **shore**.

* **beach** (n) شاطئ (البلاج) (المنطقة الرملية بالقرب من البحر)

ex.: - My kids like playing on the **beach**.

* **bank** (n) ضفة (النهر)

ex.: - There are many cities on the **banks** of the Nile.

2 habit - habitat

* **habit** (n) عادة (شخصية)

ex.: - Basim follows healthy eating **habits**.

* **habitat (n)** موطن - بيئة
ex.: Coastal **habitats** are found along the coast of the sea.

3 **oasis - oases** واحة - واحات
ex.: I passed an **oasis** during my drive in the desert.
ex.: There are five **oases** in the Western Desert.

4 **ملحوظة**: عدم جمع الاسم بعد العدد في حالة وجود (-) في التعبيرات التالية:
a three - **hour** drive / a ten - **floor** building
a five - **pound** note / a six - **person** table

5 **local - locals** محلي
* **local (adj)**
ex.: Mrs Sara does the shopping in the **local** shops.
* **locals (n) = (local people)** السكان المحليون
ex.: The **locals** welcome the tourists in their cities.

6 **للحظ**: استخدام (the) قبل أسماء البحار - المحيطات - الأنهار - الصحاري:
- The Red Sea البحر الأحمر - The Amazon نهر الأمازون
- The Atlantic Ocean المحيط الأطلسي - The Western Desert الصحراء الغربية

7 **wonder - wander** يتساءل - يتعجب
* **wonder (ed) (v)**
ex.: I **wonder** where Manar lives.
* **wonder (n)** عجبة - أعجوبة
ex.: I think the Great Pyramid is the best **wonder** of the past.
* **wander(ed) (v)** يتجول (بلا هدف)
ex.: I don't like those who waste their time **wandering** in the city.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

get the most rain	يسقط عليها أكثر نسبة أمطار	in the shape of an eye	على شكل عين
around the Nile Delta	حول دلتا نهر النيل	fill ... with	يملأ ... بـ
lay eggs	تضع البيض	(be) surrounded by	محاط بـ
half of the world's animals	نصف حيوانات العالم	take its name from	يستمد اسمه من
at the top	في القمة	in the middle of	في منتصف

at the bottom	في القاع	make ... beautiful to look at	يجعل ... جميلاً للنظر إليه
covered by	مغطى بـ	in coastal areas	في المناطق الساحلية
make a list of	يكتب قائمة من	cut down	يقطع (الأشجار)
on the western side of	في الجانب الغربي من	live for 100 years	يعيش لمدة ١٠٠ عام
show respect for	يظهر الاحترام لـ	look like	يشبه
made into strange shapes	تحوّل إلى أشكال غريبة	far from	بعيد عن
at different times of the day	في أوقات مختلفة من اليوم	easy to reach	سهل الوصول إليه
a three-hour drive from	تبعد مسافة ٣ ساعات بالسيارة	use ... as a model	يستخدم ... كنموذج / مثال
fall into	يسقط في	along the coast	بإمتداد الساحل
(be) cut out of the rock	منحوت في الصخر	home to	موطن لـ
for the first time	لأول مرة	continue into	يستمر حتى
a piece of	قطعة من	on a day-trip	في رحلة لمدة يوم واحد
national symbol	رمز قومي	It is very difficult to ...	إنه من الصعب جداً أن ...
		put litter in	يضع القمامة في

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

- Siwa is a/an in the Western Desert.
a. valley b. island c. village d. oasis
- Al Nayzak Lake is one of Egypt natural
a. wander b. wonders c. worlds d. weather
- The garden is by a strong fence to keep the flowers safe.
a. found b. surrounded c. destroyed d. polluted
- Water come naturally to the surface from under the ground.
a. strings b. springs c. oases d. parks
- Gebel Elba is a/an park.
a. national b. theme c. amusement d. marine

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

6. **SB** I try not to the environment.
 a. protect b. pollute c. clean d. help
7. **WB** Fewer magazines are sold today by because of the internet.
 a. robots b. mechanics c. newsagents d. builders
8. **SB** Turtles eggs on the beach.
 a. lay b. lie c. try d. make
9. **WB** Remember to your bottles with water before we go to the desert.
 a. feed b. save c. fill d. grow

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. I usually find some dates under the on my uncle's farm.
 a. grassland b. grass c. palm tree d. wood
11. The water in that lake is very I can see my face.
 a. wet b. strong c. right d. bright
12. The is a wild cat of North-Africa and Asia.
 a. rhino b. caracal c. falcon d. bear

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Some animals don't change the where they live.
 a. habit b. habitat c. hobby d. hostel
14. How do we respect for nature ?
 a. show b. do c. get d. find
15. The wind has made the rock strange shapes.
 a. of b. in c. into d. for

Definitions

تعريفات

16. The habitats are always cold and are often covered by ice.
 a. desert b. polar c. forest d. coastal
17. The habitat usually has large green areas, and no mountains.
 a. rainforest b. coastal c. grassland d. polar
18. The habitat is a large area of land that is covered with trees.
 a. desert b. forest c. mountain d. oasis
19. There isn't always rain in the habitat, but there's always a lot of water.
 a. rainforest b. grassland c. polar d. wetland
20. The habitats are next to the sea.
 a. polar b. coastal c. grassland d. desert

Guessing meaning

تخمين المعنى

21. This house looks like a plane. It has a strange
 a. shape b. size c. colour d. name
22. He works for a charity for free. He is a
 a. leader b. chief c. volunteer d. manager

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

مرادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/opposite المضاد
cause سبب	reason	effect / result نتيجة
strange غريب	unusual-unfamiliar	usual / familiar عادي - مألف
local محلي	native	foreigner / stranger أجنبي
top قمة	peak	bottom قاع
protect يحمي	reserve - save	endanger يعرض للخطر
natural طبيعي	normal	unnatural غير طبيعي
huge كبير الحجم	massive-enormous	tiny صغير الحجم
bright صافي - رائق	clear	polluted ملوث
national وطني - قومي	public	non-national غير وطني

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
re -	يقوم بالفعل مرة ثانية	rewrite يعيد كتابة
un -	تعطي عكس المعنى	unusually على غير العادة
- ion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	location موقع
- ern	تكون الصفة من الاسم	western غربي
en -	تكون الفعل من الاسم	endanger يعرض للخطر
- al	تكون صفة من الاسم	natural طبيعي coastal ساحلي national قومي

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We can make an adjective from the word "coast" by adding the suffix
a. - ment b. - al c. - er d. - ly
- The synonym of the word "strange" is
a. usual b. similar c. familiar d. unusual
- The antonym of the word "cause" is
a. reason b. effect c. peak d. system
- We must protect the wildlife. The synonym of "protect" is to
a. save b. destroy c. empty d. endanger
- Locals called the lake the Shooting Star. The antonym of "locals" is
a. natives b. habitats c. foreigners d. citizens
- Adding the suffix to the word "west" makes it an adjective.
a. - ful b. - ness c. - ern d. - y
- To give the opposite meaning of the word "usually", we add the prefix
a. dis - b. un - c. in - d. il -
- There is much snow on the top of the mountain. The synonym of "top" is
a. bottom b. peak c. roof d. surface
- The antonym of "reserve" is to
a. save b. protect c. endanger d. raise
- We get the noun from the verb "locate", by adding the suffix
a. - ed b. - ment c. - er d. - ion

III Language

Remember تذكر

Usage الاستخدام

Use the verb to be + past participle (P.P.) (the present simple passive) when the action is more important than who does it, or when we don't know (or it is not important) who did something.

نستخدم صيغة المبني للمجهول في زمن المضارع البسيط عندما يكون الحدث أكثر أهمية من الفاعل الذي قام بالفعل) أو عندما لا نعرف من هو الذي قام بفعل شيء ما.

The Present Simple : Active & Passive (with by)

زمن المضارع البسيط في صيغة المبني للمعلوم والمبني للمجهول

صيغة المبني للمعلوم

I
You
We
They
اسم جمع

+ التصريف الأول

He
She
It
اسم مفرد

+ (s/es/ies) + مصدر الفعل. inf.

ex.:

- People **call** warm, wet areas a rainforest.
- More than 14 million tourists **visit** Egypt.
- I **take** this medicine every day.
- Salma **feeds** the babies.

صيغة المبني للمجهول

Subject

نائب الفاعل
(مفعول الجملة
الذي حل محل
الفاعل)

am
is
are

+ p.p.

ex.:

- Warm, wet areas **are called** a rainforest.

لاحظ أننا نستخدم (فاعل + by) عندما نريد أن نتحدث عن الشخص أو الشيء المتسبب في الحدث.

- Egypt **is visited** by more than 14 million tourists.
- This medicine **is taken** (by me) every day.
- لاحظ تحول ضمير الفاعل (I) إلى (me)
- The babies **are fed** (by Salma).

الإثبات Affirmative

النفى Negative

I
You
We
They

+ don't + inf. مصدر الفعل.

He
She
It

+ doesn't + inf. مصدر الفعل.

ex.:

- We **don't play** tennis.
- Omar **doesn't eat** sweets.

Subject

نائب الفاعل
(مفعول الجملة
الذي حل محل
الفاعل)

am
is
are

+ not + p.p.

ex.:

- Tennis **isn't played** (by us).
- Sweets **aren't eaten** (by Omar).

السؤال ب (هل) Yes / No question

Do + I
you
we
they + inf. مصدر الفعل ؟

Does + he
she
it + inf. مصدر الفعل ؟

ex.:

- Do people *speak* English in Brazil?
- Does Salma *study* maths and science?

Am
Is
Are + subject
نائب الفاعل
(مفعول الجملة
الذي حل محل
الفاعل) + p.p.?

ex.:

- Is English *spoken* (by people) in Brazil?
- Are maths and science *studied* (by Salma)?

السؤال بأداة استفهام Wh-question

Q.W أداة استفهام + do + I
you
we
they + inf. ?

Q.W أداة استفهام + does + he
she
it + inf. ?

ex.:

- Where *do* you *buy* your clothes?
- Who *cooks* lunch in your family?

Q.W أداة استفهام + am
is
are + subject
نائب الفاعل
(مفعول الجملة
الذي حل محل
الفاعل) + p.p.?

ex.:

- Where *are* your clothes *bought*?
- Who *is* lunch *cooked* by in your family?
- لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر (by) بعد الفعل
عندما يبدأ السؤال بأداة الاستفهام (Who)
في صيغة المبني للمجهول

Exercise on Language

- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. **SB** These areas are (know) as polar habitats.
2. **SB** These habitats (found) at the top and the bottom of Earth.
3. **SB** What kind of habitat is the area around the Nile Delta (call) ?
4. **WB** Fewer magazines (sell) today by newsagents because of the internet.

5. **SB** This national park (surround) by grasslands.
6. **WB** Hundreds of date palm trees (is) grown here.
7. **WB** Our beaches are visited (with) thousands of tourists every year.
8. **SB** Why isn't Gebel Elba (visiting) by more tourists ?

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

El-Moasser Exercises

9. Al Nayzak Lake (describe) by visitors as one of the best places to dive and swim.
10. In Australia, the start of spring (are) celebrated in September every year.
11. (Do) you helped daily with your homework ?
12. Football stars (admire) by all fans.
13. English is studied (of) Ahmed.
14. Many new cars are (make) by robots in factories now.
15. The park and beaches (clean) by volunteers every day.
16. Every year, eggs (lay) by turtles on the beach.
17. Litter (doesn't) put in bins by people.
18. The beach (are) protected by people who work at the park as usual.

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارف (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)

Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

مهارة القراءة

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 WB page 71 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 20 ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Determining the main idea تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية

1. The main idea of the passage is about
- | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| a. Lake Nasser | b. The Great Pyramid |
| c. Kharga Oasis | d. The River Nile |

B. Answer the following questions :

- **Making inference** عمل استنتاج
- 2. Infer why they plant palm trees and don't plant trees instead.
-
- **Summarising a text** تلخيص نص
- 3. Give a brief summary of the passage in your own words.
-

2. Writing Corner

A. Read the sentences

بحيرة النيزك Al Nayzak Lake

1. Al Nayzak Lake is a three-hour drive from Hurghada.
١. تبعد بحيرة النيزك ثلاث ساعات عن مدينة الغردقة بالسيارة.
2. The lake is cut out of the rock in the shape of an eye.
٢. البحيرة منحوتة في الصخر على شكل عين.
3. It's filled with the bright blue water of the Red Sea.
٣. البحيرة مملوءة بالمياه الزرقاء الصافية من مياه البحر الأحمر.
4. Visitors like to visit Al Nayzak Lake for diving and swimming.
٤. يحب الزوار زيارة بحيرة النيزك بغرض الغطس والسباحة.

B. Building sentences

© Read and complete :

fill - surrounded - building - built - Grasslands - tourists

1. are large green areas with no mountains.
2. Many houses are in coastal areas.
3. Our house is by trees.
4. Remember to your bottles with water.
5. Our beaches are visited by many every year.

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرس
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

- Write a review of about ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:
"Al Nayzak Lake"

مهاراة الكتابة

3. Speaking Corner

1. Talking about animal habitats and natural wonders :

الحديث عن البيئات الطبيعية للحيوانات والعجائب الطبيعية :

Questions

1. How much of Egypt is a desert habitat ?
١. كم تمثل الصحراء في مساحة مصر ؟
2. Where is Al Nayzak Lake ?
٢. أين تقع بحيرة النيزك ؟
3. What is the habitat of the orangutan ?
٣. ما هو موطن حيوان إنسان الغاب ؟

Answers

- About 95% of Egypt land is a desert.
- تمثل الصحراء حوالي ٩٥ ٪ من مساحة مصر.
- It's a three-hour drive from Hurghada.
- تبعد ثلاث ساعات عن مدينة الغردقة بالسيارة .
- The rainforest is the habitat of the orangutan.
- الغابة المطيرة هي الموطن لحيوان إنسان الغاب.

2. A fact file about Wadi al-Weshwashy :

ملف حقائق عن وادي الوشواشي :

Questions

1. Where is it ?
١. أين يقع ؟
2. What can you see ?
٢. ماذا يمكنك أن ترى هناك ؟
3. What can you do there ?
٣. ماذا يمكنك أن تفعل هناك ؟

Answers

- It is in the way to South Sinai, 15-kilometres from Nuweiba, deep into the mountains of South Sinai.
- في الطريق لجنوب سيناء على بعد ١٥ كيلومتر من مدينة نويبع. في عمق جبال جنوب سيناء.
- Three water springs which form lakes, high in the mountains.
- هناك ثلاثة ينابيع مياه والتي تكون بحيرات في أعلى الجبال.
- I can swim.
- يمكنني السباحة.

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Mazen is talking to his friend, Omar, about an English lesson they took yesterday.

Mazen : Hello, Omar, How are you ?

Omar : Hi, Mazen. (1)

Mazen : Our English lesson yesterday was great. (2)

Omar : Yes, I agree with you. Let me ask you a simple question about it.

Mazen : (3)

Mazen : (3)

Omar : (4)

Mazen : About 14 million tourists visit Egypt every year.

Omar : What places do they like to visit in Egypt ?

Mazen : (5)

Omar : That's right. They are very fantastic.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Alexandria is a coastal city. The synonym of "coastal" is
a. formal b. normal c. seasick d. seaside
2. A/An is an area in the desert where you can find water.
a. oasis b. wildlife c. forest d. incident
3. To form the adjective of the word "nation", we add the suffix
a. -al b. -y c. -able d. -er
4. This lake is bright. The antonym of the word "bright" is
a. clear b. polluted c. tiny d. usual
5. We add the prefix "....." to mean to do the verb again.
a. dis- b. un- c. im- d. re-
6. This shop only sells magazines. It is a
a. robot b. newsagent c. builder d. mechanic

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Some sandwiches (make) every morning for me.
2. Egypt (visit) every year by millions of tourists.
3. My grandfather's house (surround) by some beautiful fields.
4. My cousin (call) Mohamed.
5. My room (sometimes clean) in the morning.

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

معجبات عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of a natural wonder in Egypt"

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

fossil (n)	حفريّة	preserved (adj)	محمّوظ
species (n)	نوع / أنواع - فصائل	length (n)	طول
remote (adj)	بعيد - ناءٍ	stables (n)	استبلات (للخيول)
treat (ed) (v)	يتعامل - يعامل	carriage (n)	عربة تجرها الخيول
owner (n)	مالك	whale (n)	حوت
deforestation (n)	إزالة الغابات	lighthouse (n)	منارة

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية انظر نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 6 & 7 WB page 72

flood (n)	فيضان	repair (ed) (v)	يُصلح
southwest (n)	جنوب غربي	Apollodorus	أبولودورس (مؤرخ يوناني)
latest (adj)	الأحدث	capital (n)	عاصمة
once (adv)	ذات مرة	white rhino	وحيد القرن الأبيض
crocodile (n)	تمساح	publish (ed) (v)	ينشر
ingredients (n)	مكونات - عناصر	report (n)	تقرير
situation (n)	موقف - وضع	remove (d) (v)	يزيل
emperor (n)	إمبراطور	danger (n)	خطر
builder (n)	عامل بناء	Greek (n / adj)	اللغة اليونانية - يوناني (الجنسية)
special (adj)	خاص - مميز	pipes (n)	أنابيب
family (n)	فصيلة - عائلة	statue (n)	تمثال
jar (n)	برطمان - إبريق	including (adj)	متضمن - شامل
roof (n)	سقف	expect (ed) (v)	يتوقع

Lesson 4

SB page 8 WB page 73

pull (ed) (v)
park (ed) (v), (n)يسحب - يجر
بركن / حديقة عامةbuffalo (n)
work (n)جاموسة
عمل

Famous cities & places

Borneo	بورنيو (جزيرة في آسيا)	India	دولة الهند
Petra	مدينة بترا (في الأردن)	Rome	مدينة روما
the Sphinx	أبو الهول (في الجيزة)	the Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة
Damascus	مدينة دمشق	the Great Wall of China	سور الصين العظيم
Fayum Depression	منخفض الفيوم	Pantheon	البانثيون (معبد في روما)
UNESCO World Heritage Site	موقع التراث العالمي لمنظمة اليونسكو	Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباي
the Pyramids	الأهرامات	Wadi al-Hitan	وادي الحيتان
		"the Valley of the Whales"	

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
become يصبح	became	become
lose يخسر - يفقد	lost	lost
take يأخذ	took	taken
swim يسبح	swam	swum
choose يختار	chose	chosen
burn يحرق / يحترق	burned / burnt	burned / burnt
stand يقف	stood	stood
understand يفهم	understood	understood

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات (للمزيد من التعريفات انظر قاموس المعاصر اللغوي).

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

species	a group of animals or plants of the same kind	نوع / سلالة
deforestation	when all the trees in an area are cut down	إزالة الغابات

carriage	something that people travel in that is pulled by a horse عربة تجرها الخيول
owner	the owner of an animal is the person who has bought it مالك
stable	a building where people keep horses استبلات (خيول)
treat	if you treat someone well, you are nice to them يتعامل - يعامل
destroy	damage something so badly that you cannot repair it يهدم
endangered	put in a dangerous situation معرض للخطر

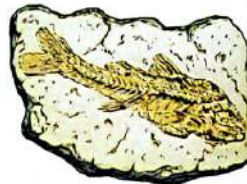
II Reading and Listening

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 6

Fossils⁽¹⁾ of the desert

The **Fayum Depression**⁽²⁾ is an area of desert, **southwest**⁽³⁾ of Cairo. Many ancient fossils are often found here, but the **species**⁽⁴⁾ of animal fossil might **surprise**⁽⁵⁾ you : crocodiles, turtles and whales. The most amazing fossils are the whale fossils. At **Wadi al-Hitan**⁽⁶⁾, "The Valley of the Whales", hundreds of fossils of ancient whales were found by scientists in 1902. The scientists were surprised to find out that these whales had legs, so they once walked on land.



In 2005, the fossils at Wadi al-Hitan were studied by a team of international scientists. The fossils were **preserved**⁽⁷⁾ really well and some of them were 21 metres in **length**⁽⁸⁾. It was discovered that these whales **belong to**⁽⁹⁾ the same family of animals as camels and giraffes.



Check Vocabulary

(1) حفريات	(2) منخفض الفيوم	(3) جنوب غرب	(4) أنواع	(5) يدهش - يفاجئ
(6) وادي الحيتان	(7) محفوظ	(8) طول	(9) ينتمي إلى	

The fossils are so important that Wadi al-Hitan was called a **UNESCO World Heritage Site**⁽¹⁰⁾ in 2005. However, it is very **remote**⁽¹¹⁾. As a result, it is only visited by about 1,000 people a year.

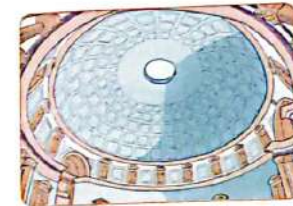
Today, Egyptian scientists are studying some of the fossils at Mansoura University using some of the **latest**⁽¹²⁾ technology, and they hope to learn more about these amazing whales of the desert.

Check Vocabulary

(10) موقع التراث العالمي لمنظمة اليونسكو	(11) بعيد	(12) الأحدث
--	-----------	-------------

on Lesson 3 WB page 72

The first **Pantheon**⁽¹⁾ in Rome was built in around 27 BCE. However, it was burnt down by a fire in around 80 CE. The building that we know today was built by **Emperor Hadrian**⁽²⁾ in around 120 CE. It was designed with the help of a famous **Greek**⁽³⁾ builder, who was called **Apollodorus of Damascus**⁽⁴⁾. Perhaps the most amazing part of the building is a large hole in the roof. The hole was used to give the building light. Sometimes, rain falls through the hole, too. However, today, water is taken away by special **pipes**⁽⁵⁾ in the floor.



Check Vocabulary

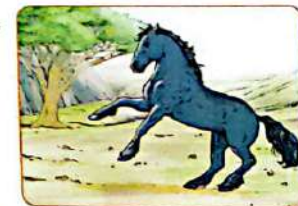
(1) أنابيب	(2) أبولودوروس الدمشقي	(3) يوناني (الجنسية)	(4) الإمبراطور هادريان	(5) الباتنيون (معيد في روما)
------------	------------------------	----------------------	------------------------	------------------------------

on Lesson 4 SB page 8

Black Beauty

By Anna Sewall

The next winter was very hard for all the horses. The weather was **terrible**⁽¹⁾. There was rain every day and it was often **windy**⁽²⁾. Some of the drivers were very poor, so their horses worked all night. Other horses did not have **stables**⁽³⁾. They **stayed out**⁽⁴⁾ all night and got wet and cold. I was **lucky**⁽⁵⁾ because Jerry was a kind **owner**⁽⁶⁾ and I was always put in a warm stable.



Check Vocabulary

(1) فظيع - شنيع	(2) عاصف	(3) استبلات (للخيول)	(4) يبقى بالخارج	(5) محظوظ	(6) مالك
-----------------	----------	----------------------	------------------	-----------	----------

One day Jerry and I **waited for**⁽⁷⁾ work next to a park. I watched as an old **carriage**⁽⁸⁾ drove up next to us. It was pulled by a horse who was thin and looked tired. I looked again and saw that it was my old friend, Ginger. She looked terrible.

We talked for a short time. Ginger was very unhappy. She had had many different homes and worked very hard. All her owners were unkind to her and **treated**⁽⁹⁾ her badly.

"You're my only friend", Ginger told me before her owner drove her away. I understood that I had a much better life than many other horses.

Check Vocabulary

يعامل (9) عربة تجرها الخيول (8) ينتظر لأجل (7)

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 7

A list of the new **Seven Wonders of the World**⁽¹⁾ was made in 2007. The city of **Petra**⁽²⁾ in Jordan was named as one of them. The Taj Mahal in India is also in the list. This beautiful monument was built by Shah Jahan, to remember his **wife**⁽³⁾, Mumtaz Mahal. Another new wonder of the world is **the Great Wall of China**⁽⁴⁾. Not many people know that the wall was built with an unusual ingredient⁽⁵⁾ – rice!



Check Vocabulary

مركب - مُكوّن (5) سور الصين العظيم (4) زوجة (3) مدينة بئرا (في الأردن) (2) عجائب الدنيا السبع (1)

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 species

نوع - فصيلة (حيوان - نبات)

تشير إلى مجموعة من (النباتات أو الحيوانات) التي تمتلك صفات مشتركة أو نوع واحد وتعامل كجمع أو مفرد : (ومفردتها ليس specie)

ex.: - There are many **species** of hares and rabbits.

2 in danger / endanger

* **in danger**

ex.: - Lions are **in danger** of dying out.

* **endanger**

ex.: - Pollution **endangers** life on Earth.

في خطر

يهدد بالخطر

3 international / national

* **international**

ex.: - The world Cup is an **international** event.

* **national**

ex.: - All Egyptians are happy about our football **national** team.

* لاحظ الفرق بين :

دولي (بين بعض الدول)

قومي / أهلي (على مستوى الدولة)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

in length	في الطول	as a result	كنتيجة
hope to	يأمل أن - يتمنى أن	the seven wonders of the world	عجائب الدنيا السبع
along the road	على امتداد الطريق	stay out	يظل / يمتك بالخارج
hard for	صعب لـ	drive up	يصل إلى (بالعربة)
wait for	ينتظر	get wet	يبتل
look tired	يبدو متعباً	talk for a short time	يتحدث لفترة قصيرة
look terrible	يبدو مروّع	drive away	يقود ... بعيداً
work very hard	يعمل بجِد للغاية	work for	يعمل لصالح / لأجل
have much better life	يعيش حياة أفضل للغاية	travel by	ينتقل / يسافر بـ (وسيلة مواصلات)
give some advice	يقدم بعض النصائح	burn down by	يحترق بجانب / بواسطة
walk on land	يمشي على الأرض	take away by	ينقل بعيداً بواسطة
belong to	يخص / ينتمي إلى		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. There are amazing of dinosaurs in the Science Museum.
a. products b. fossils c. pipes d. lighthouses

2. Fish are in special boxes to keep them fresh.
a. treated b. repaired c. preserved d. damaged
3. The carpenter measures the and width of the door.
a. hole b. length c. depth d. latest
4. The is the biggest sea animal in the world.
a. dolphin b. octopus c. jellyfish d. whale

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

5. **SB** In 2005, the fossils at Wadi al-Hitan were studied by a team of international
a. scientists b. pilots c. chemists d. firefighters
6. **WB** This car should not be here.
a. preserved b. parked c. published d. sailed
7. **SB** They a report about animals and plants that are in danger.
a. discovered b. published c. built d. produced

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. In the past, people used horses to the carriages.
a. push b. pull c. remove d. repair
9. **A** : Can you tell me the main of koshari ? **B** : Rice and pasta.
a. causes b. reasons c. products d. ingredients
10. Rome is the of Italy.
a. city b. capital c. town d. area

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

11. Can you me some advice about how we should treat animals ?
a. make b. do c. give d. stay
12. This car belongs my dad.
a. to b. for c. of d. about
13. Thieves people's lives.
a. in danger b. danger c. endanger d. dangerous

Definitions

تعريفات

14. A is something that people travel in that is pulled by a horse.
a. car b. carriage c. ferry d. tractor

15. A is a building where horses sleep.
a. stable b. cave c. hut d. flat
16. **WB** When all the trees in an area are cut down, we call this
a. deforestation b. recycling c. alliteration d. transformation
17. **WB** is a group of animals or plants of the same kind.
a. Spaces b. Species c. Spices d. Slices

تخمين المعنى

Guessing meaning

18. The of the restaurant is Mr Ali, he bought it last week.
a. customer b. waiter c. cashier d. owner
19. If you someone well, you're nice to them.
a. create b. treat c. hit d. fight
20. If something is , it's important for some particular reason.
a. strange b. usual c. special d. normal

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/Opposite المضاد
destroy يدمر	damage	save ينقذ
unkind قاسي	cruel	kind طيب
hard صعب	difficult	easy سهل
terrible فظيع - شنيع	very bad - awful	amazing مدهش
warm دافئ	quite hot	cool معتدل البرودة
wet مبتل	rainy	dry جاف
surprise يدهش - يفاجئ	amaze	expect يتوقع
find out يكتشف	discover	hide - ignore يخفي - يتجاهل
in danger معرض للخطر	endangered - unsafe	safe - protected آمن - محمي
famous مشهور	popular	unknown غير معروف
lucky محظوظ	fortunate	unpopular غير مشهور
ancient قديم - عتيق	old	unlucky غير محظوظ
		modern حديث

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
-ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	quickly بسرعة
un-	تعطي عكس المعنى	unkind unhappy قاسي حزين - غير سعيد
-y	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	lucky healthy windy rainy محبوظ صحي عاصف ممطر
-ing	تحول الصفة من الفعل	amazing including مدهش متضمن - شامل

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Naguib Mahfouz is a famous writer. The antonym of "famous" is
a. known b. popular c. unknown d. unusual
- We use the prefix to get the opposite of "kind".
a. im- b. il- c. en- d. un-
- To get the adjective from the noun "luck", we use the suffix
a. -ed b. -ing c. -y d. -able
- The film was terrible. The antonym of the word "terrible" is
a. very bad b. amazing c. easy d. difficult
- The scientist found out many facts about whales. The synonym of "found out" is
a. invented b. invited c. discovered d. covered
- Yesterday, it was quite hot. The synonym of "quite hot" is
a. cool b. wet c. dry d. warm

III Language

Remember تذكر

The Past Simple : Active & Passive (Without by)
زمن الماضي البسيط في صيغة المبني للمعلوم والمبني للمجهول

Usage الاستخدام

Use was / were + P.P. (the past simple passive) when a past action is more important than who did it, or when we do not know (or it is not important) who did something.

نستخدم صيغة المبني للمجهول في زمن الماضي البسيط عندما يكون الحدث الماضي أكثر أهمية من الذي قام بالفعل أو عندما لا نعرف من قام بالفعل.

صيغة المبني للمعلوم للماضي البسيط

Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل
الفاعل
ex.:
- Mr Ahmed **ate** a sandwich.
- Reham **watered** the flowers.

Affirmative
الإثبات

Negative
النفي

Yes / No question
السؤال (هل)

Subject + didn't + inf. مصدر الفعل
الفاعل
ex.:
- I **didn't wash** the car.
- The farmer **didn't feed** the animals.

Did + subject + inf. مصدر الفعل
الفاعل
ex.:
- **Did** Ali **buy** the newspapers?
- **Did** Yara **drink** juice?

صيغة المبني للمجهول للماضي البسيط

Subject + was / were + p.p.
نائب الفاعل
ex.:
- A sandwich **was eaten** by Mr Ahmed.
- The flowers **were watered** (by Reham).

Subject + was / were + not + p.p.
نائب الفاعل
ex.:
- The car **wasn't washed** (by me).
- The animals **weren't fed** (by the farmer).

Was / Were + subject + p.p.
نائب الفاعل
ex.:
- **Were** the newspapers **bought** (by Ali)?
- **Was** juice **drunk** (by Yara) ?

Wh-question
السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q.W + did + subject + inf. ?
أداة استفهام + الفاعل + الفعل

- ex.:
- Where **did** Esraa **find** the keys?
 - Who **broke** this window?

Q.W + was + subject + p.p.
أداة استفهام + نائب الفاعل + المفعول

- ex.:
- Where **were** the keys **found** (by Esraa)?
 - Who **was** this window **broken** (by)?
- النظر عندما يبدأ السؤال بأداة الاستفهام (Who) نضيف حرف الجر (by) بعد الفعل في جملة المبنى للمجهول

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB and WB Exercises

1. **SB** A report about animals and plants that are in danger was (publish).
2. **SB** Better news (were) shared by another report.
3. **WB** These pictures were (painting) by her daughters.
4. **WB** The first Pantheon in Rome (built) in around 27 BCE.
5. **WB** We don't know how the stones for the Pyramids (carried) to Giza.
6. **SB** Long ago, camels (call) ships of the desert by some people.
7. **SB** We don't know when Petra (did) named one of the new seven wonders of the world.
8. **SB** Because of last week's floods in India, a lot of houses (destroyed).
9. **SB** In the last 100 years, we (lose) more than 800 species.
10. **WB** The Cairo Tower (is) designed by Naoum Shebib in 1956

El-Moasser Exercises

11. In the past, fish (caught) every day.
12. What unusual material was (using) in the building of the Great Wall of China ?
13. How (did) fish preserved in the past ?
14. A tree was planted (with) the farmer.
15. The first Olympic Games were (holding) in 776 BC.
16. The telephone (invented) by Graham Bell.

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.
للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)
Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

مهاراة القراءة

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 3 SB page 6 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 36 ثم قم بالتدرب على اجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- **Determining the main idea** تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية
1. The main idea of the passage is about
a. deforestation b. earthquakes c. fossils d. recycling

B. Answer the following questions :

- **Making inference** عمل استنتاج
2. Infer why they called this area the Valley of the Whales.
.....
- **Summarising a text** تلخيص نص
3. Give a brief summary of the first paragraph of the passage in your own words.
.....

2. Writing Corner

مهاراة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على تنمية مهارة الكتابة.

1. The Fayum Depression is an area of desert southwest of Cairo.
١. منخفض الفيوم هو منطقة صحراوية في جنوب غرب القاهرة.
2. Many ancient fossils are often found in the Fayum Depression.
٢. يتم العثور على العديد من الحفريات القديمة في منخفض الفيوم.
3. The most amazing fossils are the whale fossils at Wadi al-Hitan.
٣. تعد حفريات الحيتان من أكثر الحفريات جمالاً في وادي الحيتان.
4. The scientists were surprised to find out that these whales had legs.
٤. انددهش العلماء عندما اكتشفوا أن هذه الحيتان تمتلك أقدام.
5. Today, Egyptian scientists are studying some of the fossils using some of the latest technology.
٥. يقوم العلماء المصريين الآن بدراسة بعض الحفريات باستخدام بعض تقنيات التكنولوجيا الحديثة.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete :

treats - owner - deforestation - made - making - stable

1. Cutting down trees in an area is called
2. The Sphinx was like a lion with a person's head.
3. There are many beautiful horses in the
4. A : Who is the of this building ? - B : Mr Ayman.
5. My grandfather is a kind man, he us well.

تدريب
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين
ثم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

- Write a review of about ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :
"Deforestation"

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

1. Discussion about working animals :

أ. مناقشة عن الحيوانات العاملة :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. What do you think will happen next to Ginger ? أ. ماذا تعتقد سوف يحدث لجنجر فيما بعد ؟	- I think Ginger will be very sick. - اعتقد انها سوف تمرض بشدة.
2. What other animals are used to do work for us ? ب. ما هي الحيوانات الأخرى التي اعتادت أن تقوم بأعمال لأجلنا ؟	- I think buffalos, cows and camels. - اعتقد إنها الجاموس والبقرة والجمال.
3. How should you treat animals that work for you ? ج. كيف ينبغي معاملة الحيوانات التي تقوم بأعمال لأجلكم ؟	- We should treat them kindly. - ينبغي علينا معاملة هذه الحيوانات بعطف.

2. Asking and answering questions about important buildings :

أ. توجيه أسئلة والإجابة عليها عن مبان هامة :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. When was the Cairo Tower built ? أ. متى بني برج القاهرة ؟	- It was built between 1956 and 1961. - تم بناؤه بين عامي ١٩٥٦ و ١٩٦١.
2. Who was the Cairo Tower built by ? ب. من قام ببناء برج القاهرة ؟	- It was built by Naoum Shebib. - بني بواسطة المهندس نعوم شبيب.

3. Discussion about depressions :

أ. مناقشة عن المنخفضات :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. What is a depression ? أ. ما هو المنخفض ؟	- A depression is land that is below the surrounding area. - المنخفض هو الأرض التي تقع تحت المنطقة المحيطة بها.
2. Does it have the same weather as the desert ? Why ? ب. هل المنخفض به نفس طقس الصحراء ؟ ولماذا ؟	- No, it doesn't always have the same weather because it is lower. - لا، لا يكون دائمًا به نفس الطقس لأنه أكثر انخفاضًا.

Self Assessment Activity

قيم نفسك.

- ليتعرف الطالب على مدى إتقانه لأهداف الوحدة.
- في حالة عدم اجتيازه يتم الانتقال إلى صفحة Review لمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى.



1 Finish the following dialogue :

Ayman is talking to waleed about Rome.

Ayman : Which city do you like most, waleed ?

Waleed : Rome. (1)

Ayman : Yes, I do know Rome. (2)

Waleed : No, I have'nt, but I hope to visit it oneday.

Ayman : How many people live in Rome ?

Waleed : (3)

Ayman : Oh ! 2.7 million people ! What's it famous for ?

Waleed : (4)

Ayman : Who built the colosseum ?

Waleed : (5) but I think the Emperor Vespasian built it in 72 AD.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

Were - Was - ingredients - owner - customer - Unfortunately

Yesterday, I had lunch in a restaurant. I liked the special soup and I asked the waiter about its (1) I often eat in this restaurant, so I'm popular in it. (2), when I wanted to pay for the food, I didn't find any money in my pocket. (3) my money stolen or I forgot it at home ? I didn't know, but I promised the restaurant (4) to come back tomorrow and pay.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An is something that people travel in, that is pulled by a horse.
a. aeroplane b. ferry c. ship d. carriage
2. Mohamed Salah is a popular football player. The synonym of the word "popular" is " ".
a. unknown b. famous c. soft d. hard
3. Plastic damages the wildlife. The antonym of "damages" is
a. destroys b. repeats c. saves d. hurts
4. To get the adjective from the noun "health", we use the suffix
a. -ing b. -ed c. -y d. -ly
5. We use the prefix to get the antonym of "happy".
a. dis- b. un- c. en- d. im-
6. Omar is nice to Ali. This means he him well.
a. treats b. studies c. ignores d. surprises

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

عبارات عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A short story you have read recently".

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

heading (n)	عنوان رئيسي	personification (n)	تشخيص - تجسيد
confused (adj)	متحير - مرتبك	fur (n)	فراء
tongue - twister (n)	كلمة صعبة النطق	aim (n)	هدف
skill (n)	مهارة	label (led) (v), (n)	يلصق بطاقة - بطاقة معلومات
lifestyle (n)	أسلوب حياة	wild (n/ adj)	البرية - بري
appearance (n)	مظهر خارجي	poem (n)	قصيدة شعرية
roundabout (n)	ممر دائري - دوران	product (n)	منتج

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 9 WB page 74

discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	expressions (n)	تعبيرات
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	topic (n)	موضوع
letter (n)	حرف - خطاب	clarification (n)	توضيح - إيضاح
shell (n)	صدفة	repeat (ed) (v)	يكرر - يردد
humans (n)	البشر	traffic lights	إشارات المرور
turning (n)	منعطف	habit (n)	عادة

Lesson 6

SB page 10 WB page 75

caracal (n)	حيوان الوشق المصري (الكاركال)	kill (ed) (v)	يقتل
research (ed) (v), (n)	يبحث - بحث	mongoose (n)	النمس
several (adj)	عديد	avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب
control (led) (v)	يتحكم	loss (n)	فقدان - خسارة
population (n)	تعداد السكان	tail (n)	ذيل
volcano (n)	بركان	alone (adv)	وحيد - منعزل
forest (n)	غابة	role (n)	دور

form (ed) (v)	يُشكّل - يُكوّن	invent(ed) (v)	يخترع
heat (n)	حرارة	postman (n)	ساعي البريد
hunt (ed) (v)	يصاد	World Cup (n)	كأس العالم
the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط	seeds (n)	بذور
flood water (n)	مياه الفيضان	the Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط
fires (n)	حرائق	introduction (n)	مقدمة

Continents, countries & islands

قارات ودول وجزر

Africa	قارة أفريقيا	Hawaii	جزيرة هاواي
Asia	قارة آسيا	Caribbean	جزر الكاريبي
Europe	قارة أوروبا	Poland	دولة بولندا
Japan	دولة اليابان		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
mean يعني - يقصد	meant	meant
hear يسمع	heard	heard
understand يفهم	understood	understood
fight يتعارك - يتشاجر	fought	fought
bite يعض	bit	bitten
catch يصاد	caught	caught
write يكتب	wrote	written
break يكسر	broke	broken
teach يُعلم	taught	taught
give يعطي	gave	given
say يقول	said	said
sell يبيع	sold	sold

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.
 وللمزيد من التعريفات (انظر قاموس المعاصر اللغوي).

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

confused	unable to understand something clearly	متحير - مرتبك
caracal	a wild cat with long legs and big ears that lives in Africa and Asia	حيوان الوشق المصرى (الكاركال)
fur	the thick hair that covers the body of an animal	فراء
label	a word or phrase to explain things in a picture, diagram, etc.	ملصق توضيحي
mongoose	a small animal with a long body and tail, which lives in Africa and Asia	حيوان النمى
lifestyle	the way in which a person lives	أسلوب حياة

II Listening and Reading

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 9

Samir : I like the way the writer uses personification⁽¹⁾ to describe the horses.

Taha : Personification ? I'm sorry, but I'm not sure I understand what you mean by that.

Samir : I mean that she makes the horses sound like people.

Taha : Could you give me an example ?

Samir : Yes, for example, the writer calls the horses 'I' or 'she' not 'it', and she talks about the horses' feelings⁽²⁾. I think the writer is trying to make you feel that you and the horses are not very different species⁽³⁾.

Taha : When you say 'not very different species', do you mean the writer thinks that people and horses are the same ?

Samir : Yes. Humans⁽⁴⁾ and horses are on the same level. Do you see what I mean ?

Taha : No, I'm still confused⁽⁵⁾. Could you say that another way ?

Samir : Ok. I feel that personification makes us understand the horses better. We can all feel happy or sad.

Taha : Ah, I see. I understand that now.



Check Vocabulary

مرتبك - متحير (5) | البشر (4) | فصائل - أنواع (3) | مشاعر (2) | تجسيد - تشخيص (1)

on Lesson 5 SB page 9

Narrator : Conversation 1

Man 1 : So, cross the road at the traffic lights⁽¹⁾, and then, just before the bridge, you'll get to a roundabout⁽²⁾.

Man 2 : I'm sorry, but I'm not sure what you mean by roundabout ?

Man 1 : Oh, you know, it's a circle in the road where there are four roads meet. Take the second road, in other words, go straight ahead⁽³⁾.



Man 2 : Sorry. I'm still confused. Could you say that in another way ? Do I take the second road, or go straight ahead ?

Man 1 : Sorry, what I mean is, don't take the first turning⁽⁴⁾, take the second one, which is also the road straight ahead of you.

Narrator : Conversation 2

Randa : This is an amazing app⁽⁵⁾ ! It can name any plant you want to find out about. You just need to take a photo of it.

Nihal : I'm sorry, but I'm not sure I understand what you mean. Could you say it another way ?

Randa : OK, let's say you see a plant that you want to know the name of. You just take a photo of it on your phone, and then choose find, and the app will tell you the name of the plant.

Narrator : Conversation 3

Boy 1 : The problem isn't just that animals' habitats are disappearing⁽⁶⁾. The problem is they are disappearing because of our bad habits⁽⁷⁾ !

Boy 2 : When you say our bad habits, do you mean what we are doing ?

Boy 1 : Yes. I mean that it's because we want certain products⁽⁸⁾ so badly, we are prepared to destroy our environment to get them.

Boy 2 : Can you give me an example ?

Boy 1 : We are destroying forests to build more roads, for example.

Check Vocabulary

(1) إشارات المرور	(2) ممر دائري - دوران	(3) سر بشكل مستقيم	(4) منعطف / دوران
(5) تطبيق (على الهاتف)	(6) تختفى	(7) عادات	(8) منتجات

Reading

on Lesson 5 WB page 74

Hania : The sentence in this poem⁽¹⁾ is a tongue-twister⁽²⁾.

Malak : Tongue-twister ? I'm sorry, but I'm not sure I understand what you mean⁽³⁾ by that.

Hania : I mean that it is very difficult to say.

Malak : Could you give me an example ?

Hania : Yes, I'll read it : She sells sea shells⁽⁴⁾ on the sea shore.

Malak : So, when you say it's a tongue-twister, do you mean the letters in the words are all the same ?

Hania : They aren't all the same, but they are hard to read.

Malak : No, I'm still confused⁽⁵⁾. Could you say that another way ?

Hania : OK. In a tongue-twister, the words are hard to say together quickly.

Malak : Ah, I see⁽⁶⁾. I understand that now.



Check Vocabulary

(1) قصيدة (2) كلمة صعبة النطق (3) يعنى - يقصد (4) صدق (5) متحير - مرتبك (6) أفهم ما تعنيه

on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Mongoose

Introduction

There are about 30 different species of mongooses⁽¹⁾ in the world.

Appearance

A mongoose has a long body, with short legs and a long tail. Their bodies are covered by thick fur⁽²⁾.



Check Vocabulary

(1) النمس (2) فراء

Skills

Mongoose can see and hear very well, which helps them to find food and avoid⁽³⁾ danger. Mongooses are famous for fighting snakes. They are able to kill snakes by biting them.

Habitat

The mongoose is found in Africa, Asia and parts of Europe. It lives in forests, wetlands or grasslands, under the ground or rocks. In the 1800s, mongooses were taken to live in several⁽⁴⁾ islands in Hawaii and the Caribbean to control the rat populations⁽⁵⁾ there. However, they are endangered, mainly because of deforestation and loss⁽⁶⁾ of habitat.

Mongoose eat small animals such as rats, birds, frogs⁽⁷⁾ and lizards⁽⁸⁾ and also seeds⁽⁹⁾, eggs and nuts⁽¹⁰⁾.

Lifestyle

Mongoose are active⁽¹¹⁾ during the day and sleep at night. Although some live alone, many live in large groups of up to 50, where each one has a role to play⁽¹²⁾: some hunt⁽¹³⁾ and others look after⁽¹⁴⁾ the young. They can live for up to ten years in the wild⁽¹⁵⁾.

Check Vocabulary

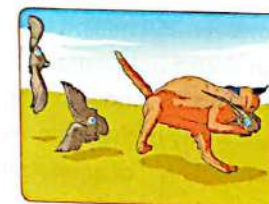
(3) يتجنب (4) عديد (5) تعداد (6) خسارة (7) ضفادع (8) سحالي (9) بذور
(10) مكسرات (11) نشيط (12) لديه دور يقوم به (13) يصطاد (14) يرعى (15) البرية

on Lesson 6 WB page 75

Caracals

Appearance

The caracal⁽¹⁾ is a beautiful gold-coloured wild cat with large ears. Caracals are not very big-they grow to about 90 centimetres long.



Check Vocabulary

(1) حيوان الوشق المصرى

Skills

Caracals' large ears help them to hear very well. They also have a lot of fur on their feet, which makes it difficult for other animals to hear them when they are trying to **catch**⁽²⁾ them. Caracals can also jump very high and are able to **climb**⁽³⁾ trees.

Habitat

Caracals are found in many places in Africa and **the Middle East**⁽⁴⁾. They live in deserts, but also in grasslands and forests.

Food

Caracals catch and eat many animals, including mongooses, birds and rabbits.

Lifestyle

Caracals are usually active during the night and most live **alone**⁽⁵⁾. Mother caracals often live in holes that are made by other animals. Caracals usually have between three and six babies (called **kittens**⁽⁶⁾), who stay with their mother for about ten months. Caracals can live for up to 12 years in the wild.

Check Vocabulary

صغار الوشق (6) بمفرده (5) الشرق الأوسط (4) يتسلق (3) يصطاد (2)

on Lesson 7 SB page 11

Much of the south of England is a **coastal**⁽¹⁾ habitat next to the sea. Today, **sheep**⁽²⁾ and cows enjoy the green grasslands where they can eat. However, 250 million years ago, part of this coast was very different. It was then a hot, wetland habitat where animals like crocodiles lived in the wet land. We know this because hundreds of **species**⁽³⁾ are often found here. Many of them are very well **preserved**⁽⁴⁾, so scientists can study many **fossils**⁽⁵⁾ of animals from long ago.

Check Vocabulary

حفريات (5) محفوظة (4) أنواع (3) الأغنام (2) ساحلى (1)

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 the + صفة

تستخدم the أمام الصفة لكي تصبح اسم جمع

the young الشباب

the poor الفقراء

the old كبار السن

the rich الأغنياء

ex.: The young are the hope of any nation.

2 lose - loss

* lose - lost - lost (v)

يخسر - يفقد

ex.: Rahma **lost** her bag in the bus.

* loss (n)

خسارة

ex.: It was a great **loss** when he damaged his new mobile.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

ask for direction	get from to	يذهب / يصل من .. إلى ...
يسأل عن الاتجاهات (للوصول لمكان)	famous for	مشهور بـ
give directions	under the ground	تحت الأرض
يعطي الاتجاهات (للوصول لمكان)	during the day	أثناء النهار
say that another way	a group of up to 50	مجموعة تصل إلى 50
أقول هذا بطريقة أخرى	live for up to	يعيش لمدة تصل إلى
I see.	informational text	نص يعطي معلومات
أفهم ما تقصد.	for much of the year	لمعظم السنة
look after	as well as	بالإضافة إلى
يعتني بـ	give clarification	يوضح - يقدم توضيح
has a role to play		
لديه دور يقوم به		
gold-coloured		
لونه ذهبي		
desert animals		
حيوانات صحراوية		
give an example		
يعطي مثال		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1. He was when he met my twin brother. He couldn't recognise me.
a. active b. confused c. angry d. bored

2. Mongoose's body is covered with thick to keep it warm.
a. feather b. air c. fur d. leather

3. Her is to become a nuclear scientist in the future.
a. style b. aim c. label d. skill

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

4. **SB** Mongooses can see and hear well, which helps them to danger.
a. protect b. keep c. meet d. avoid

5. **SB** Although some of the mongooses live, many live in large groups.
a. other b. alone c. together d. both

6. **WB** The letter was delivered by the this morning.
a. port b. past c. postman d. post office

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. The manager the work in the office. He tells everyone what to do.
a. delivers b. organises c. loses d. hides

8. Mongooses are able to snakes by biting them.
a. feed b. kill c. feel d. escape

9. Farmers found suitable soil to plant the new
a. souls b. seals c. seeds d. sails

10. The of Egypt is growing; many new babies are born every hour.
a. industry b. population c. pollution d. seeds

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

11. When Basim has a problem, he asks help.
a. about b. for c. to d. from

12. Egypt is famous its mild weather.
a. to b. about c. from d. for

13. Everyone should a role to play in developing his country.
a. be b. do c. make d. have

Definitions

تعريفات

14. The is a wild cat with long legs and big ears that lives in Africa and Asia.
a. pig b. caracal c. bear d. eagle

15. is the thick hair that covers the body of an animal.
a. Feather b. Fur c. Skin d. Leather

16. A is a word or phrase to explain things in a picture, diagram, etc.
a. lesson b. lab c. label d. line

17. means the way in which a person lives.
a. Appearance b. Lifestyle c. Skill d. Research

Guessing the meaning

18. My uncle always starts his email with "Dear Captain".
That's a funny
a. definition b. introduction c. conclusion d. summary

19. Volcanoes make an island in the sea. The word "make" here can be replaced by
a. form b. find c. put d. have

20. Sport is very useful for your health. The word "useful" means
a. bad b. fast c. high d. good

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
active نشيط	energetic-lively	inactive - lazy غير نشيط - كسول
thick سميك	heavy	thin رفيع - دقيق
ill مريض	sick	well بصحة جيدة
alone بمفرده	single - solo	accompanied مصاحب
organise ينظم - يرتب	arrange	disarrange يبعثر
suitable مناسب	appropriate	unsuitable غير مناسب
deliver يُسلم - يوصل	carry / bring	take / receive يأخذ / يستلم
useful مفيد	good	useless غير مفيد
form يكون	make	destroy / damage يدمر / يحطم

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
- able	تحوّل الفعل إلى صفة	suitable مناسب - ملائم
- al	تكوّن الصفة من الاسم	informational إعلامي - إخباري

un -	يعطى عكس المعنى	unable	غير قادر
- ance	تكون الاسم من الفعل	appearance	المظهر الخارجى
- ion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	invention	اختراع
- ly	يكون الظرف من الصفة	mainly	بشكل أساسى

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- This blanket is heavy. It's very
a. light b. easy c. thick d. thin
- She was very sick yesterday. The antonym of "sick" is
a. ill b. tired c. weak d. well
- The prefix can be used to get the opposite of "able"
a. un- b. il- c. in- d. ir-
- The synonym of "active" is
a. lazy b. inactive c. energetic d. slow
- We add the suffix to get the adjective from the verb "suit".
a. -ion b. -ed c. -ing d. -able

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.
للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)
Part 2 فى ملحق (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

مهارة القراءة

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 10 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 55 & 54 ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Determining the main idea تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية

- The suitable title for the passage is
a. caracal's life b. orangutan's life
c. mongoose's life d. lizard's life

B. Answer the following questions :

- Making inference عمل استنتاج
- 2. How do you know that mongooses are helpful and cooperative animals ?
.....
- Making prediction about upcoming events عمل تنبؤات لأحداث متوقعة
- 3. What would happen if the mongooses couldn't see or hear very well ?
.....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على تنمية مهارة الكتابة.

- There are about 30 species of mongooses around the world.
١. يوجد حوالي ثلاثين فصيلة من النمس حول العالم.
- Mongoose is famous for fighting snakes. ٢. النمس مشهور بمحاربة الثعابين.
- Mongoose lives in forests or under the ground or rocks.
٣. يعيش النمس فى الغابات أو تحت الأرض أو الصخور.
- The mongoose eats some animals such as rats, birds, frogs and lizards.
٤. يأكل النمس بعض الحيوانات مثل الفئران والطيور والضفادع والسحالي.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete :

groups - get - give - caracal - orangutan - desert

- How do I to the supermarket ?
- The is a beautiful gold-coloured wild cat.
- Mongoose live in large
- The lives in the rainforests.
- Some people called camels "ships" of the

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

- Write a review of about ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"Endangered animals"

3. Speaking Corner

► Expressing lack of understanding and asking for clarification :

التعبير عن القصور في فهم الشيء وطلب الإيضاح.

Asking for clarification طلب الإيضاح

1. I'm still confused. Could you say that in another way ?

١. أنا مازلت متحيرًا. هل يمكنك أن تقول ذلك بطريقة أخرى ؟

2. Could you give me an example ?

٢. هل يمكنك إعطائي مثال ؟

3. When you say, do you mean ?

٣. عندما تقول هل أنت تقصد / تعني ؟

Lack of understanding القصور في فهم شيء

- I'm sorry, but I'm not sure what you mean by that.

• اسف لكنني غير متأكد مما تعنيه بذلك.

4. Confirm understanding

٤. تأكيد الفهم.

- Ah, I see.

• آه. لقد فهمت.

- I understand that now.

• الآن أنا افهم ما تعنيه.

Master your Term



اتقن منهجك بالطريقة المناسبة لك.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Adham is telling his father about his calculator that was lost at school.

Father : How are you, Adham ?

Adham : I'm fine.

Father : Adham, you look sad. What's the matter ?

Adham : (1)

Father : (2) ?

Adham : It was hot, so I went to wash my face. When I came back, I didn't find it.

Father : (3) ?

Adham : Yes, I looked for it under the desk. What should I do, dad ?

Father : (4) If you don't find it, I'll get you another one.

Adham : (5)

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

confusing - famous - don't - didn't - confused - directions

When I visited Mansoura for the first time to join the university, I was (1) I (2) know how to get to the university. I asked someone for (3) It was faraway, so I took a taxi. After that, I lived for four years happily in that (4) city.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The antonym of the word "thick" is
a. busy b. easy c. heavy d. light
- We add the suffix to get the adverb from the word "main".
a. -al b. -ly c. -able d. -y

3. We found the exam quite hard. The synonym of the word "hard" is
a. easy b. light c. difficult d. suitable

4. I organised a meeting between me and my friends. The word "organised" means
a. revived b. appropriated c. carried d. arranged

5. To get the antonym of the word "active", we use the prefix
a. un- b. in- c. im- d. en-

6. The is the thick hair that covers the body of an animal.
a. feather b. fur c. skin d. leather

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The Pyramids are (visiting) by thousands of tourists every year.
- Different kinds of food (cook) for the guests last night.
- A bag full of money (find) on the road after the accident.
- SB** New roads (build) all over Egypt every year.
- SB** Who (break) the glass of this window yesterday?

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

يجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of mongooses"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتي



If you got ●, you need to revise the unit again on the next page.
فم بتقييم بنفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد،
فم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

في نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادراً على أن

1 Learn important vocabulary اتعلم مفردات لغوية هامة

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> polar bear | <input type="checkbox"/> habitat |
| <input type="checkbox"/> rainforest | <input type="checkbox"/> remote |
| <input type="checkbox"/> deforestation | <input type="checkbox"/> population |
| <input type="checkbox"/> fossil | <input type="checkbox"/> coastal |

2 Read and write sentences using present simple and past simple in the passive form

اقرأ واكتب جمل مستخدماً زمن المضارع والماضى البسيط في صيغة المبني للمجهول.

- ☐ The floor is swept by Mona.
- ☐ The clouds are formed in the sky.
- ☐ The first car was made by Benz.
- ☐ The lessons were explained by Mr Ahmed.

3 Talk about habitats of some animals, expressing lack of understanding and asking for clarification.

أتحدث عن مواطن بعض الحيوانات وأعبر عن نقص الفهم وطلب التوضيح

- ☐ A : What is the habitat of the polar bear ?
- ☐ B : It is the North Pole.
- ☐ A : Some of rainforest animals are dangerous.
- ☐ B : I don't understand. Could you give me an example ?

لمزيد من التدريبات
جزء للمتابعة في كراسة المعاصر
جزء للمتابعة الشهرية بعد كل ثلاث وحدات

Review

on unit 7

SB page 11 WB page 76

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
coastal polar bear rainforest caracal (الكاركال) oases surrounded protect deforestation endangered carriage species stable owner treat habitat population fur wonders	<p>1. Present Simple Passive صفة المبنى المجهول في زمن المضارع البسيط</p> <p>am + P.P. is + P.P. are + P.P.</p> <p>Obj. + P.P.</p> <p>* Mona carries the books. - The books are carried by Mona.</p> <p>2. Past Simple Passive صفة المبنى المجهول في زمن الماضي البسيط</p> <p>was + P.P. were + P.P.</p> <p>Obj. + P.P.</p> <p>* Scientists discovered 52 new species of plants. - 52 new species of plants were discovered by scientists.</p>	<p>1. Talking about habitats and natural wonders التحدث عن البيئة الطبيعية للحيوانات والنباتات الطبيعية</p> <p>A: Where does the orangutan live? B: It lives in the rainforests. A: How much of Egypt is a desert habitat? B: About 95 %.</p> <p>2. Expressing lack of understanding and asking for clarification التعبير عن القصور في فهم شيء، وطلب الإيضاح</p> <p>A: Go straight and turn left. It's on the right. B: I'm still confused. Could you say that another way?</p>

Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة
معالجة جديدة لأنماط وأشكال مختلفة
لمهارة الكتابة

A (review / biography / short story)

Natural wonders of Egypt / Deforestation / Mongooses



Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة لاستئارة أفكار لتنمية مهارة الكتابة

- What kinds of habitats can be found at Gebel Elba?
- What are the fossils of the desert?
- Where is the mongoose found?



Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

- wetland	- lighthouse	- understand
- grassland	- species	- fossil
- technology	- preserve	- caracal
- protect	- remote	- the Middle East
- damage	- confused	- rainforests



Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتركيب مساعدة

- They live in the habitat.	- is one of the natural wonders in Egypt.
- are famous for	- causes to the environment.
	- Their bodies are covered by



Practise

تدرب على مهارة الكتابة

Write a review of about ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:
"Fossils"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Vocabulary

grassland	أرض خضراء (مرعى)	volunteer	متطوع - متطوعة
desert habitat	بيئة صحراوية	species	فصائل / أنواع
natural wonders	عجائب طبيعية	deforestation	إزالة الغابات
oases	واحات	endanger	يُعرض للخطر
surrounded by	محاط بـ	fossils	حفريات
wildlife	حياة برية	fur	فرو
pollute	يلوث	fill	يملأ - يمتلئ

Language

1. Warm wet areas are called⁽¹⁾ a rainforest.
2. What is written⁽²⁾ in the notebook ?
3. The Pyramids were built⁽³⁾ thousands of years ago.
4. Lunch wasn't cooked⁽⁴⁾ (by Hala).

نواهد لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

Check Language

- (1) متاع بسيط ملئت في صيغة المبنى للمجهول
- (2) ممل في المتاع البسيط في صيغة المبنى للمجهول
- (3) ملئ بسيط ملئت في صيغة المبنى للمجهول
- (4) ملئ بسيط ملئ في صيغة المبنى للمجهول

Speaking

Questions

1. When was the Great Pyramid built ?
2. How do I get to the bank ?
3. What is the habitat of the orangutan ?

Answers

- It was built about 3,500 years ago.
- Go straight, then turn left. It's opposite the hospital.
- It's the rainforests.

Test

on Unit 7

Understand Apply Create

ننويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار
إلكترونياً وتصويبه



A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Hamza is talking to Ashraf about the White Desert National Park.

Hamza : Good morning, Ashraf. Can I ask you some questions about the White Desert National Park ?

Ashraf : (1) What are your questions ?

Hamza : (2) ?

Ashraf : It is on the western side of the Nile and continues into Libya.

Hamza : (3) ?

Ashraf : Yes. It contains five oases.

Hamza : Why do the rocks have strange shapes ?

Ashraf : The wind made them into strange shapes. Do you have any other questions ?

Hamza : (4)

Ashraf : (5)

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

tourism - tourists - looked - species - wildlife - looking

We should protect the (1) in Egypt. Different (2) of plants and animals are endangered because of man's bad activities. We can encourage more and more (3) to visit Egypt to see these natural places if they are (4) after well.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

When was the last time you walked down a litter-free street ? Although millions of pounds are spent on cleaning rubbish every year, this alone

cannot solve the problem. The solution lies in our hands. Dropping litter in the street must be against the law. People who throw litter in the streets should be fined **يُغرم**. Litter isn't only ugly, but it is also dangerous.

Why is there so much litter? Most consumer **مستهلك** products are over-packaged; a single item may be wrapped in plastic, put in a box, wrapped in cellophane and then put in a plastic carrier bag.

We can solve this problem by recycling paper and plastic bottles. Never drop litter; consider the smallest piece of paper **contributes** to the problem. Avoid buying over-packaged items from supermarkets and take your own carrier bags. You could also organise day-trips to the local countryside and beaches on holidays to pick up rubbish. If everyone makes themselves responsible for maintaining high standards of cleanliness in their area, the problem may be solved.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is
 a. throwing litter is a problem that cannot be solved
 b. don't recycle old plastic bottles to stop the litter problem
 c. we all are responsible for solving the problem of litter
 d. people who throw litter shouldn't be punished
- After reading the passage, we see that the two words "**rubbish**" and "**litter**" are
 a. antonyms b. synonyms c. prefixes d. suffixes
- The underlined word "**contributes**" can be replaced by
 a. adds b. damages c. hurts d. destroys

b. Answer the following questions:

- After reading the passage, do you think we can solve the problem of litter in the future?

- Summarize the last paragraph of the passage in your own words.

- If you are asked to suggest a way to solve the problem of litter, what will you suggest?

C. Vocabulary and structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We can get the verb of "danger" by adding the prefix
 a. en- b. un- c. in- d. im-
- It's healthy to eat food with natural ingredients. The synonym of the word "natural" is
 a. artificial b. industrial c. normal d. optional
- To form the noun of the verb "deforest", we add the suffix
 a. -ation b. -y c. -able d. -ity
- A/An is the natural home of an animal or plant.
 a. habit b. habitat c. fossil d. life jacket
- The antonym of the word "fill" is
 a. increase b. empty c. preserve d. save
- SB** He took 3 hours to get to his house. His house is very
 a. lazy b. near c. remote d. busy

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- A nice goal (score) in the match last night.
- Glass (make) from sand.
- Who was the Taj Mahal (build) by?
- This station (build) last year.
- (Does) the housework done by her?

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

مجابات عند في نهاية الكتاب

"A short story you have read"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Stop here !

7. Mini-Test on unit 7 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed and Omar are talking about deforestation.

Ahmed : Hello, Omar. What are you doing now ?

Omar : I'm reading a book about (1)

Ahmed : (2) ?

Omar : Deforestation means that there are fewer trees in rainforests.

Ahmed : Is it dangerous for the environment ?

Omar : (3) It damages the natural habitat of many animals.

Ahmed : How terrible! Scientists should solve this problem.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations :

1. Ask your friend about the natural wonders of Egypt.

2. You're asked about the way to the supermarket.

3 Write a paragraph of SIX sentences on :

"The importance of rainforests "

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Playing all the time is a big of your life.
a. lose b. lost c. loose d. loss
- Amazon is the second longest river in the world.
a. An b. The c. A d. no article
- A five - boy isn't old enough to work.
a. year b. years c. year's d. a year
- There are only one of this animal.
a. kinds b. types c. species d. styles
- They plant their crops on the of the river.
a. coast b. beach c. shore d. bank

UNIT 8

Protecting our planet

SB pages 12-21 WB pages 77-83



Objectives

• Reading :

An article about climate change; a post about a school project; blogs about a recycling project and weaving; a text about seagrass

a discussion about printer cartridges; identifying word stress; a speech about helping the environment

• Writing :

A plan for a recycling project; a speech about how to keep air clean; a short report about a habitat

• Speaking :

Discussing environmental problems; giving a speech

• Listening :

A radio report about an environmental problem;

• Language : Verb + to or - ing

• Life skills : Problem solving and decision making

العلامة 83 تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
العلامة 84 تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

استلزام
كل وحدة تشمل

Master your term
• المتابعة اليومية و الشهيرة في
• قاموس المعاصر اللغوي • ملحق المعاصر للأزهر الشريف
• ملحق A week is enough

لا تأخذ
الوحدة

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

air pollution (n)	تلوث الهواء	global warming (n)	الاحتباس الحراري
deforestation (n)	إزالة الغابات	carbon dioxide (n)	ثاني أكسيد الكربون
melting ice (n)	ذوبان الثلوج	greenhouse gases	غازات الاحتباس الحراري
landfill site (n)	مقلب النفايات	fossil fuels (n)	الوقود الحفري
renewable energy (n)	طاقة متجددة	methane (n)	غاز الميثان
government (n)	الحكومة	solar energy (n)	الطاقة الشمسية
climate change (n)	التغير المناخي	chemicals (n)	مواد كيميائية

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 12 & 13 WB page 77

planet (n)	كوكب	fire (d) (v), (n)	برق / حريق
oxygen (n)	غاز الأكسجين	volunteer (ed) (v), (n)	بتطوع - متطوع
serious (adj)	خطير / هام	collect (ed) (v)	يجمع
seagrass (n)	الأعشاب البحرية	coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية
the Amazon rainforest	غابات الأمازون المطيرة	metal (n), (adj)	معدن / معدني
Antarctic (n)	المنطقة القطبية الجنوبية	waste (d) (v), (n)	يضيع / يهدر - نفايات
Arctic (n)	المنطقة القطبية الشمالية	pollute (d) (v)	يلوث
climate (n)	المناخ	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير
recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير	kill (ed) (v)	يقتل

Lesson 2

SB pages 14 & 15 WB page 78

cause (d) (v), (n)	يسبب / سبب	greenhouse (n)	صوبة (بيت زجاجي)
flood (n)	فيضان	wind power (n)	طاقة الرياح
drought (n)	جفاف	farming (n)	الزراعة

forest fires (n)	حرائق الغابات	industry (n)	الصناعة
oil (n)	بنترول - نفط	surprise (d) (v)	يُفاجئ / يدهش
transport (n)	النقل / المواصلات	increase (d) (v)	يزداد - يزيد
graph (n)	الرسم البياني	sunny (adj)	شمس
electricity (n)	كهرباء	wave (n)	موجة
gas (n)	غاز	solar (adj)	شمسي
equipment (n)	معدات	produce (d) (v)	ينتج / يولد / يخلق

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
pay يدفع	paid	paid
speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken
understand يفهم	understood	understood
keep يبقى - يظل - يحفظ	kept	kept
choose يختار	chose	chosen
build يبني	built	built
lose يفقد - يخسر	lost	lost
find يجد	found	found

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.
وللمزيد من التعريفات أنظر قاموس المعاصر اللغوي

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

air pollution (n)	damage caused to the air by chemicals and waste	تلوث الهواء
landfill site (n)	• a place where people leave rubbish on the land • a place where rubbish is taken, often to be buried under the ground	موقع مقلب النفايات
melting ice (n)	a problem in the Arctic and Antarctic because of global warming	ذوبان الثلوج
deforestation (n)	when all the trees in an area are cut down	إزالة الغابات

warmer seas	something that can kill coral reefs إختزال البحار (ارتفاع درجة حرارة البحار)
keep (v)	to continue doing or do again and again يُستمر / يظل
absorb (ed) (v)	to take in liquid or heat through a surface يمتص
fossil fuels (n)	natural materials such as petrol and oil that you can burn for energy الوقود الحفري
methane (n)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a greenhouse gas that is made from landfill sites a natural gas often produced by animals and dead plants غاز الميثان
renewable energy (n)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> clean energy from the sun or wind natural energy that doesn't disappear or burn when you use it طاقة متجددة
solar energy (n)	the energy we get from the sun الطاقة الشمسية
farming (n)	the business of growing crops and looking after animals for food الزراعة
avoid (v)	deliberately stay away from someone or something يتجنب / يمتنع
carbon dioxide (n)	a gas which we breathe out and which is produced by burning fossil fuels غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون
greenhouse gas (n)	a gas in the air such as carbon dioxide which can cause global warming غاز الاحتباس الحراري

Collocations

Collocations		مكالمات لفظية			
get	worse	يزداد سوء	make	a gas	يُنشِئ منه غاز
	hotter	يزداد سخونة		a loud noise	يصدر صوتاً عالياً
cause	climate change	يسبب التغير المناخي	play	the piano	يعزف على البيانو
create	greenhouse gases	ينتج غازات الاحتباس الحراري	become	warmer	يصبح أكثر دفئاً
			pass	exams	ينجح في الامتحانات

II Listening and Reading

Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 13

In the cities of Cairo, Giza and Fayoum, there is a project that is teaching people about **climate change**⁽¹⁾ and how to help the environment by **recycling rubbish**⁽²⁾.

Over 400 women **volunteers**⁽³⁾ visit houses in these cities every week. The volunteers ask people to put their rubbish into three different bins: for plastic, paper and metal. When the volunteers come back a week later, they **pay**⁽⁴⁾ the families money for the rubbish they have collected. Then they **take away**⁽⁵⁾ the rubbish for recycling. "If families **collect**⁽⁶⁾ their paper, plastic and metal, we will pay them for it," says Dalia. "Then we can take away the rubbish and recycle it. It's a great **solution**⁽⁷⁾ to a big problem, because the family get some money and we help the environment'.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) التغير المناخي (2) إعادة تدوير القمامة (3) متطوعين (4) يدفع مال (5) ينقل (6) يجمع (7) حل

Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 14

Our **planet**⁽¹⁾ is getting hotter and our weather is changing. There are more **floods**⁽²⁾, **droughts**⁽³⁾ and **forest fires**⁽⁴⁾ than at any time in history. One of the reasons for this is climate change.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) كوكب (2) فيضانات (3) الجفاف (4) حرائق

Climate change is caused by **greenhouse gases**⁽⁵⁾ such as **carbon dioxide**⁽⁶⁾. These are made when we **burn**⁽⁷⁾ **fossil fuels**⁽⁸⁾ such as oil. **Rubbish**⁽⁹⁾ in **landfill**⁽¹⁰⁾ sites makes a greenhouse gas called **methane**⁽¹¹⁾. **Deforestation**⁽¹²⁾ also **produces**⁽¹³⁾ greenhouse gases. Trees **absorb**⁽¹⁴⁾ carbon dioxide from the air. When we cut down trees, the carbon dioxide stays in the air.



If we **keep**⁽¹⁵⁾ burning fossil fuels, **climate change**⁽¹⁶⁾ will **get worse**⁽¹⁷⁾. So, we need to use cleaner **renewable energy**⁽¹⁸⁾ such as **solar energy**⁽¹⁹⁾ and **wind power**⁽²⁰⁾. We must start **recycling**⁽²¹⁾ more rubbish and stop putting rubbish in landfill sites. If we recycle more paper, we can avoid **cutting down**⁽²²⁾ our forests. This will help **slow down**⁽²³⁾ climate change.

Check Vocabulary

(5) غازات الاحتباس الحراري	(6) ثاني أكسيد الكربون	(7) يحرق	(8) وقود أحفوري	(9) القمامة
(10) مقالب نفايات	(11) غاز الميثان	(12) إزالة الغابات	(13) ينتج / يولد	(14) يمتص
(15) يستمر في	(16) يتغير المناخ	(17) يزداد سوءاً	(18) طاقة متجددة	(19) طاقة شمسية
(20) طاقة الرياح	(21) إعادة تدوير	(22) قطع	(23) يُبطئ	

on Lesson 2 WB page 78

Buildings **cause**⁽¹⁾ 6 % of our greenhouse gases. If we keep building houses **in the same way**⁽²⁾, **global warming**⁽³⁾ will continue. I think we should decide to build houses that need to use less **electricity**⁽⁴⁾ from fossil fuels. We can do this by planning to build houses that use renewable energy. We should also avoid leaving all our **electrical**⁽⁵⁾ **equipment**⁽⁶⁾ on when we are not using it!

Check Vocabulary

(1) يسبب	(2) بنفس الطريقة	(3) الاحتباس الحراري	(4) كهرباء	(5) كهربائي	(6) معدات
----------	------------------	----------------------	------------	-------------	-----------

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 serious (adj)

ex.: - I like people who are **serious** about their work.
ex.: - Smoking is a **serious** problem.
ex.: - Marriage is a **serious** matter.

جاد - خطير - مهم
 جاد
 خطير
 مهم

2 volunteer (ed) (v) / (n)

ex.: - Soha has **volunteered** to help the orphans.
ex.: - Soha is a **volunteer** in an orphanage.

يتطوع - متطوع
 يتطوع
 متطوع

3 drought - draught

* drought

ex.: - Less rain causes **drought**.

* draught = blast

ex.: - Many houses were damaged by the **draught** last night.

جفاف

تيار هوائي - رياح عاتية

4 flood - fluid

* flood (n)

ex.: - Much rain causes **floods**.

* fluid (n)

ex.: - Water, oil and milk are all **fluids**.

فيضان

سائل

5 cause - reason

* cause

ex.: - The **cause** of the fire is not clear.

* reason

ex.: - What are the **reasons** for your absence?

سبب (يتبعها حرف الجر of)

سبب - ميرر (تأخذ حرف الجر for)

6 keep (v) kept - kept

ex.: - Basim **keeps** his clothes in a wardrobe.

ex.: - Rahma **kept** studying for a long time yesterday.

(لاحظ استخدام فعل مضاف إليه ing بعد الفعل keep)

يحفظ - يستمر

يحفظ

يستمر

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look through	انظر من خلال	absorb ... from	يمتص ... من
find out	يكتشف	in landfill sites	في مواقع النفايات
pay for	يدفع مقابل	in the same way	بنفس الطريقة
move to	ينتقل إلى	slow down	يُبطئ
good for	مفيد لـ	turn off	يطفى

breathe in	يستنشق (الأكسجين)	stay in the air	يبقى في الهواء
breathe out	يخرج (الزفير)	at any time	في أي وقت
cut down trees	يقطع الأشجار	It's bad to	إنه من السيئ أن ...
forms of energy	أشكال الطاقة	keep the air clean by ...	يحافظ على نظافة / نقاء الهواء بواسطة
work much harder	يبدل جهد أكبر	save water	يوفر المياه
along the sides of ...	على امتداد جوانب ...		
warmer seas	إحترار البحار (ارتفاع درجة حرارة البحار)		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- happens when all the trees in an area are cut down.
a. Farming b. Deforestation c. Climate d. Melting ice
- is a gas which we breathe in.
a. Carbon dioxide b. Oxygen c. Methane d. Nitrogen
- We can get energy from the sun.
a. chemical b. wind c. wave d. solar
- I think is one of the most serious problems for our planet.
a. air pollution b. farming c. solar energy d. wind energy

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

- SB** We must start recycling more rubbish and stop putting rubbish in sites.
a. landfall b. landfill c. landowner d. landmark
- WB** We have used in cars for too long.
a. carbon dioxide b. solar energy
c. fossil fuels d. renewable energy
- SB** grows in the sea along the coast.
a. Landfill site b. Seagrass c. Rubbish d. Fossil fuel
- WB** Buildings 6 % of our greenhouse gases.
a. introduce b. cause c. avoid d. melt

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

El-Moasser Exercises

- is a gas which we breathe out.
a. Oxygen b. Carbon dioxide
c. Nitrogen d. Methane
- A fossil fuel is a fuel such as coal or
a. oil b. wind c. plant d. wood
- There are many types of energy such as solar energy.
a. non-renewable b. renewable
c. dirty d. warmer

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- It's hotter nowadays.
a. saving b. finding c. absorbing d. getting
- You can visit me any time you like.
a. in b. at c. on d. from
- Trees absorb carbon dioxide air.
a. out b. from c. about d. into
- It's bad to noise. It hurts other people.
a. do b. have c. make d. turn

Definition

- is a problem in the Arctic and Antarctic because of global warming. It causes floods.
a. Air pollution b. Landfill c. Melting ice d. Deforestation
- is a place where people leave rubbish on the land.
a. Landfill site b. Deforestation c. Climate change d. Air pollution
- To means to take in liquid or heat through a surface.
a. melt b. keep c. absorb d. form
- is a greenhouse gas that is made from landfill sites.
a. Oxygen b. Methane c. Carbon dioxide d. Hydrogen

Guessing the meaning from the text

- Drugs have become a serious problem in our community. The word "serious" means
a. good b. dangerous c. attractive d. natural

21. Forest fires are increasing. The word "increasing" means to become in amount or size .
 a. smaller b. happier c. larger d. nicer

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمة	المترادف	المضاد
pass	ينجح في - يمر - يجتاز	يفشل / يرسب
keep	يستمر في	يتوقف
breathe in	يستنشق	يخرج (يخرج الزفير)
absorb	يمتص	يُصدر
avoid	يبتنع - يتجنب	يسمح / يواجه
die	يموت	يعيش
	succeed in	fail
	continue	stop
	inhale	breathe out
	take in - soak up	emit
	stop	allow / face
	pass away	live

Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة	أمثلة
non -	تكون العكس	non-renewable غير متجدد
re -	يقوم بأداء الفعل مرة ثانية	recycle يعيد تدوير
- al	تكون الصفة من الاسم	environmental بيئي electrical كهربائي
- ing	تكون اسم من فعل	farming الزراعة
- ion	تكون اسم من فعل	pollution تلوث
- able	تكون صفة من فعل	renewable متجدد

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

- You should avoid making bad friends. The synonym of the word "avoid" is
 a. keep b. stop c. pass d. recycle
- To make the noun form of the verb "farm" we add the suffix
 a. -able b. -ing c. -al d. -ous
- To give the opposite meaning of the word "renewable", we add the prefix
 a. dis - b. un- c. non- d. im-

- He passed all his exams last year. The antonym of the word "passed" is
 a. started b. finished c. fell d. failed
- We can form the adjective of the word "renew" by adding the suffix
 a. -al b. -ous c. -able d. -ing
- We add the prefix to mean to do something again.
 a. re - b. in - c. de - d. non -
- The suffix forms the noun from the verb "pollute".
 a. - ment b. - ion c. - al d. - ed

Language

Remember تذكر

The first conditional clause with "If" (إذا) الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Formation التكوين

If / When + present Simple Tense (من المضارع البسيط) , subject (الفاعل) + will ('ll) / will not (won't) + inf. (مصدر)

ex. If Ali studies hard, he will pass his test.

عندما تأتي (if) في منتصف الجملة لا نضع (,) بين الجملتين :

Subject (الفاعل) + will ('ll) / won't (مصدر) + if / when (من المضارع البسيط)

ex. Mona will catch the bus if she is quick.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

A Yes/No question :

(أ) السؤال بـ "هل"

Will + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر) + if / when + present Simple Tense... ? (من المضارع البسيط)

ex. - Will you stay inside if it's hot tomorrow ?

- Yes, I will.

- No, I will not (won't).

B Wh-question :

(ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام

Question word + will + subj. + inf. + if / when + present Simple Tense
 كلمة استفهام + will + الفاعل + مصدر + if / when + زمن المضارع البسيط

ex. A : What will you do if it is windy tomorrow ?

B : We won't go to the beach.

Usage الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about what will probably happen if/when another action takes place. We use if or when with the present simple, followed by (will) with a verb without (to).

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى (if) للحديث عن احتمال حدوث شيء في المستقبل إذا تحقق شرط حدوثه. ونستخدم when / if على أن يكون فعل الجملة التي تلي أيًا منهما في زمن المضارع البسيط ويكون فعل الجملة الثانية في المصدر مسبوقًا بـ (will).

ex. - If Ahmed comes early, he will meet his uncle.

- If it is windy tomorrow, they won't go to the beach.

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

- SB If we (burned) plastic rubbish, we will pollute the air.
- SB What (happened) if we don't recycle rubbish ?
- SB Our environment (be) cleaner if we recycle our rubbish.
- WB What (would) you do if you don't understand the homework ?
- WB How will Tarek feel if he (go) to bed very late tonight ?
- WB Will Dina (speaking) good English if her parents move to Canada ?
- SB We'll save water if we only (took) short showers.

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- Where will you (lived) if you get a good job ?
- He (do) better if he practises every day.
- If I (ate) too many sweets, I'll feel sick.
- I'll study maths if I (goes) to the university.
- If I go to the shops, I'll (buys) a new game.
- If you (didn't) put sugar in your coffee, it won't taste nice.

- If I visit Aswan, I (send) you a picture.
- If my dad gets home early, I'll (being) happy.
- If Ali passes his exams, he (would) go to university.
- How (you feel) if you pass your exams ?

Verbs + infinitive / - ing form

1 Verbs + to + inf.

allow	يسمح	need	يحتاج
agree	يوافق	learn	يتعلم
arrange	يرتب	manage	يتمكن
ask	يسأل / يطلب	offer	يعرض
choose	يختار	plan	يخطط
decide	يقرر	promise	يعد
expect	يتوقع	refuse	يرفض
fail	يفشل في	threaten	يهدد
help	يساعد في	want	يريد
hope	يأمل	wish	يتمنى
intend	ينوي	would like	يود

ex.: - My family has decided to go to Jordan next year.

- My neighbour agrees to water my plants when we are away on holiday.

لاحظ الآتي

1 بعض الأفعال السابقة قد يأتي بعدها المفعول أولًا ثم (to + inf.) :

- I wanted Omar to work hard.
- They expected me to come first.
- He allowed me to stay up late.

2 في حالة النفي يمكن أن تُستخدم (not to) بعد الأفعال السابقة.

- Ahmed decided not to use my tools.

2 Verb + (inf. + ing)

avoid	يتجنب	include	يشمل
consider	يفكر في	keep	يظل / يستمر في
deny	ينكر	mind	يمنع
dislike	يكره	practise	يمارس

enjoy
finish
imagine

يستمع
ينهي
يتخيل
recommend
suggest
admit

يوصي بـ / يُحذِر
يقترح
يقترع

- You should **avoid going** out late at night.
- She has just **finished cleaning** her bedroom.

في حالة النفي يمكن أن تُستخدم (not + inf. + ing) بعد الأفعال السابقة :

- He suggested **not going** to the park.

3 Verb + (inf. + ing) / (to + inf.)

الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) دون فرق في المعنى:

begin / start
continue
hate

يبدأ
يستمر
يكره
like
love
prefer

يحب / يفضل
يحب
يفضل

- ex. - We **continued to run / running** until we got home.
- The wind **began to blow / blowing** just as we arrived home from school.
ولكن لاحظ أنه إذا استخدمنا (would) قبل الأفعال love / prefer / like يأتي بعدها (to + inf)
- ex. - I'd **prefer to finish** my work early today.
- I'd **love to attend** your birthday party.
اللفظ أن (starting / beginning) يأتي بعدها (to + inf) فقط :
- The rain is **starting to fall**.

الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) مع وجود فرق واضح في المعنى:

remember, forget, stop, try + to + inf. / (inf. + ing)

1. remember

- **remember + to + inf.** يتذكر أن يفعل
- ex. - Remember **to bring** your homework tomorrow.
- **remember + gerund** يتذكر أنه فعل
- ex. - I **remember waking** up in the middle of the night.

2. forget

- **forget + to + inf.** ينسى أن يفعل (هنا الشيء لم يتم القيام به)
- ex. - She **forgot to buy** her grandfather's newspaper, so he was angry.
- **forget + gerund** ينسى أنه فعل (فعل الشيء لكنه نسي ذلك)
- ex. - I **forgot phoning** the manager, so I didn't phone him again.

3. stop

- **stop + to + inf.** يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء آخر
- ex. - On her way home, Dina **stopped to talk** to her friend Warda.
- **stop + gerund** يتوقف عن فعل شيء (بشكل دائم أو مؤقت)
- ex. - Dina and Warda have **stopped talking** to each other.

Exercise on Language

◉ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. **SB** The government plans (plant) a lot of trees along the sides of streets.
2. **WB** What do I need (buying) from the shops, Mum ?
3. **SB** If we keep (to burn) fossil fuels, climate change will get worse.
4. **SB** You can choose (recycling) your plastic bottles.
5. **SB** We can avoid (cut) down the trees by building the road in a different place.
6. **WB** Do you enjoy (played) the piano ?

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. He suggested (visit) Luxor Temple.
8. Doing sports helps you (keeping) fit.
9. I'd love (attending) your birthday party.
10. I can't imagine (to live) in the city. I don't like noisy places.
11. Would you mind (given) me a hand ?
12. I planned (spend) the weekend with my grandparents.

13. This player intends (not retiring) this year. He is going to play for two more seasons.
14. The thief denied (to steal) the money.
15. Ahmed hopes (finding) a job next month.
16. I prefer (to swimming) in a swimming pool.
17. He didn't allow me (cycling) in the park.
18. Stop (shout), you are giving me a headache.
19. When you go diving, you should avoid (damaged) the coral reefs.
20. I'd like (eating) pizza.

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حدة.

تلميح للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

مهارة القراءة

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 SB page 14 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 78 & 77 ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Making inference.** عمل استنتاج

1. What do you think will happen if we stop putting rubbish in landfill sites ?

- **Making prediction about upcoming events.** تنبؤ للأحداث المتوقعة

2. What will happen when we use cleaner renewable energy such as solar energy and wind power ?
- This will help slow down climate change.

- **Summarising a text.** تلخيص النص

3. Summarise the last paragraph of the passage in your own words.

مهارة الكتابة

حمل مساعدك على تنمية مهارة الكتابة

2. Writing Corner

A. Read the sentences

كوكبنا "Our planet"

1. Our planet is getting hotter and our weather is changing.
أ. كوكبنا يزداد حرارة والطقس يتغير باستمرار.
2. Climate change is caused by greenhouse gases such as carbon dioxide.
ب. تتسبب غازات الاحتباس الحراري مثل ثاني أكسيد الكربون في حدوث التغير المناخي.
3. Deforestation also produces greenhouse gases.
ج. أيضاً إزالة الغابات تنتج غازات الاحتباس الحراري.
4. We need to use cleaner renewable energy such as solar energy and wind power.
د. نحتاج إلى استخدام طاقة متجددة نظيفة مثل الطاقة الشمسية وقوة الرياح.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete :

down - will - idea - would - sun - need

1. Recycling project is a good
2. We should help slow climate change.
3. The gives us solar energy.
4. If Sara studies hard, she get high marks.
5. We to use renewable energy.

تلميح

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالرسامين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على مهارة الكتابة

- Write a review of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"Climate change"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

1. Asking and answering questions about environmental problems :
 ا. توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن مشاكل البيئة :

Questions	Answers
1. Why do you think forest fires are increasing ? ١. لماذا تعتقد أن حرائق الغابات تزداد ؟	- Because our planet is getting hotter. - لأن كوكبنا يزداد سخونة.
2. How does deforestation create greenhouse gases ? ٢. كيف تتسبب إزالة الغابات في انبعاث غازات الاحتباس الحراري ؟	- When we cut down the trees, the carbon dioxide stays in the air. - عندما نزيل الأشجار . يظل غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون في الهواء.
3. Why is recycling good for the environment ? ٣. لماذا يعتبر إعادة التدوير مفيد للبيئة ؟	- This will help slow down climate change. - هذا سيساعد على تقليل سرعة حدوث التغير المناخي.
4. What will happen if we keep the oceans getting warmer ? ٤. ماذا سوف يحدث لو استمرت المحيطات أكثر دفئاً ؟	- Some coral reefs will die. - سوف تموت بعض الشعاب المرجانية.

2. Recycling rubbish :
 ٢. إعادة تدوير المخلفات :

Questions	Answers
1. Do you think that the recycling project in Giza, Cairo and Fayoum is a good idea ? Why ? ١. هل تعتقد أن مشروع إعادة تدوير الأشياء في محافظات الجيزة والقاهرة والفيوم فكرة جيدة ؟ ولماذا ؟	- Yes, I think so as it reduces pollution and saves the environment. - نعم اعتقد ذلك لأنه يقلل من التلوث ويحافظ على البيئة.
2. What does your family do with waste plastic, paper and metal ? ٢. ماذا تفعل عائلتك بالمخلفات البلاستيكية والورقية والمعدنية ؟	- My family recycles them to make useful things. - تقوم عائلتي بإعادة تصنيع هذه الأشياء للحصول على أشياء مفيدة منها.
3. What will happen if we don't recycle rubbish ? ٣. ماذا سوف يحدث لو لم نقوم بإعادة تدوير المخلفات ؟	- I think that 'll cause much pollution and damage the environment. - اعتقد أن ذلك سوف يتسبب في حدوث كثير من التلوث ويدمر البيئة.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Mai is talking to her friend Sama about spending the weekend.

Mai : Hi, Sama. How are you ?

Sama : Hi, Mai. Fine. (1)

Mai : I'm fine, thanks. (2)

Sama : I'm visiting my aunt at the weekend. What about you ?

Mai : (3)

Sama : Great! I think your village is a nice place for the weekend. Who will go with you ?

Mai : (4)

Sama : How will you go there ?

Mai : (5)

Sama : Have a nice weekend !

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Solar energy is always available. This means that it is
 a. warm b. metal c. renewable d. serious
- Congratulations ! You have passed the final interview. The synonym of "passed" is in.
 a. succeeded b. continued c. got d. failed
- She promised her parents not to stop practising. The antonym of "stop" is
 a. prevent b. quit c. avoid d. continue
- means the practice of growing crops or keeping animals on a farm.
 a. Livestock b. Cattle c. Farming d. Deforestation
- To get the adjective of "environment", we use the suffix
 a. -al b. -ity c. -able d. -y

6. We use the prefix to form the antonym of "renewable".
a. un - b. non - c. ir - d. in -

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- People must stop (throw) chemicals in water.
- Shaza likes (watch) cartoons.
- They decided (clean) their street every Friday.
- If it (rained), I won't go to the park.
- She (would) miss the bus if she doesn't leave now.

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

يبدأ منه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of how to protect our planet"

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

fabric (n)	قماش	loom (n)	نول
ink (n)	حبر	thread (n)	خيوط
weaving (n)	النسيج	tradition (n)	حرفة تقليدية - عادة
weaver (n)	حائك / نساج	cartridge (n)	الحبارة

تلميح Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 16 & 17 WB page 79

water pollution (n)	تلوث المياه	broken (adj)	مكسور
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	head teacher (n)	مدير المدرسة
recycling project (n)	مشروع إعادة تدوير	kill (ed) (v)	يقتل
recycling boxes	صناديق إعادة تدوير القمامة	latest (adj)	الأحدث
blog (n)	مدونة إلكترونية	materials (n)	مواد / خامات
printer (n)	طابعة		

Lesson 4

SB page 18 WB page 80

bricks (n)	قوالب الطوب	solution (n)	حل
carpet (n)	سجادة	top (n)	غطاء
field (n)	ملعب / حقل	traditional art (n)	الفن التقليدي
instead (adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	wool (n)	صوف
jewellery (n)	مجوهرات	the World Cup	كأس العالم
lovely (adj)	جميل	factory (n)	مصنع
reform (ed) (v/n)	يصلح - إصلاح	Russia	دولة روسيا
way (n)	طريقة	fishing nets	شباك الصيد

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
let يسمح / يدع	let	let
say يقول / يخبر	said	said
sell يبيع	sold	sold
begin يبدأ	began	begun
fall يقع / يسقط	fell	fallen

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات. للمزيد من التعريفات أنظر قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

fabric	cloth or material which can be used to make clothes, bags, etc.	ماشية
ink	a liquid used in pens or printers for writing, drawing, etc.	حبر
loom	a machine used for weaving	النول
thread	a long piece of cotton, silk, etc. which people can use to sew or make clothes	خيوط
weaver	a person who makes cloth by weaving	ناتك / نساج
weaving	the art of making cloth by crossing threads using a special machine	دقة النسيج
printer cartridge	a piece of plastic which contains and supplies ink for a printer	حصارة

Collocations

ملازمات لفظية

make	a plan	يعد خطة	start	a project	يبدأ مشروع
do	a research	يقوم بإجراء بحث			

II Listening and Reading

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 16

Dalida : I want to **print**⁽¹⁾ an article from the internet, but the printer is broken.

Sherifa : Really ? What's wrong; Dalida ? Let me look. No, the printer isn't broken. It needs a new printer **cartridge**⁽²⁾.

Dalida : Of course. You're right, Sherifa. I think there's a new one in the **cupboard**⁽³⁾.

Sherifa : What are you going to do with the old one ?

Dalida : I'll throw it away. I always throw them away.

Sherifa : You can't throw it away!

Dalida : Why not ?

Sherifa : That is very bad for the environment. **Ink**⁽⁴⁾ from the printer cartridge can get into rivers and the sea. The ink kills fish and other sea animals. It's really **terrible**⁽⁵⁾. You must recycle it.

Dalida : Oh, no. I didn't know that. That sounds horrible.

Sherifa : Look! There's an **address**⁽⁶⁾ on the box. If we send the printer cartridge to that address, they will recycle it.

Dalida : OK. Let's do that. What happens to all the printer cartridges at school ?

Sherifa : I don't know. I think they're thrown away.

Dalida : Well, why don't we start a **recycling project**⁽⁷⁾ ?

Sherifa : That's a great idea.



Check Vocabulary

(1) يطبع (2) حجارة (3) دولاب (4) الحبر (5) شنيع (6) عنوان (7) مشروع إعادة تدوير

Reading

• on Lesson 3 SB page 17



Our School recycling project!

The problem

Five classrooms in our school have a computer and a printer⁽¹⁾. At the moment, we throw away⁽²⁾ the printer cartridges⁽³⁾ with the school rubbish. But the ink⁽⁴⁾ inside printer cartridges is very bad for⁽⁵⁾ the environment. So, we want to start a school recycling project.

What we are going to do

We have asked our head teacher⁽⁶⁾, Mr Hamdi, if we can start a recycling project, and he said yes. He will let⁽⁷⁾ us put a recycling box in the classrooms with printers. We have written emails to all our teachers. We have asked them to put the old printer cartridges in the recycling boxes.

How you can help us

We will take the recycling boxes to the recycling centre⁽⁸⁾ every month. But, we need volunteers to help us. If you would like to be a volunteer, please write your name and email below⁽⁹⁾.
Thank you.
Dalida and Sherifa

Check Vocabulary

(1) طابعة	(2) يلقي / يتخلص من	(3) الحيازة	(4) حبر	(5) ضار بـ
(6) مدير المدرسة	(7) يدع / يسمح	(8) مركز	(9) بالأسفل	

• on Lesson 3 WB page 79

We all enjoy having new mobile phones, but what should we do with our old phones? Should we keep throwing them away? Remember that it is not easy to make mobile phones. They need to have a lot of important materials⁽¹⁾ inside them. When you throw away a phone, these materials can be very bad for the environment. I think that one day, we will not need to buy a new phone every few years. People will design⁽²⁾ phones that can use the latest⁽³⁾ technology, even when it changes. Then, we will avoid throwing away our old phones. That will be very good for the environment!



Check Vocabulary

(1) مواد / خامات (2) يصمم (3) الأحدث

• on Lesson 4 SB page 18

Hassan's Blog

Weaving⁽¹⁾ is an Egyptian tradition⁽²⁾, but there aren't many traditional⁽³⁾ weavers⁽⁴⁾ in Egypt today. So I was surprised to see three weavers working on traditional looms⁽⁵⁾ when I visited the Reform Studio in Cairo.



Check Vocabulary

(1) حرفة النسيج (2) حرفة تقليدية / عادة (3) تقليدي (4) حائك / نساج (5) النول

When Mariam Hazem and Hend Riad were students at university, they wanted to do something about plastic rubbish. They found a way of making old plastic bags into long threads⁽⁶⁾, which they could make into⁽⁷⁾ fabric⁽⁸⁾ on a traditional loom. Then they used the plastic fabric to make colourful bags, chairs and small carpets⁽⁹⁾.

Today their bags, chairs and carpets are sold in shops in Cairo and London. This is a fantastic project because it is great for the environment and great for one of our Egyptian traditions!



Check Vocabulary

سجادة (9) قماش (8) تحول إلى (7) خيط (6)

on Lesson 4 WB page 80

Waste is a big problem around the world. However, many of the things that we throw away can easily be recycled.

- Russia used a plastic football field⁽¹⁾ in the 2018 World Cup. It was made from 50,000 plastic cups.
- You can recycle cotton⁽²⁾ and wool⁽³⁾ to make new clothes. You can also use old plastic bottles to make rubbish bags and plastic bags for shopping.
- You can make lovely⁽⁴⁾ new handbags⁽⁵⁾ from pieces of leather⁽⁶⁾ that factories do not use.
- Some stones are very expensive, but you can make beautiful jewellery⁽⁷⁾ from old glass bottles.
- When plastic fishing nets⁽⁸⁾ fall into the sea, they are very bad for sea animals. We can collect the fishing nets and recycle them into other plastic items, like sunglasses⁽⁹⁾ for example⁽¹⁰⁾.
- You can make bricks⁽¹¹⁾ to build houses from old plastic bottle tops⁽¹²⁾. They are very strong!

Check Vocabulary

جلد (مديروغ) (6) حقائب يد (5) جميل (4) صوف (3) قطن (2) ملعب (1)
غطاء (12) قوالب الطوب (11) على سبيل المثال (10) نظارة شمسية (9) شبكة الصيد (8) مجوهرات (7)

on Lesson 4 WB page 80

There are a lot of traditional arts⁽¹⁾ in Egypt. I learned about the traditional art of weaving at school today. A weaver uses a machine⁽²⁾ called a loom. This crosses⁽³⁾ threads under and over each other to make fabric. Weavers can make very beautiful things.

Check Vocabulary

يتقاطع - يمزج (3) ماكينة (2) فن تقليدي (1)

Videoscript on Lesson 4 SB page 18

Every day, thousands of people collect rubbish from homes and the streets of Cairo. These people collect more than two million tonnes⁽¹⁾ of paper, plastic, wood and metal every year. Around 85% of this rubbish is recycled or reused in many different ways. This makes it one of the most successful⁽²⁾ recycling programs in the world.

Some of the rubbish is sold to factories so that it can be used again. Some of it is used to make jewellery⁽³⁾, bags and carpets⁽⁴⁾, which are then sold in shops around Egypt and online around the world. The people who collect rubbish work with a charity⁽⁵⁾ called the Association for the Protection of the Environment⁽⁶⁾ to make these items.

There is also a project between the people who collect rubbish, the government⁽⁷⁾ and some international companies to help people to stop using so much plastic in Egypt. When people collect an empty⁽⁸⁾ plastic bottle that belongs to one of these companies, the company⁽⁹⁾ will pay the collector⁽¹⁰⁾ some money. So the people who collect rubbish are working hard to help to protect Egypt's environment.

We all need to recycle and reuse our rubbish. If we don't, we will destroy⁽¹¹⁾ the planet.

Check Vocabulary

جمعية الحفاظ على البيئة (6) جمعية خيرية (5) سجاد (4) مجوهرات (3) ناجح (2) اطنان (1)
يدمر - يتلف (11) جامع (القمامة) (10) شركة (9) فارغ (8) الحكومة (7)

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 let - allow

* let + (مفعول به) + (inf. المصدر)

يتخلص

ex.: - My father **let** us go to the cinema.

* allow + (مفعول به) + (to + inf. المصدر)

ex.: - Mr Gohari **allows** us to play football.

2 throw ... away / throw ... into ...

* throw ... away

يتخلص من

ex.: - He **threw** his old shoes **away**.

* throw ... into ...

يرمي ... في ...

ex.: - He **threw** some bits of bread **into** the lake to feed the fish.

3 make + مفعول + into ...

يحول ... إلى ...

ex.: - They **made** their old bags **into** new ones.

4 Pronunciation

* Syllable is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound and that it is pronounced as a unit.

المقطع اللفظي هو جزء من كلمة تحتوي على حرف متحرك واحد ، يتم نطقه كوحدة.

* How to divide words into syllables ?

- Separate prefixes and suffixes from root words

ex.: **pre** **view**

↑ ↑
prefix root

- Divide between (two or more consonants) that are next to each other : (first and second consonants).

ex.: **des** **sert**

↑ ↑
first second

- If the consonant is surrounded by long vowel divide before the consonant.

ex.: **ba** **by** **re** **sult**

- If the consonant is surrounded by short vowel divide after the consonant.

ex.: **met** **al** **riv** **er**

• One-syllable words :

ex.: new / man / day

• Two-syllable words :

ex.: problem / cartridge / plastic / printer

• Three-syllable words :

ex.: family / horrible / expensive / recycle.

* **Stress** is the emphasis placed upon a syllable by pronouncing it more loudly than those syllables surround it.

التركيز على مقطع لفظي من خلال نطقه بصوت أعلى من المقاطع المحيطة به.

Notes :

- One word has only one stress.

يوجد تشديد واحد فقط في الكلمة ليس أكثر.

- We can only stress vowels, not consonants.

يمكن وضع التشديد على الحروف المتحركة فقط وليس الساكنة.

ex.: **problem** → Oo

expensive → oOo

family → Ooo

الدائرة الأكبر حجمًا تشير إلى المقطع الذي عليه تشديد لفظي.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

agree with	يتفق مع	bad for	ضار بـ
wrong with	خطأ / عيب في	connected to	متصل بـ
know how to ...	يتعلم / يعرف كيف يقوم بـ ...	ask for help	يطلب المساعدة
plastic football fields	ملاعب النجيل الصناعي	find a way of	يجد طريقة لـ

get into = enter	يدخل	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة
better for	أفضل لـ	work on	يعمل على / بشأن
(be) sold in shops	تباع في المحلات التجارية	at university	في الجامعة
think of	يفكر في	do something about	يقوم بفعل شيء عن
reform studio	مشغل إصلاحات		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- Some students learn about the traditional art of carpets at school today.
a. hearing b. leaving c. weaving d. breaking
- We should replace the ink in the printer regularly.
a. cart b. cartridge c. carriage d. court
- The of the sofa is in need of repair.
a. loom b. catridge c. fabric d. ink
- Weavers can make the long into fabric on looms.
a. blogs b. threads c. energy d. history

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

- SB** There aren't many weavers in Egypt today.
a. modern b. traditional c. central d. decorated
- WB** You can make to build houses from old plastic bottle tops.
a. bricks b. sand c. sunglasses d. rubbish
- SB** Mariam and Hend found a of making thread from plastic bags.
a. wrong b. way c. road d. style

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- Don't walk on that bridge. It is
a. connected b. broken c. attractive d. colourful
- This sweater is made from
a. metal b. wood c. wool d. plastic

- are websites used by many people to communicate.
a. Messages b. Letters c. Emails d. Social media

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- Is Sama's computer connected electricity?
a. to b. at c. on d. off
- Don't let people at you, Yasser.
a. laughs b. laughed c. to laugh d. laugh
- Please, something for my poor dog.
a. make b. do c. give d. take

Definitions

- is a liquid used in pens or printers for writing.
a. Oil b. Loom c. Link d. Ink
- A is a person who makes cloth by weaving.
a. weaver b. cleaner c. trainer d. player
- A is a machine used for weaving.
a. wheel b. loom c. plane d. truck
- The is a long piece of cotton, silk, etc. which people can use to sew clothes.
a. thread b. ink c. needle d. reed

Guessing the meaning from the text

- A plastic football field was used in the 2018 World Cup. The word "field" means
a. competitor b. computer c. sports playground d. land
- The printer is connected to the computer. The word "connected" means together.
a. transported b. joined c. related d. phoned
- We phone our friends instead of sending them messages. The expression "Instead of" means
a. easy to understand b. giving useful things
c. in the place of d. very skillful and special

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمة Word	المترادفات Synonym	المضادات Antonym/opposite
below أسفل	under - down	above فوق
connect يربط - يتصل	attach - associate	disconnect/separate يفصل
wrong خطأ	incorrect	right صواب
broken مكسور	smashed - damaged	unbroken غير منكسر (سليم)
traditional تقليدي	classic	modern حديث / عصري

Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
- al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	traditional تقليدي
- er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم الفاعل	weaver حائك / نساج
- ed	تكون الصفة من الفعل	connected متصل - مرتبط
- ful	تكون الصفة من الاسم	colourful زاهي الألوان

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- We can form the adjective of the word "connect" by adding the suffix
a. - ment b. - ing c. - ed d. - al
- If he does something wrong, he has to be punished. In this sentence, we can replace the word "wrong" with ".....".
a. incorrect b. tradition c. right d. cycle
- The antonym of the word "traditional" is
a. ancient b. modern c. wrong d. classic
- There is a broken glass on the floor. The synonym of the word "broken" is
a. correct b. incorrect c. damaged d. amazing
- We add the suffix "....." to form the adjective of the word "tradition".
a. - y b. - al c. - ous d. - ed
- Please, don't write below the page. The antonym of the word "below" is
a. next b. less c. under d. above

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) Part 2 فى ملحق (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

مهارة القراءة

قم بقراءة 80 page Reading on lesson 4 WB من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 98 ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Scan grade appropriate text

- You can use to make clothes.
a. cotton and metal b. wool and glass
c. plastic and cotton d. glass and metal

B. Answer the following questions :

- Making inference عمل استنتاج
2. Do you think that recycling waste is hard ? Why / Why not ?
- No, I think it is not hard as many materials can be recycled easily.
- Making prediction about upcoming events : تنبؤ للأحداث المتوقعة
3. What will happen if plastic fishing nets fall into the sea ?

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على تنمية مهارة الكتابة

"A school recycling project" مشروع مدرسي لإعادة التصنيع.

- Some students want to start a school recycling project
1. يريد بعض الطلاب أن يبدأوا مشروع إعادة التصنيع في المدرسة.
- They want to recycle printer cartridges.
2. يريدون أن يعيدوا تصنيع حباريات الطباعة.
- They are going to put the old printer cartridges in the recycling boxes.
3. سوف يضعون حباريات الطباعة القديمة في صناديق إعادة التدوير.
- They will take the recycling boxes to the recycling centre every month.
4. سوف يأخذون صناديق إعادة التدوير إلى مركز إعادة التدوير كل شهر.

B. Building sentences

① Read and complete :

nets - to - bricks - for - having - problem

1. We all enjoy new mobile phones.
2. Waste is a big around the world.
3. Throwing fishing are bad for sea animals.
4. You can make to build houses.
5. They decided study hard.

تلويح
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على معارة الكتابة

- Write a review of ONE HUNDRED and TEN 110 words on the following :
"A school recycling project"

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن : Asking and answering questions about :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. What could you recycle by making it into something else ? - ما الأشياء التي تستطيع إعادة تصنيعها إلى شئ آخر ؟	- We can recycle old handbags by making the leather from them into carpets. - يمكننا إعادة تدوير حقائب اليد القديمة عن طريق تحويل الجلد الموجود بها إلى سجاد.
2. How would recycling help the environment ? - كيف ستساعد إعادة التدوير البيئة ؟	- It'd reduce the waste and pollution. - سوف تقلل من المخلفات وتحد من التلوث.
3. How can we help keep our air, water and land clean ? - كيف يمكننا المساعدة في الحفاظ على نظافة الهواء والمياه واليابسة الخاصة بنا ؟	- By using renewable energy such as solar energy and wind power. - باستخدام الطاقة المتجددة مثل الطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 3 & 4

Understand Apply Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Hamza is talking to Mr. Ayman about renewable and non-renewable energy.

Hamza : Good morning, Mr. Ayman. Could you explain something for me?

Mr. Ayman: Good morning, Hamza. Of course, (1) ?

Hamza : (2) ?

Mr. Ayman: Renewable energy is a kind of energy that is easily replaced.

Hamza : Can you give me examples of renewable energy ?

Mr. Ayman: (3)

Hamza : Is oil one of the examples of renewable energy ?

Mr. Ayman: (4)

Hamza : Which is better for the environment renewable or non-renewable energy ?

Mr. Ayman: (5)

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

will - weaving - weave - loom - would - carpets

My grandmother is very active. Her favourite hobby is (1)
She has an old (2) which she uses to (3) many beautiful carpets. I always ask her to teach me that nice hobby and I think she (4) teach me how to do it soon.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Throwing rubbish in the streets is horrible behaviour. The antonym of the word "horrible" is

a. terrible

b. ugly

c. busy

d. lovely

2. We add the suffix to get the adjective from the word "colour".
a. - ing b. - ful c. - ness d. - ment
3. Your methods of teaching are traditional, you should change it. The synonym of the word "traditional" is
a. useful b. well-known c. modern d. old-fashioned
4. This happens from a short time. It's the news.
a. free b. old c. latest d. usual
5. is cloth or material which can be used to make clothes.
a. Skin b. Metal c. Skill d. Fabric
6. To get the opposite of the word "broken", we add the prefix
a. dis- b. il- c. im- d. un-

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. **WB** There is no bread, so we need (go) to the baker's.
2. **WB** If you keep eating sweets, you (have) bad teeth.
3. **WB** Ahmed (not come) to school tomorrow if he feels ill.
4. **SB** I decided (buy) a water botter that I can reuse from the shop.
5. **SB** If you (not avoid) cutting down our rainforests, we won't stop climate change.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

نحارب عنده في نهاية الكتاب

"A review about a recycling project"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

ocean (n)	محيط	seagrass (n)	عشب البحر
rainforest (n)	غابة إستوائية / مطيرة	washing up	غسيل الأطباق
wetland (n)	مستنقع - منطقة رطبة	coral reef (n)	شعاب مرجانية
herbs (n)	أعشاب	speech (n)	خطاب - حديث
health (n)	صحة		

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 19 WB page 81

conclude(d)(v)	يختم - يستنتج	tips (n)	نصائح
reuse(d)(v)	يعيد استعمال / استخدام	conclusion(n)	خاتمة
everyone (pron)	كل شخص	spider plants(n)	النباتات المتسلقة
introduce(d)(v)	يقدم	present (ed) (v)	يقدم - يعرض
invite (d) (v)	يدعو	solution (n)	حل
transport (n)	النقل - المواصلات	subject (n)	موضوع

Lesson 6

SB page 20 WB page 82

along(adv)	على امتداد	time(n)	مرة
colourful(adj)	زاهى الألوان	coast(n)	ساحل
reason(n)	سبب	diver(n)	غواص
contrast(n)	تناقض	remind(ed)(v)	يذكر
however(conj)	مع ذلك	habitat(n)	موطن/سكن
including(preposition)	بما فى ذلك	factual(adj)	حقيقى / واقعى
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	section (n)	جزء - قسم
baker's (n)	مخبز	UK (United Kingdom)	المملكة المتحدة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
leave يغادر	left	left
smell يشم	smelt	smelt
buy يشتري	bought	bought
grow ينمو/يزرع	grew	grown
know يعرف	knew	known
wear يرتدي	wore	worn
ride يمتطي / يستقل	rode	ridden

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات. وللمزيد من التعريفات أنظر قاموس المعاصر اللغوي

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

seagrass a plant which lives in the sea, usually near the coast العشب البحري

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

make a speech	يعد خطبة	give a speech	يلقي خطبة
sure	يتأكد		

II Listening and Reading

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 19

Ziad : Today, I'm going to talk about what we can do to help the environment. I'd like to start by saying that we should all use less energy. For example, turn off⁽¹⁾ the TV and computer at night. Remember to turn off the lights when you leave a room. And we should all use stairs⁽²⁾ and not the lift⁽³⁾. This saves energy and keeps us fit and healthy.



Check Vocabulary

مصعد (3) | سلالم (2) | يطفى (جهاز) (1)

In the next part of my speech⁽⁴⁾, I'd like to talk about water. We need to save water, so please turn off the tap⁽⁵⁾ when you brush your teeth. And when you water your plants, use your washing up water. And please stop buying water in plastic bottles. Buy a glass water bottle that you can use again. This saves plastic waste⁽⁶⁾.



And it's really important to recycle as much as possible. Recycle your plastic, glass and paper at home. And why not start a recycling project at school?

I'd like to finish by saying, we can all help the environment. We need to understand that the environment is our home and it is important that we respect⁽⁷⁾ it.

Check Vocabulary

يحترم (7) | مخلفات بلاستيكية (6) | صنوبر (5) | حديث / خطاب (4)

Reading

on Lesson 5 WB page 81

Today, I'm going to talk about plants in the house. Not everyone has them, but I think you should! I'd like to start by saying that plants are very good for your health.

To begin with⁽¹⁾, plants breathe out oxygen, which is a gas that we need to breathe. Also, plants often absorb pollution in the air, making it cleaner for us.

In the next part of my speech, I'd like to talk about where to put your plants. Some plants smell nice, so I put these in my balcony. And you can eat the leaves of plants called herbs⁽²⁾, so put these in your kitchen! Spider plants⁽³⁾ look attractive⁽⁴⁾, so I put them in an open place, like the living room.

I'd like to finish by saying that it is best to choose plants that grow naturally⁽⁵⁾ in Egypt. They will look better in your house since they will look familiar. Plants that grow naturally in Egypt are easier to take care of.

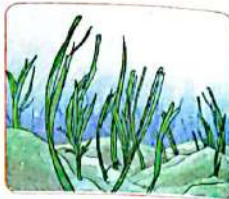
Check Vocabulary

بشكل طبيعي (5) | جذاب (4) | النباتات المتسلقة (3) | أعشاب (2) | أول ما أبدأ به (1)

on Lesson 6 SB page 20

Seagrass

Seagrass is found in the sea **along**⁽¹⁾ the coast of many countries. It is food for many sea animals, **including**⁽²⁾ turtles. Baby fish and sea animals live in seagrass because it is a **safe**⁽³⁾ place.



Seagrass helps keep the sea healthy and it can help stop climate change. This is because seagrass absorbs 10% of the ocean's carbon dioxide every year. Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide 35 **times**⁽⁴⁾ faster than rainforests. That is why seagrass can help stop climate change.

About 90% of all seagrass has **disappeared**⁽⁵⁾ from the UK's coast in the last 100 years. However, there is an environmental project in the UK that is growing new seagrass. When the plants are big enough, **divers**⁽⁶⁾ will plant them along the coast. The plants will still be quite small. Nevertheless, they will grow into 20,000 square metres of seagrass.

Check Vocabulary

غواصين (6) يختفي (5) مرات (4) آمن (3) بما في ذلك (2) على امتداد (1)

on Lesson 7 SB page 21

How to protect our planet

RIDE YOUR BIKE



Help stop air pollution.
Ride your bike.

DON'T BUY PLASTIC



SAVE ENERGY



VOLUNTEER



SAVE WATER



RECYCLE



PLANT A TREE



General Notes on Reading & Listening

يبدأ / ينتهي بـ ...

1 start / begin / finish by + inf. + ing

- ex.: - I'd like to **start by saying** hello.
- I'd like to **finish by saying** life is not easy.
- I'd like to **begin by studying** math lessons.

يُساعد

2 help + inf. المصدر / to + inf. المصدر

- ex.: - Seagrass **helps keep** the sea healthy.

لذلك

3 That's why + جملة = So

- ex.: - Shady was ill. **That's why / So** he was absent yesterday.

ومع ذلك

4 Nevertheless

- ex.: - Salma was tired. **Nevertheless**, she kept on working.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

give reasons to	يعطي مبررات لـ	be dangerous for	يكون خطر على
about 90% of	حوالي ٩٠٪ من	in the last 100 years	في المائة عام الأخيرة
talk about	يتحدث عن	to begin with	أول ما يبدأ به
To conclude	الخلاصة أن	careful of / about	حذر من
walk down the road	يسير على الطريق	save energy	يوفر طاقة
at the end	في النهاية	save water	يوفر المياه
World Wetland Day	اليوم العالمي للأراضي الرطبة		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- Some have a strong smell like mint.
a. corals b. palm trees c. hills d. herbs
- is a safe place for many sea animals.
a. Rainforest b. Sea breeze c. Seagrass d. Seahorse

3. Today, I'm going to give a about protecting our planet.
a. conversation b. speech c. beach d. reason
4. Mum cooks the food and I do the up.
a. watching b. washing c. drawing d. drying

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

5. **SB** Seagrass is found in the sea along the of many countries.
a. rest b. toast c. coast d. post
6. **WB** You can see all kinds of fish at coral reefs.
a. central b. colourful c. final d. ugly
7. **WB** Coral reefs do not like changes in That is why climate change can kill them.
a. colour b. temperature c. place d. text
8. **WB** You will get very if you go running every day.
a. worse b. sad c. busy d. healthy

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. We decided to start a recycling project to plastic bottles in our community.
a. retry b. redo c. reuse d. rewrite
10. Trees in the absorb a lot of carbon dioxide.
a. rainforests b. sea life c. spider plants d. gases
11. It is dangerous to swim in the ocean when it is cold or
a. hot b. windy c. cool d. sunny

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. The head teacher started his speech greeting us.
a. by b. of c. off d. about
13. My older brother helped me how to cook.
a. teach b. taught c. teaching d. teaches
14. She is old. , she is fit and active.
a. And b. Because c. So d. Nevertheless
15. 90% of the students speak English well.
a. Some b. All c. About d. Any
16. Give me a reason making this mistake.
a. for b. of c. to d. with

Definitions تعريفات

17. The is a plant which lives in the sea, usually near the coast.
a. seawater b. sea view c. seagrass d. seashell

Guessing the meaning تخمين المعنى

18. Suddenly, all the cats ran away, they
a. reminded b. disappeared c. appeared d. showed
19. Most butterflies have many colours. They're
a. plain b. colourless c. regular d. colourful
20. Mum always tells me not to forget my homework. She me.
a. remembers b. reminds c. forgets d. says
21. She writes a funny sentence at the end of the email. I like her funny
a. introduction b. start c. conclusion d. beginning

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/opposite المضاد
naturally بشكل طبيعي	normally	unnaturally بشكل غير طبيعي
attractive جذاب / جميل	beautiful	unattractive/ugly غير جذاب / قبيح
colourful ملون - زاهي الألوان	bright	plain / pale سادة / شاحب
safe آمن	protected	dangerous خطير endangered معرض للخطر
begin يبدأ	start	finish ينتهي
suitable مناسب - ملائم	convenient	unsuitable غير مناسب / ملائم

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples امثلة
dis-	تعطي عكس المعنى	disappear يختفي
re -	تعطي معنى تكرار الفعل مرة ثانية	reuse يعيد استخدام
-ous	تكون الصفة من الاسم	dangerous خطير
-ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	quickly بسرعة

-y	تكون الصفة من الاسم	healthy windy	صحي عاصف
-ive	تكون الصفة من الفعل	attractive	جذاب
-er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	speaker	متحدث
-ful	تكون الصفة من الاسم	careful	دريص

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- We can form the opposite of the word "attractive" by adding the prefix ".....".
a. im- b. re- c. un- d. dis-
- The suffix "....." changes the verb "attract" into an adjective.
a. -able b. -ive c. -y d. -er
- We add the suffix "....." to change the noun "danger" into an adjective.
a. -able b. -ous c. -ful d. -ment
- The word "protected" is the same as the word
a. dangerous b. bored c. safe d. relaxed
- The antonym of the word "begin" is ".....".
a. start b. finish c. attract d. appear
- To make the noun from the word "speak", we add the suffix
a. -ist b. -er c. -ment d. -ness
- The synonym of the word "suitable" is
a. helpful b. respectable c. convenient d. content
- The prefix "un-" in the word "unnaturally" gives the of the word "naturally".
a. synonym b. antonym c. adverb d. adjective
- This jewellery is very attractive. The synonym of the word "attractive" is
a. protected b. careful c. free d. beautiful

III Language

Remember تذكر

Expressing reasons & contrast التعبير عن الأسباب والتناقض

التعبير عن السبب:

1 Reason :

لأن / بسبب

because

Subject + verb because + subject + verb
فاعل فعل فاعل فعل

ex. - Baby fish and sea animals live in seagrass because it is a safe place.

This is because

هذا بسبب

Subject + verb This is because subject + verb
فاعل فعل فاعل فعل

ex. - Seagrass helps keep the sea healthy and it can help stop climate change. This is because seagrass absorbs 10% of the ocean's carbon dioxide every year.

That is why

لذلك / ولهذا السبب

That is why subject + verb
جملة كاملة فاعل فعل

ex. - Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide 35 times faster than rainforests. That is why seagrass can help stop climate change.

2 Contrast :

التعبير عن التناقض:

However

ومع ذلك

Subject + verb However, subject + verb
فاعل فعل فاعل فعل

ex. - About 90% of all seagrass has disappeared from the UK's coast in the last 100 years. However, there is an environmental project in the UK that is growing new seagrass.

Nevertheless

رأى / ومع ذلك / غير أن

Subject + verb Nevertheless, subject + verb
فاعل فعل فاعل فعل

ex. - The plants will still be quite small. Nevertheless, they will grow into 20,000 square metres of seagrass.

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

- WB Wetlands are important for the environment (that's why) we are losing a lot of it every year.
- WB Having more floods (why) a lot of the world's ice is melting.
- WB Deserts can be very dangerous habitats. (That's why) hundreds of tourists like to visit them.
- SB A large amount of seagrass has disappeared (that's why) there's an environmental project to grow new seagrass.

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- Sally can't speak well (so) she has a severe sore throat.
- Ali is quite poor (because) he has expensive clothes.
- Nany is successful (that's why) she studies hard.
- Helmy is angry (that's because) he doesn't speak to us.
- Fady has come second in the competition (because) he is sad.
- Dalia got the job (that's why) she had done well in the interview.
- The competition was tough (so) our team did well in all matches.
- Rahma has got high marks (because) she is smiling.
- Rahma is smiling (that's why) she has got high marks.
- Basim didn't train well (because) he won the game.
- The car didn't have enough petrol (because) it broke down.

- Leen stopped crying (that's why) her mom had fed her.
- Halim sang well (however) all people in Egypt liked his songs.
- The test was difficult (that's because) all students failed.
- Ayman doesn't like Mostafa (however) he always tells lies.
- Mo Salah plays well for Liverpool (because) he doesn't play well for the national team of Egypt.
- Movie stars are usually rich (that's why) they don't enjoy their personal life.

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارف (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.
تلميح للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)
Part 2 فى ملحق (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

مهارة القراءة

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 20 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 112 ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Determining the main idea تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية

- The main idea of the passage is about
a. sea animals b. seagrass
c. climate change d. deforestation

B. Answer the following questions :

- Making inference عمل استنتاج

- Infer how seagrass can stop climate change.

- Summarising a text تلخيص نص

- Give a brief summary of the last paragraph of the passage in your own words.

2. Writing Corner

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على تنمية مهارة الكتابة

عشب البحر "Seagrass"

1. Seagrass is found in the sea along the coast of many countries.
١. يوجد عشب البحر على طول الساحل في كثير من الدول.
2. It is food for many sea animals.
٢. إنه طعام للكثير من الحيوانات البحرية.
3. Seagrass helps keep the sea healthy and it can help stop climate change.
٣. إنه يساعد في الحفاظ على سلامة مياه البحر ويساعد في توقف التغير المناخي.
4. Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide 35 times faster than rainforests.
٤. عشب البحر يمتص ثاني أكسيد الكربون أسرع ٣٥ مرة من الغابات المطيرة.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

to walk - turn - plant - avoid - walking - important

1. Rainforests are very for the environment.
2. Many tourists enjoy in the desert.
3. It is best to swimming in the ocean if it is windy.
4. Remember to off the lights at night.
5. We should all more trees.

تلويح

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على مهارة الكتابة :

- Write a review of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"Seagrass"

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

▶ Giving a speech :

القاء حديث :

1. Today, I'm going to talk about اليوم سأكون بصدد الحديث عن
2. I'd like to start by saying أود أن أبدأ بقول
3. To begin with أول ما بدء به هو أن
4. In the next part of my speech, I'd like to في الجزء التالي من حديثي أود أن
5. I'd like to finish by saying أود أن أبنى حديثي بقول

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Nermin is phoning Reham to apologize for not coming to her birthday party yesterday.

Nermin : Hello, Reham. Happy birthday to you !

Reham : Hello, Nermin. (1)

Nermin : I'm sorry. I couldn't come to your birthday party.

Reham : (2) ?

Nermin : Because my father was ill and we took him to the doctor.

Reham : What bad news! (3) ?

Nermin : He has a fever and he is coughing.

Reham : I'm sorry to hear that. How is he now ?

Nermin : (4) Thank you.

Reham : (5)

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

ride - turn - save - will - would - pollution

People should be careful at their homes. They should (1) energy. They should (2) off their devices and lamps after using them. Instead of taking a bus, they can (3) bikes and this (4) make them healthy, too.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The new dresses are all colourful. The antonym of the word "colourful" is

- a. bright b. dark c. plain d. light

2. A/An is one of the very large areas of sea on the Earth's surface.

- a. island b. ocean c. lake d. river

3. We add the prefix before the verb "use" to mean use something again.

- a. dis- b. un- c. ir- d. re-

4. is a plant which lives in the sea.

- a. Bamboo b. Seagrass c. Grass d. Rose

5. We add the suffix to get the adjective from the noun "wind".

- a. -ly b. -ive c. -ful d. -y

6. They start the concert with my favourite song. The synonym of the word "start" is

- a. end b. free c. let d. begin

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. She won't (waiting) for us because she is late.
2. Magda avoids (make) friends with her neighbours.
3. Salah enjoys (score) goals in every match he plays.
4. Lamiaa decided (joined) the sports club.
5. Ashraf stopped (smoke) last month to keep healthy.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

معاينة في نهاية الكتاب

"A review about how to stop pollution"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتي



If you got ●, you need to revise the unit again on the next page.
 قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد،
 قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

في نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادراً على أن
 At the end of this unit, I will be able to

1 Learn important vocabulary اتعلم مفردات لغوية هامة

- | | |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> deforestation | <input type="checkbox"/> printer cartridges |
| <input type="checkbox"/> melting ice | <input type="checkbox"/> absorb |
| <input type="checkbox"/> climate change | <input type="checkbox"/> wind power |
| <input type="checkbox"/> solar energy | <input type="checkbox"/> weaving |

2 Read and write sentences using if / when "first conditional" and (verb + to + inf. or - ing).

اقرأ واكتب جمل باستخدام الحالة الأولى الشرطية لقاعدة if/when أو الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها to والمصدر أو الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها الفعل + -ing

- ☐ If our oceans keep getting warmer, some coral reefs will die.
- ☐ Salma stopped reading adventure stories.
- ☐ They will win the match if they play well.
- ☐ Sama decided to buy a new mobile.

3 Talk about environmental problems

التحدث عن مشاكل بيئية

- ☐ A. What does deforestation produce ?
- ☐ B. It produces greenhouse gases.
- ☐ A. Why are planting trees important ?
- ☐ B. As they absorb carbon dioxide from the air.

لمزيد من التدريبات
 جزء للمتابعة في كراسة المعاصر
 جزء للمتابعة الشهرية بعد كل ثلاث وحدات



Review

on unit 8

SB page 21

WB page 83

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
protect environmental problems	1- If / When + present simple + will + inf. نستخدم (If / When) في الحالة الأولى للتعبير عن احتمال في المستقبل ex: Our environment will be cleaner if we recycle our rubbish. * If you study hard, you will get high marks.	* Discussing environmental problems مناقشة المشاكل البيئية - What will happen if we don't recycle our rubbish? - It will cause air pollution. - Do you think that the recycling project in Cairo is a good idea? Why/Why not? - Yes, I think it is a good idea because it helps clean and protect the environment. - What makes the most greenhouse gases? Electricity and power. - How can we help keep our air, water and land clean? - We can recycle more of our waste.
serious air pollution deforestation coral reefs climate change carbon dioxide floods droughts greenhouse gases	2- (verb + to + inf. or - ing) ex: Salma decided to help poor people. ex: Sara needs to study her lessons. ex: We must start recycling more rubbish. ex: Ali likes to recycle / recycling.	
landfill sites renewable energy weaving weavers global warming fabric herbs spider plants	غازات الاحتباس الحراري مواقع دفن النفايات الطاقة المتجددة النسيج النساويون الاحتباس الحراري قمش اعشاب نباتات عنكبوتية	

Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة

معالجة جديدة لأنماط وأنشكال مختلفة لمهارة الكتابة

A (review / biography / short story)

Climate change - A recycling project / Environmental problems / Seagrass



Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لتنمية مهارة الكتابة.

- What is climate change caused by?
- Is recycling rubbish good for the environment?
- How can seagrass help the environment?
- What should we do with plastic and paper waste?



Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

- air pollution
- serious
- recycle
- save
- avoid
- slow down

- droughts
- forest fires
- floods
- melting ice

- volunteers
- carbon dioxide
- planet
- greenhouse gasses
- methane
- renewable energy



Expressions & Structures

تعابير وتراكيب مساعدة

* If we burn plastic rubbish,
* It is a good idea to
* We should

* Volunteers should help
* Recycling is
* Cutting down trees will cause



Practise

تدرب على مهارة الكتابة

Write a review of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"environmental problems"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضع اختبار) في كل وحدة والتي تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع تدريبات الوحدة و كل التدريبات الخاصة بالملحق.

unit
8

1. Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

environmental problems	مشاكل بيئية	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
warmer seas	بحار أكثر دفئاً	avoid	يتجنب
volunteers	متطوعين	methane	غاز الميثان
save	ينقذ	global warming	الاحتباس الحراري
droughts	جفاف	loom	نزل
forest fires	حرائق الغابات	weavers	نساجون
landfill sites	مواقع دفن النفايات	attractive	جذاب

2. Language

قواعد لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

- If⁽¹⁾ you eat a lot of sweets, you will have bad teeth.
- Adel enjoys listening⁽²⁾ to music.
- Mona decided to study⁽³⁾ hard.
- What will happen if we⁽⁴⁾ don't recycle rubbish ?
- We must start recycling⁽⁵⁾ more rubbish.

Check Language

- حالة الشرطية الأولى
- يضاف للفعل -ing بعد الفعل (enjoy)
- نوع الفعل في المصدر بعد (decide to)
- صيغة الاستفهام في الحالة الشرطية الأولى
- يضاف للفعل -ing بعد الفعل (start)

3. Speaking

Discussing environmental problems.

وظائف لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

مناقشة المشاكل البيئية

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. What is climate change caused by ?	- It is caused by greenhouse gases such as carbon dioxide.
2. Why is recycling good for the environment ?	- It helps slow down climate change.
3. What are types of renewable energy ?	- Solar energy and wind power.

Test

on Unit 8

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار
إلكترونياً وتصويبه



A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Maha is asking her elder brother, Mustafa, to help her with an English homework.

Maha : Mustafa, can you do me a favour ?

Mustafa : Sure. What do you want ?

Maha : (1)

Mustafa : OK. In which subject will you ask me that question ?

Maha : (2)

Mustafa : What question would you like to ask me ? I'm listening carefully.

Maha : (3)

Mustafa : The word ocean means one of the very large areas of sea on the Earth's surface. (4)

Maha : (5) Are you interested in studying geography ?

Mustafa : Yes, it's my favourite.

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

driving – drive – air – pollution – dioxide – oxygen

The Earth is the planet on which we live. We should protect our planet from (1) It has many kinds like (2) and water pollution. Air pollution is a result to the increase in carbon (3) , so we should avoid (4) old cars and drive modern ones which work with natural gas.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Charles Dickens was born in 1812 into a good family in the south of England. When he was still a young boy, his father went to prison because he had got into debt غرق في الديون. Charles went to London to earn money for the family. At the age of twelve, he was working for ten hours a day in a factory. He saw how hard life was for poor people, and

many of the ideas for the stories of his novels and the characters in them came from this time.

After he left the factory, Dickens went to work as an office clerk, but he did not enjoy this. In 1834, he started work as a newspaper journalist. While he was working, for the newspaper ; he was also writing magazine stories about life in London.

He wrote many successful novels as "Oliver Twist", "Nicholas Nickleby", "David Copperfield", "A Tale of Two Cities" and "Great Expectations".

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The main idea of the passage is

- a. Charles Dickens went to prison
- b. Charles Dickens' biography
- c. Oliver Twist is a great novel
- d. Charles Dickens' job

2. Charles went to London to

- a. work with his father
- b. go to the prison
- c. work in a magazine
- d. earn money

3. Dickens had lived a childhood.

- a. interesting
- b. comfortable
- c. attractive
- d. difficult

b. Answer the following questions :

4. How were Dickens' works affected by his life ?

5. Do you think that having a hard life may be the cause of success ?
Why / Why not ?

6. Summarise the first paragraph of the passage in your own words.

C. Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The polluted water makes fish die. The antonym of the word "die" is

- a. fail
- b. live
- c. pass away
- d. continue

2. Although Ali is tired, he keeps working. The synonym of the word "keep" is

- a. stop
- b. bring
- c. continue
- d. succeed

3. To get the noun of the word "pollute", we add the suffix

- a. -ment
- b. -sion
- c. -al
- d. -ion

4. To means to make cloth, a carpet, a basket, etc. by crossing threads or thin pieces under and over each other on a loom.

- a. weave
- b. wave
- c. obtain
- d. gain

5. She cannot buy that mobile. She doesn't have enough money.

- a. terrible
- b. horrible
- c. expensive
- d. weak

6. We can add the prefix to get the opposite of "appear".

- a. il-
- b. im-
- c. dis-
- d. un-

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Mayar stopped (drink) fizzy drinks last month.
2. He likes (speak) English with native speakers.
3. The manager decided (reward) the employees for their hard work.
4. Will your father (allowed) you to join the club ?
5. You need (improve) your English if you want to get a good job.

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A biography about a famous person you admire"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 8 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Tamer and Khalid are talking about sports.

Tamer : What's your favourite sport, Khalid ?

Khalid : (1)

Tamer : (2)

Khalid : I play it once a week in the club. (3)

Tamer : I prefer football. It is a very exciting sport.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations :

1. You are asked if trees help protect the environment.

2. Your friend wants to know how you feel when you win a prize.

3 Write a paragraph of six sentences on :

"Air pollution"

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختر ذكائك

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Did you know that some plants pollution from the air ?
a. avoid b. absorb c. throw d. recycle
- We all need more green energy.
a. use b. to use c. used d. using
- A is a machine used for weaving .
a. law b. label c. lens d. loom
- We enjoy our rubbish. It's fun and it helps the environment.
a. recycle b. to recycle c. recycling d. recycled
- Trees are good for us because they breathe in and breathe out oxygen.
a. carbon dioxide b. water c. oil d. solar energy

UNIT 9

Build a greener world

SB pages 22-31 WB pages B4-90



Objectives

• Reading :

A webpage about mangrove trees; The Iron Woman by Ted Hughes; short web posts about how to help the environment; a report about the Great Green Wall Initiative

• Writing :

A report about a green Initiative in Egypt or Africa; answers to a survey

• Listening :

A conversation about sustainable living; a discussion

about a story; a television interview about a solar farm

• Speaking :

Discussing how to live more sustainably; asking about, giving and responding to opinions; conducting a survey

• Language :

The second conditional

• Life Skills :

Problem solving and decision making

• اعلامة 131 : تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• اعلامة 132 : تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

اسئلة
كل وحدة تفصل

Master your term للمراجعة اليومية و الشهريه في
قاموس المعاصر اللغوى • ملحق المعاصر للأزهر الشريف
ملحق A week is enough

لائحة
الأسئلة

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

sustainable (adj)	مستدام	seedling (n)	نبته - شجيرة صغيرة
products (n)	منتجات	bamboo (n)	الخيزران (البامبو)
mangrove trees (n)	شجرة المنغروف (شجر استوائي)	shopping bag (n)	حقيبة التسوق
rising (adj)	متزايد	battery (n)	بطارية
sea level (n)	مستوى سطح البحر	light bulb (n)	مصباح إضاءة
seawater (n)	مياه البحر	climate change (n)	تغير المناخ
crops (n)	محاصيل زراعية	carbon footprint (n)	بصمة كربونية
flood (n)	فيضان	energy-saving (adj)	موفر للطاقة

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية انظر نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 22 & 23 WB page 84

paper (n), (adj)	ورق - ورقي	electricity (n)	الكهرباء
plastic (n) (adj)	بلاستيك - بلاستيكي	water bottle (n)	زجاجة مياه
toothbrush (n)	فرشاة أسنان	coffee shop (n)	مقهى
hairbrush (n)	فرشاة شعر	plug (ged) in (v)	يوصل الفيشة بالكهرباء
electric (adj)	كهربائي	charge (d) (v)	يشحن (بالكهرباء)
environment (n)	البيئة	hieroglyphics (n)	اللغة الهيروغليفية
petrol (n)	بنزين - بنزول	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير / تصنيع (الأشياء)
primary school	مدرسة ابتدائية		

Lesson 2

SB pages 24 & 25 WB page 85

affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر على	webpage (n)	صفحة على الانترنت
community (n)	مجتمع	kill (ed) (v)	بقتل
salt (n)	ملح	however	ومع ذلك

forest (n)	غابة	solve (d) (v)	يحل - يجد حلا
environmental (adj)	بيئي	land (n)	ارض - يابسة
nature (n)	الطبيعة	field (n)	حقل
shop window (n)	واجهة المحل (فاترينا)	team (n)	فريق
storm (n)	عاصفة	coast (n)	ساحل
situation (n)	موقف	sea animal (n)	حيوان بحري
wind (n)	رياح	protect (ed) (v)	يحمي

Countries & cities

بلاد ومدن

Greece	دولة اليونان	Hurghada	مدينة الفردقة
Canada	دولة كندا		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
lose يفقد - يخسر	lost	lost
wear يرتدى	wore	worn
go يذهب	went	gone
send يرسل	sent	sent
write يكتب	wrote	written

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.
 (للمزيد من التعريفات انظر قاموس المعاصر اللغوي)

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

bamboo cup	a cup made from a tall, strong grass كوب بامبو (مصنوع من الخيزران)
bamboo(n)	a tall tropical plant with hollow stems that is used for making furniture ساق سحر stems استراني plant with hollow الخيزران
energy-saving light bulb (adj)	a glass object that uses less electricity than usual to give light مصباح إضاءة
rechargeable(adj)	can be filled again with electrical power قابل لإعادة الشحن
reusable(adj)	able to be used again يمكن إعادة استخدامه

battery(n)	something that gives power to a machine, toy, car, etc. بطارية
light bulb(n)	a glass object that you put in lights, which changes electricity into light مصباح إضاءة
sustainable(adj)	causing little or no damage to the environment مستدام - صديق للبيئة
crops(n)	plants that we grow on farms محاصيل
mangrove tree(n)	a small tree with roots above the ground, which grows in or near the coast or rivers (القرم) شجرة المانجروف
seedling (n)	a small plant which has started to grow from a seed شتلة - نبتة
climate change	a change in the average conditions such as temperature and rainfall التغير المناخي
rising sea levels	when the sea becomes higher because climate change melts the ice at the Poles ارتفاع مستوى البحر

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

get	a job	يحصل على وظيفة	pass	the test	يجتاز الاختبار
do	a job	يقوم بأداء وظيفة			

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 1 SB page 23

Dalia : I want to do something to protect the environment, but I don't know what to do.

Reem : That's easy. Use less plastic. My family used to get all our shopping in plastic bags. But now, we use **reusable**⁽¹⁾ shopping bags.

Dalia : That's a good idea.



Check Vocabulary

(1) يمكن إعادة استخدامه

Reem : Also, get a bamboo coffee cup. Look at mine. You can't usually recycle the cups that you get from coffee shops. Bamboo is **sustainable**⁽²⁾, so bamboo products help the environment. I've also got a bamboo **toothbrush**⁽³⁾!



Dalia : Wow! I like your cup. It doesn't look like bamboo.

Reem : Do you use energy saving light bulbs at home?

Dalia : Yes, we do. We didn't use to use energy **saving light bulbs**⁽⁴⁾, but we do now.

Reem : So do we. So you are doing something.

Dalia : OK, but I don't think I could **give up**⁽⁵⁾ my electric toothbrush for a bamboo toothbrush.

Check Vocabulary

(2) مستدام (3) فرشاة أسنان (4) مصابيح إضاءة موفرة (5) يقلع عن

Reading

• on Lesson 2 SB page 24

Climate Change

Climate change⁽¹⁾ means that many countries have more **floods**⁽²⁾ now because of **rising sea levels**⁽³⁾. Most trees and plants can't live in **seawater**⁽⁴⁾. When seawater comes onto farms, the **salt**⁽⁵⁾ in the water kills the **crops**⁽⁶⁾ and farmers can't **grow**⁽⁷⁾ anything for many years. So, people **lose**⁽⁸⁾ their farms and their homes.

However, in hot countries like Egypt, **mangrove trees**⁽⁹⁾ grow in the sea along the coast. Mangrove forests protect farms and **communities**⁽¹⁰⁾ from strong **winds**⁽¹¹⁾ and **storms**⁽¹²⁾. They **provide**⁽¹³⁾ homes for plants, fish and sea animals. If there were more mangrove trees, there would be fewer floods.

Check Vocabulary

(1) التغير المناخي	(2) فيضانات	(3) منسوب البحر المرتفع	(4) ماء البحر	(5) ملح	(6) محاصيل	(7) يزرع
(8) يفقد	(9) شجر المانجروف	(10) مجتمعات	(11) رياح	(12) عواصف	(13) يوفر	

Now in Egypt, people are growing thousands of mangrove seedlings⁽¹⁴⁾ to plant along the Red Sea coast. The problems caused by rising sea levels could get worse if they didn't plant new mangrove forests. So, they are going to plant 300,000 seedlings every year. When they grow into mangrove forests, they will protect⁽¹⁵⁾ the coast from rising sea levels.

Check Vocabulary

يحمي (15) شتلات - نباتات صغيرة (14)

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 paper – a paper / papers

* paper (n)

ورق (اسم لا بعد)

ex.: Using digital tools makes me use less paper.

* a paper – papers

جريدة - جرائد

ex.: - I used to buy a paper every day.

ex.: - Al Ahram and Al Akhbar are national papers.

2 rise – raise

* rise (v) – rose – risen

يرتفع (لا يتبعه مفعول)

ex.: When I saw smoke rising from my neighbour's window, I called the firefighters.

* raise (v) – raised – raised

يرفع (يتبعه مفعول به)

ex.: Salma raised her hand to answer the question.

3 provide ... for / with ...

ex.: Mangrove trees provide homes for plants, fish and sea animals.

ex.: He provides his children with food and shelter.

4 Compound nouns

الأسماء المركبة

هي عبارة عن أسماء مكونة من كلمتين وتكون كالتالي :

* noun + noun

- sea level مستوى سطح البحر

- rainforest غابة مطيرة

- seawater مياه البحر

* noun + verb

- rainfall سقوط المطر

- haircut قصة شعر

* noun + preposition

- passerby عابر سبيل

* adjective + noun

- greenhouse بيت زجاجي للزراعة (صوبة)

- software برمجية حاسوب

* verb + preposition

- lookout! مراقبة / حارس

- takeoff (طائرة) إقلاع

* verb + noun

- washing machine غسالة كهربائية

- driving licence رخصة قيادة

Important Expressions & Prepositions

energy - saving light bulbs	لمبات موفرة للطاقة	getting higher / lower	يزداد - ينخفض
on the Red Sea coast	على ساحل البحر الأحمر	come onto farms	يغمر المزارع
give up	يقالع عن	live more a sustainable life	يعيش حياة بغير إسراف أو إضرار بالموارد الطبيعية
turn off	يطفى (جهاز)	along the coast	بامتداد / بطول الساحل
in plastic bags	في حقائب بلاستيكية	provide ... for ...	(يهد ... ل ...)
save water	يوفر الماء	caused by	تسبب بواسطة
in seawater	في مياه البحر	protect ... from ...	(يحمي ... من ...)
for many years	لعدة سنوات	form of writing	طريقة كتابة
on holiday	في إجازة	bad for	مضر بـ
made from	مصنوع من	plug in	يوصل بالقابس الكهربائي (الفيشة)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key Vocabulary

1. your glass, paper and plastic products to reduce pollution and conserve energy.
a. Burn b. Recycle c. Throw d. Charge

2. The new factory makes healthy food for kids.
a. products b. crops c. levels d. powers
3. This tower is 30 meters above the sea
a. sand b. level c. water d. weed

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

4. **SB** People on the Red Sea coast needed to work together to the problem.
a. solve b. send c. make d. fill
5. **SB** Mangrove forests will the coast from rising sea levels.
a. prevent b. rise c. provide d. protect
6. **WB** Which of these is not a crop ?
a. Potatoes b. Oranges c. Fields d. Rice

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. Microwave is a/an machine.
a. natural b. electric
c. mental d. environmental
8. All you need to have healthy teeth is a toothpaste and a
a. hairbrush b. wire brush c. toothbrush d. paintbrush
9. Our car will run out of in two minutes.
a. seawater b. flood c. petrol d. air
10. If you are a lover, you should work to stop environmental pollution.
a. technology b. nature c. industry d. storms

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

11. She asked me to give smoking.
a. up b. off c. on d. in
12. We should water by all means.
a. miss b. lose c. save d. waste
13. Most accidents are caused carelessness.
a. at b. of c. with d. by

Definitions

14. is a tall tropical plant with hollow stems that is used for making furniture.
a. Wood b. Bamboo c. Metal d. Grass
15. means that it can be filled again with electric power.
a. Rechargeable b. Reusable c. Recycled d. Damaged
16. means able to be used again.
a. Reduced b. Rechargeable c. Reusable d. Redolent

17. is a small plant which has started to grow from a seed.
a. Tree b. Seedling c. Bush d. Jungle
18. means causing little or no damage to the environment and therefore able to continue for along time.
a. Surrounded b. Electrical c. Simple d. Sustainable

Guessing the meaning

19. This machine is electric. It works by
a. gas b. petrol c. oil d. electricity
20. He could the problem when he found the reasons.
a. make b. solve c. put d. have

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

مرادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/opposite المضاد
save يحفظ	keep	waste يهدر
higher أكثر	more	lower / less أقل
little صغير السن	young	old كبير السن - عجوز
provide يزود - يدعم	support / supply	refuse يرفض ignore يتجاهل
sustainable مستدام	maintainable / renewable	unsustainable غير مستدام non-renewable غير متجدد

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples امثلة
un -	تعطي عكس المعنى	unusual غير عادي
- ling	تعطي معنى صغير	seedling نبتة صغيرة
re -	تعطي معنى إعادة فعل الشيء	reusable يمكن إعادة استخدامه rechargeable قابل لإعادة الشحن
- al	تعطي الصفة من الاسم	electrical كهربائي environmental بيئي
- able	تعطي معنى القدرة أو الإمكانية	renewable متجدد - يمكن تجديده rechargeable يمكن إعادة شحنه suitable مناسب

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- You should save some money. The word "save" can be replaced by
a. keep b. waste c. borrow d. find
- The antonym of the word "higher" is
a. nicer b. lower c. heavier d. lighter
- Salim is a little football player. He is 11 years old. The word "little" here means
a. old b. young c. strong d. small
- We add the prefix to get the antonym of the word "usual".
a. re - b. im - c. un - d. ir -
- The suffix can be used to get the adjective from the word "environment".
a. - al b. - ment c. - ed d. - ing

III Language

Remember تذكر

1 "used to" for regular past habits and routines :

تستخدم (used to) للتعبير عن العادات والأعمال الروتينية في الماضي

Usage الاستخدام

- You can use (used to) to talk about a repeated action in the past that has now changed.

- تستخدم (used to) للتعبير عن حدث تكرر في الماضي ولكنه تغير الآن.

ex. - When I was young, I used to play in the street.

Formation التكوين

Affirmative Statements

1

الجملة الخبرية
المثبتة

Subject الفاعل + used to + Inf. مصدر الفعل اعتاد ان

ex. - My father used to work in a bank, but now he works in an international company.

- We used to live in a village, but now we live in the city.

- He used to be lazy, but now he isn't.

Negative Statements

2

الجملة الخبرية
المنفية

Subject الفاعل + didn't + use to + Inf. مصدر الفعل

- للنفي نستخدم (didn't use to) :

ex. - I didn't use to like salad when I was young, but I love it now.

1) Yes / No question : السؤال بـ (هل) :

Interrogative

3

صيغة
الاستفهام

Did + subject الفاعل + use to + Inf. مصدر الفعل?

ex. - Did your mother use to read you stories when you were young ?

- وللإجابة المختصرة :

- No, she didn't.

- Yes, she did.

2) Wh - question : السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام :

Question word كلمة استفهام + did + subject الفاعل + use to + Inf. مصدر الفعل?

ex. - Where did you use to live before you moved to this city ?

- We used to live in a village.

2000



They used to have a small car.

They didn't use to have a big car.

Now



Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB & WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. **SB** In the past, people (not use to use) energy-saving light bulbs.
2. **SB** We used to (wasting) water, but now we try to save it.
3. **SB** I (don't) use to have an electric toothbrush, but now I've got one.
4. **SB** Mum (use to) get plastic bags at the supermarket, but now she gets paper ones.
5. **SB** Dad didn't use to (turned) off his computer at night, but he does now.
6. **WB** My grandparents didn't (use sent) emails - they wrote letters.

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. Adel's grandfather didn't (used) to know how to drive.
8. What (do) you use to learn at primary school?
9. Dr Sameh used (for) help to give people new hearts.
10. He used to (sings) nice songs.
11. I didn't (used to) swim when I was four.
12. Did he (used) to ride bikes?
13. I (not used) to smoke.
14. My grandpa used to (lived) in a village.
15. He used to swim a lot when he (is) younger.
16. No, I (don't) use to eat fish.
17. That building used to (being) a factory.
18. Leen used to (had) a sports car.
19. I (am using) to live in a small flat when I was a child.
20. What games (do) you use to play at primary school?

Stop here!



- اختيار مصغر للأزهر الشريف.
- طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

2 The second conditional with would, might or could:
حالة (If) الشرطية الثانية باستخدام : would / might / could

Usage الاستخدام

We use If + past simple + would + inf. (the second conditional) to talk about situations that are possible but probably won't happen.

تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية للتعبير عن الأشياء الغير ممكن حدوثها في الوقت الحالي ومستعدة مستقبلاً.

يتم تكوين الحالة الشرطية الثانية كالتالي:

أداة الشرط	جملة الشرط (الجملة الثانوية)	جملة جواب الشرط (الجملة الرئيسية)
إذا / لو If	subject + past simple, ماضي بسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل)	subject + would / could ... المصدر / might + inf.

ex. - If Esraa **worked** hard at school, she **would get** high marks.

يمكن أن نبدأ بالجملة الرئيسية (جملة جواب الشرط) كالتالي:

جملة الشرط (الجملة الثانوية)	أداة الشرط	جملة جواب الشرط (الجملة الرئيسية)
subject + past simple ماضي بسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل)	إذا / لو If	Subject + would / could / might + inf. ... المصدر

ex. - Esraa **would get** high marks if she **worked** hard at school.

يمكن استخدام (might) بدلاً من (would) للتعبير عن عدم التأكد (الاحتمالية) ولاحظ أن:

would + perhaps / possibly / probably + inf. = might + inf.

ex. If I had enough money, I would perhaps buy a new car. (might)
- If I had enough money, I might buy a new car.

يمكن استخدام (could) بدلاً من (would be able to) للتعبير عن القدرة أو الإمكانية ولاحظ أن :

would be able to + inf. = could + inf.

- ex. If Menna came first, she would be able to join the school trip for free. (could)
- If Menna came first, she could join the school trip for free.

يمكن استخدام (could) بدلاً من (would) للتعبير عن الاحتمالية ولاحظ أن :

would + perhaps + inf. = could + inf.

- ex. - The problems caused by rising sea levels would perhaps get worse if they didn't plant new mangrove forests. (could)
- The problems caused by rising sea levels could get worse if they didn't plant new mangrove forests.

استخدام (might not) يدل على عدم الاحتمال ولاحظ أن :

wouldn't possibly + inf. = might not + inf.

- ex. If you went to the bakery, it wouldn't possibly be very busy. (might)
- If you went to the bakery, it might not be very busy.

استخدام (could not / couldn't) يدل على الإستحالة ولاحظ أن :

would be impossible to + inf. = couldn't + inf.

- ex. If you went to school on Friday, it would be impossible to enter. It is a holiday. (couldn't)
- If you went to school on Friday, you couldn't enter. It is a holiday.

لا تستخدم قاعدة (If) في الحالة التالية عند إعطاء نصيحة كما في الصيغة التالية :

* If I were you, I would(n't) + inf. مصدر الفعل

- ex. - If I were you, I would go to Alexandria.
- If I were you, I wouldn't make noise in class.
- If I were you, I'd study hard.

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB & WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

- WB If there (are) more mangrove trees along the coast, there would be fewer floods.
- WB If we had more money, we (can) buy that new phone in the shop window.
- SB If we (live) in Hurghada, we would go to the beach.
- SB Those farmers (move) if there was another flood.
- SB She (not be) an environmental scientist if she didn't love nature.
- WB What (will) you do if you got a job in a different city ?
- WB Tarek would pass the test if he (studies) harder.
- WB What clothes would you wear if you (live) in a cold country ?
- SB We (have) fewer storms if climate change stopped.
- SB If they (not cut down) so many trees, they would have bigger forests.

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- The volleyball team would win the match if they (have) better players.
- If I (am) you, I'd travel to a European country.
- If he was tall, he (can) play basketball.
- If he (doesn't) hate flying, he would travel by plane.
- Yasser would probably get high marks if the teacher (encourages) him.
- If we had more time, we (will) visit your cousins in Greece.
- What would you (did) if you had much money ?
- The problems caused by rising sea levels could (getting) worse if they didn't plant new mangrove forests.
- The boy (will sleep) better if he stopped playing computer games in the evening.
- I would write to Salma if I (know) her address.

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.
للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)
Part 2 فى ملحق (Master Your Term) **تنويه**

1. Reading Corner

مهارة القراءة

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 SB page 24 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 135 & 136 ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- **Determining the main idea** تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية

- The main idea of the passage is
a. Earthquakes b. Pollution
c. Climate change d. Coasts

B. Answer the following questions :

- **Making inference** عمل استنتاج

- Infer how we can protect farms and communities from strong winds.
.....

- **Summarising a text** تلخيص نص

- Give a brief summary of the last paragraph of the passage in your own words.
.....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على تنمية مهارة الكتابة.

- Rising sea level causes floods and climate changes.
١. يُسبب ارتفاع مستوى مياه البحر فيضانات وتغيرات في المناخ.
- Salt water kills and damages the crops.
٢. المياه المالحة تقتل وتدمر المحاصيل.
- Mangrove forests protect farms from strong winds.
٣. تحمي غابات المانجروف المزارع من الرياح القوية.
- People now in Egypt are growing thousands of mangrove trees along the Red Sea coast.
٤. يزرع الآن المصريون الآلاف من أشجار المانجروف بطول ساحل البحر الأحمر.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete :

save - charge - used - sustainable - use - bamboo

- We can't use petrol for cars forever as it is not
- Helmi didn't to smoke when he was young.
- This cup is made from a tall plant called a
- I need to my mobile.
- We should try to water.

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على مهارة الكتابة

- Write a review of about ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :
"Climate change"

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

1. Discussing how to live more sustainably :

مناقشة عن كيفية حياة بطريقة أكثر استدامة :

Questions	Answers
1. What could you stop using or buying that is bad for the environment ? ١. ما الأشياء الضارة بالبيئة التي يمكنك التوقف عن استخدامها أو شرائها ؟	- We could stop using plastic shopping bags. - يمكننا التوقف عن استخدام أكياس التسوق البلاستيكية.
2. What other things could you do to live a more sustainable life ? ٢. ما الأشياء الأخرى التي يمكنك القيام بها لتعيش حياة أكثر استدامة ؟	- I could use energy-saving light bulbs. - يمكنني استخدام مصابيح إضاءة موفرة للطاقة.
3. What do you think of rechargeable batteries ? ٣. ما رأيك في البطاريات القابلة لإعادة الشحن ؟	- I think they are sustainable products. - اعتقد انهم منتجات أكثر استدامة (أصدقاء للبيئة).
4. How can you help keeping the environment clean ? ٤. كيف يمكنك المساعدة في الحفاظ على البيئة نظيفة ؟	- We can use less plastic and use reusable shopping bags. - يمكننا استخدام القليل من البلاستيك واستخدام أكياس التسوق القابلة لإعادة الاستخدام.

2. Solving the environmental problems in the Red Sea area :

حل مشكلات بيئية في منطقة البحر الأحمر :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. Why do people visit the Red Sea coast ? ١. لماذا يزور الأشخاص ساحل البحر الأحمر ؟	- To enjoy the views of the coral reefs. - الاستمتاع بمناظر الشعب المرجانية.
2. What do people like to do there ? ٢. ما الأشياء التي يحب الأشخاص القيام بها هناك ؟	- They like to go diving and sailing. - يحبون القيام برياضة الغطس والإبحار.
3. How will new mangrove forests help the people who live in and visit the area ? ٣. كيف ستقوم غابات المنجروف بمساعدة الأشخاص الذين يعيشون ويترجون المنطقة ؟	- They will protect farms and communities from strong winds and storms. - ستقوم بحماية المزارع والمجتمعات من الرياح والعواصف القوية.

Skills corner

★ تدرب على المهارات طبقاً للورقة الامتحالية كل درس على حده :

• مهارة القراءة : تدرب على اسئلة قطعة (استخراج معلومات - اعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية - فهم ما يشير اليه الضمير - تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص - مهارة التفكير النقدي.

• مهارة الكتابة : تدرب على كيفية الكتابة مع مراعاة (التنظيم - التهجى - ترابط الافكار - علامات الترقيم - القواعد اللغوية - اختيار المفردات اللغوية).

• مهارة التحدث : تدرب على اتقان الوظائف اللغوية للتعامل مع سؤال المحادثة في الامتحان.



المعاصر في اللغة الانجليزية

امنح لفتك لمن يستحق

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Ashraf is talking to his classmate Fady about saving electricity.

Ashraf : Good morning, Fady.

Fady : Good morning, Ashraf.

Ashraf : Fady, what do you think of our lesson today ?

Fady : (1) What should we do to save electricity ?

Ashraf : I agree with you it is useful. To save energy, (2)

Fady : I always turn off the lights before leaving any place. (3) ?

Ashraf : We can also depend on the sunlight during the day and don't use electricity. (4) ?

Fady : I suggest turning off the devices that we don't need.

Ashraf : (5)

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

doing - light - off - to do - rechargeable - coal

We should try to save energy as much as possible. We can do many things to save energy like using energy-saving (1) bulbs and (2) batteries. We should turn (3) the devices and the lights that we don't need. Our bad habits that we used (4) in the past should be stopped.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The is something that gives power to a machine, toy, car, etc.
a. air b. system c. battery d. crop
- We should save energy at our home. The synonym of "save" is to
a. waste b. keep c. reach d. find

3. He is too little to do that project. The antonym of the word "little" is

- a. tall b. small c. young d. old

4. To get the adjective of the verb "recharge", we add the suffix

- a. -y b. -al c. -able d. -ly

5. We add the prefix "....." to the word "usable" to mean use again.

- a. un- b. re- c. dis- d. im-

6. Something which is sustainable; is

- a. electric b. temporary
c. recyclable d. renewable

4 Write One HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

يُحَاطَ بِهِ فِي نِهَايَةِ الْكِتَابِ

"A review of a day you spent in a place you will never forget"

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

produce (d) (v)	يُنتِج - يَخْرُج	remote control (n)	جهاز التحكم عن بعد
solar energy (n)	طاقة شمسية	earthquake(n)	زلزال
solar panels (n)	ألواح طاقة شمسية	air conditioning (n)	تكييف الهواء
greenhouse (n)	بيت زجاجي لزراعة النباتات	green (adj)	يتعلق بحماية البيئة
wind turbines (n)	توربينات الرياح	ski (ed) (v)	يتزلج - يتزلق
water wheel (n)	ساقية (مياه)	power(n)	قوة / سُلطة

تلميح Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية انظر نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 26 & 27 WB page 86

village (n)	قرية	factory (n)	مصنع
frightened (adj)	خائف	parts (n)	أجزاء
surprised (adj)	مدهش	fossil fuel (n)	الوقود الحفري
electricity(n)	الكهرباء	landfill (n)	مكب النفايات
way (n)	طريقة	site (n)	موقع - مكان
absorb (ed) (v)	يمص	Denmark	دولة الدنمارك
pollution (n)	تلوث	ton (n)	طن (١٠٠٠ كيلو جرام)
plan(n)	خطة	message (n)	مغزى - رسالة
summary (n)	ملخص	worker(n)	عامل
owner(n)	مالك	ability(n)	القدرة
environment(n)	البيئة	promise(d) (v)	يوعد
superhero(n)	بطل خارق	reduce(d) (v)	يقلل - يحد من

Lesson 4

SB page 28 WB page 87

especially (adv)	خاصة - بصورة خاصة	the country	الريف
web post	منشور على الإنترنت	heating (n)	تدفئة
fridge (n)	ثلاجة	diagram (n)	رسم توضيحي
screen (n)	شاشة	though	على الرغم من
own (ed) (v); (adj)	يملك - خاصته / ملكه	Australia	دولة أستراليا

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	المضارع	Past	الماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
bring	يحضّر	brought		brought	
buy	يشتري	bought		bought	
make	يصنع - يولد (كهرباء)	made		made	
sell	يبيع	sold		sold	

توليه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات. (للمزيد من التعريفات انظر قاموس المعاصر اللغوي)

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

air conditioning	a machine that makes the air in a room stay cool or warm	تكييف الهواء
destroy	damage something so badly that you cannot repair it	يدمر
promise	say you will do something	يوعد
power	something you are able to do well	قوة/طاقة
produce	make or create	ينتج
solar energy	energy from the sun	طاقة شمسية
inexpensive	not costing much money, cheap	رخيص (الثلث)
renewable	natural energy that does not disappear or burn when you use it	طاقة متجددة
energy	disappear or burn when you use it	طاقة
remote control	a machine that you can control from far away	جهاز التحكم عن بعد
simple	easy to understand	بسيط

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

produce	pollution	يسبب تلوث	make	electricity	يولد الكهرباء
	energy	ينتج طاقة	save	electricity	يوفر الكهرباء
have	a plan	لديه خطة			

II Reading and Listening

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 26

The Iron Woman⁽¹⁾

One day, a girl called Lucy was surprised⁽²⁾ to see the Iron Woman. She was enormous⁽³⁾, with big red eyes. Lucy was frightened⁽⁴⁾, but she found that the woman wanted Lucy to help her. Lucy's father worked at a factory and the Iron Woman asked her where the factory was. Pollution⁽⁵⁾ from the factory was killing all the fish in the river, so she wanted to destroy⁽⁶⁾ it.

The Iron Woman had special powers⁽⁷⁾ so that she was able to make all the factory workers become fish. The workers all had to live in the river and started to understand how difficult life was for the fish.

Lucy wanted to help the Iron Woman, but she was worried about⁽⁸⁾ her father. So, after the Iron Woman left, Lucy called a boy called Hogarth. He was friends with the Iron Man.

"If you brought the Iron Man here", said Lucy, "We could find an answer to the problem".

The next day, Lucy met Hogarth and the Iron Man at the factory. When the Iron Woman arrived, the Iron Man told her that he had a plan. Soon, the Iron Woman let them become people again. They could stay people if they promised⁽⁹⁾ that the factory would not produce⁽¹⁰⁾ any more pollution. They all agreed, and the river became clean once more.



Check Vocabulary

(1) المرأة الحديدية	(2) مندهش	(3) ضخم	(4) خائف	(5) تلوث
(6) يدمر	(7) قوة	(8) قلق بشأن	(9) يوعد	(10) ينتج - يسبب

on Lesson 3 WB page 86

A large factory⁽¹⁾ in Denmark has an inexpensive way of producing renewable energy. It burns rubbish! If the factory did not burn the rubbish, it would go to landfill sites. By burning the rubbish, the factory produces enough electricity for 150,000 homes. If the factory burned fossil fuels⁽²⁾ to make this electricity, it would produce a lot more greenhouse gases. There is a garden⁽³⁾ on the roof⁽⁴⁾ of the factory. The plants there absorb some of the air pollution that comes from the factory. You can also ski⁽⁵⁾ down the roof! Isn't that amazing⁽⁶⁾?



Check Vocabulary

(1) مصنع (2) وقود دافئ (3) بستان (4) سقف (5) يتزلج (6) مذهل

on Lesson 4 SB page 28

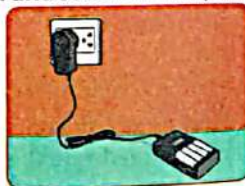
What do you do to help the environment? Have you given up anything?

We're using the air conditioning⁽¹⁾ less often. In summer, when it's very hot, that's difficult, especially⁽²⁾ at night, but you get used to⁽³⁾ it. We can't use our computer less often, though⁽⁴⁾, because we need it for work.



Dom and Julia Baldwin, USA

I always used to get the newest phone. I've stopped doing that now because it isn't sustainable⁽⁵⁾. Oh, and now I use rechargeable⁽⁶⁾ batteries for the TV remote control and my computer mouse.



Sawsan, Egypt

Check Vocabulary

(1) تكييف هواء (2) خاصة (3) اعتاد على (4) مع ذلك (5) مستدام (6) يعاد شحنه

I live in the country and I need to have a car. I've bought an electric car because it's greener⁽⁷⁾. Also, I always take a reusable bag when I go shopping⁽⁸⁾.

Greta, Australia



We're going to give up living in the city because we want to grow our own vegetables and live a simpler life. If we stayed in the city, we wouldn't be able to do that.

Luc and Emile, France

Check Vocabulary

يذهب للتسوق (8) أكثر صداقة للبيئة (7)

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 27

Judy : What did you think of the story, Dina ?

Dina : I liked it. I think the message⁽¹⁾ is easy to understand. Factories⁽²⁾ should not produce pollution.

Judy : I agree, but the Iron Woman wanted to destroy⁽³⁾ the factory. I don't think that's right. If we didn't have factories, we wouldn't have so many things to buy in the shops.

Dina : That's why the Iron Man had a different plan. He didn't want to destroy the factory.

Judy : I didn't like his plan. Some of the factory workers probably⁽⁴⁾ didn't like the pollution, but if they didn't work at the factory, they wouldn't have any money.

Dina : But Judy, when they became people again, they promised that the factory would not produce any more pollution. So his plan was a good one!

Judy : That's true. How do you think they made the river clean once more?

Check Vocabulary

من المحتمل (4) يحطم / يدمر (3) محتاج (2) رسالة (1)

Dina : Perhaps⁽⁵⁾ the factory started to use renewable⁽⁶⁾ energy.

Judy : You're right. If the factory used renewable energy, it wouldn't produce pollution.

Dina : And if it didn't produce pollution, then everyone would be happier.

Check Vocabulary

(5) ربما (6) متجدد

• on Lesson 4 WB page 87

Injy : Hana, have you seen this diagram⁽¹⁾ of what uses most electricity⁽²⁾ in the home?

Hana : No, I haven't. What does it say, Injy ?

Injy : It says that air conditioning⁽³⁾ and heating⁽⁴⁾ use the most electricity. In fact, these use nearly⁽⁵⁾ 50% of the home's electricity.

Hana : That's a lot! What uses the second most ?

Injy : Hot water. That uses about 15% of the home's electricity.

Hana : What about things in the kitchen? Don't they use much electricity?

Injy : They don't use very much. The fridge and the oven⁽⁶⁾ both use about 4%.

Hana : That's interesting. And what about the TV and computers?

Injy : Televisions use about 3% and computers about 1%.

Hana : OK. So if I wanted to save⁽⁷⁾ electricity, I would use less air conditioning and heating ?

Injy : That's right⁽⁸⁾. Oh, and turn off the lights, too. They use about 12% of the house's electricity.

Check Vocabulary

(1) هذا صحيح (2) يوفّر (3) الفرن (4) تقريباً (5) المدفأة (6) تكييف هواء (7) الكهرباء (8) رسم بياني



General

Notes on Reading & Listening

1 live - life - living - alive - lively

* live (v)

ex.: My sister lives in Benha.

* live (adj)

ex.: The match is live now. It has started.

* life (n)

ex.: The poor live a difficult life.

يعيش

مباشر

حياة

* living (n)

ex.: He is working hard to improve his living.

* alive (adj)

ex.: The snake is still alive. It isn't dead.

* lively (adj)

ex.: Salim has a lively mind. He thinks actively.

المعيشة

حي - على قيد الحياة

حيوي

2 mouse - mouses - mice

* mouse

ex.: - I saw a mouse in the garden.

ex.: - My computer mouse is broken.

* mouses

ex.: I've 2 more mouses for my laptop.

* mice

ex.: Two mice live in my kitchen.

فأر (حيوان) - فأرة (الكمبيوتر)

فأرات (الكمبيوتر)

فئران

3 stop

* stop to + inf.

يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء (توقف مؤقت)

ex.: - On the way, the driver stopped to have a sandwich.

* stop + (inf. + ing)

يتوقف أو يقلع عن فعل شيء (توقف نهائي)

ex.: - He stopped smoking because he had lung disease.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

find an answer to	يجد إجابة لـ	get used to	يعتاد على
use renewable energy	يستخدم طاقة متجددة	give up	يقالع عن
do well	يقوم بأداء جيد	easy to understand	سهل الفهم
get it right	يفهم بشكل صحيح	become clean	يصبح نظيفاً
ski down	يتزلج لأسفل	worried about	قلق بشأن
keep your house cool	تحافظ على اعتدال البرودة في منزلك	go shopping	يذهب للتسوق
less often	أقل اعتياداً	move around	يتجول
		form of transport	وسيلة مواصلات

turn on

يشغل (جهاز)

green electricity

الكهرباء النظيفة (صديقة للبيئة)

use the most electricity

يستهلك معظم الكهرباء

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- In sunny places, they can get electricity from energy.
a. soil b. solar c. solid d. sail
- Plants oxygen for us to breathe it.
a. absorb b. invent c. produce d. burn
- Sun, wind and water energy are, they don't cause pollution.
a. heavy b. simple c. green d. remote
- It's very hot in your car. You should repair the
a. water wheel b. air conditioning
c. remote control d. wind turbine

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

- SB** I use rechargeable batteries for the TV
a. remote area b. screen c. remote control d. robot
- WB** A large factory in Denmark has an inexpensive of producing renewable energy.
a. rail b. light c. road d. way

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- The rubbish is taken to the
a. wheel b. way c. turbine d. landfill
- Sponges liquids and are used for washing and cleaning.
a. absorb b. set c. fill d. reduce

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- I've a problem my English. Can you help me ?
a. of b. with c. to d. down
- Manar is a/an woman. She can do many jobs perfectly.
a. live b. alive c. living d. lively

تعريفات

Definitions

11. is a machine that makes the air in a room stay cool or warm.

- a. Air heating b. Air Filter
c. Air conditioning d. Air bag

12. To means to say you will do something.

- a. produce b. promise c. save d. reduce

13. means damage something so badly that you can't repair it.

- a. Discover b. Absorb c. Fix d. Destroy

تخمين المعنى

Guessing the meaning

14. It takes six hours to arrive to her house. Her house is in a/an area.

- a. close b. easy c. remote d. lazy

15. If something is, it doesn't cost much money.

- a. easy b. cheap c. expensive d. difficult

16. This factory doesn't produce any pollution in the environment, it's

- a. project.
a. private b. polluted c. green d. remote

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

مرادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/Opposite المضاد
renewable مستدام	sustainable	non-renewable غير متجدد unsustainable غير مستدام
easy سهل - بسيط	simple	complicated - complex مُعَقَّد
make يصنع - يُولَد (الكهرباء)	produce/create	destroy - consume يدمر - يستهلك
inexpensive رخيص (الثمن)	cheap	expensive غالي (الثمن)
enormous كبير (الحجم)	huge	small/ tiny صغير (الحجم)
destroy يدمر - يتلف	damage	repair - fix يصلح
agree يوافق	accept	disagree لا يوافق refuse يرفض

Prefixes & Suffixes		
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
- er	تكوّن الاسم من الفعل	worker
- able	تعطى الصفة من الفعل	renewable sustainable
- tion	تحول من فعل إلى اسم	organisation
in -	تعطى عكس المعنى	inexpensive

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Solar farms produce green electricity. The synonym of "produce" is
a. consume b. use c. make d. join
- It's an easy lesson. I'll explain it to you. "Easy" is the synonym of
a. complicated b. complex c. simple d. cheap
- Elephants are huge animals. "Huge" is the antonym of
a. easy b. slow c. safe d. small
- The prefix can be used to form the opposite of expensive.
a. re - b. in - c. im - d. un -
- This car costs a lot of money. It's so expensive. The antonym of the word "expensive" is
a. amazing b. cheap c. far d. tidy

III Language

The second conditional with would, might or could.

قد سبق شرحه في الدرسين (١ ، ٢).

Master your Term



اتقن منهجك بالطريقة المناسبة لك.

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارف (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) Part 2 فى ملحق (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

مهارة القراءة

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 3 SB page 26 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 153 ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- **Determining the main idea** تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية

- The best title for the passage is
a. The Iron Woman b. Remote villages
c. Wind turbines d. Building dams

B. Answer the following questions :

- **Making inference** عمل استنتاج

- Infer the Iron Woman has special powers.

- **Summarising a text** تلخيص نص

- Give a brief summary of the first paragraph of the passage in your own words.

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على تنمية مهارة الكتابة.

- "The Iron Woman" is a story written by Ted Hughes.
١. كتب قصة المرأة الحديدية الكاتب تيد هيويز.
- This story tells us about a girl called Lucy
٢. تخبرنا هذه القصة عن فتاة تدعى لوسي.
- Lucy was surprised to see the Iron Woman.
٣. اندهشت لوسي عندما رأت المرأة الحديدية.
- The Iron Woman was enormous, with red eyes.
٤. كانت المرأة الحديدية عملاقة وذات أعين حمراء.
- Lucy could help the Iron Woman.
٥. استطاعت لوسي مساعدة المرأة الحديدية.
- The Iron Woman had special powers.
٦. كانت المرأة الحديدية تمتلك قوى خاصة.

B. Building sentences

① Read and complete :

went - produces - simple - business - renewable - go

1. She has a that makes wedding dresses.
2. The exam was We got the full marks.
3. Solar power is energy. It's sustainable.
4. This factory parts for cars.
5. If he was ill, he wouldn't to school.

تدريب على مهارة الكتابة
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرس
لم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

- Write a review of about ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :
"Solar energy"

3. Speaking Corner

Discussion about factories :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. Why are factories important ? ١. لماذا المصانع مهمة ؟	- As they save many jobs for workers and produce many products. - لأنها تقوم بتوفير العديد من الوظائف للعمال وتقوم بإنتاج الكثير من المنتجات.
2. Do the factories all produce a lot of pollution ? ٢. هل تسبب كل المصانع في إحداث الكثير من التلوث ؟	- Yes, I think so. - نعم، أعتقد ذلك. - No, I don't think so. - لا، أنا لا أعتقد ذلك.
3. What would you do if a factory in your area produced a lot of pollution ? ٣. ماذا سوف تفعل لو تسبب مصنع في منطقتك في إحداث الكثير من التلوث ؟	- We'd find ways to prevent pollution caused by these factories. - سوف نقوم بإيجاد طرق لمنع التلوث الناتج من هذه المصانع.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 3 & 4

Understand Apply Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Manar met her old friend, Salma, by accident بالصدفة in the street.

Manar : Salma, how are you ? I haven't seen you for ages.

Salma : I'm fine, thanks. (1)

Manar : I missed you, too. (2)

Salma : We have moved to another flat. (3)

Manar : I still live in the same flat. Why did you leave your old flat ?

Salma : (4)

Manar : I hope you will have a happy life there.

Salma : (5) Why don't you come to my new flat ?

Manar : I'd love to ! Thanks, Salma. Goodbye.

Salma : Goodbye.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. To get the adjective of "sustain", you add the suffix

- a. - al b. - able c. - ment d. - tion

2. Solar energy is a cheap type of energy. The antonym of "cheap" is

- a. dirty b. expensive c. clear d. harmful

3. We can add the prefix to the word "expensive" to form the opposite.

- a. re- b. im- c. in- d. un-

4. The earthquake destroyed the old houses in our city. The synonym of the word "destroyed" is

- a. damaged b. repaired c. produced d. fixed

5. A is a machine that you can control from far away.

- a. water wheel b. remote control
c. wind turbine d. solar panel

6. The solar energy doesn't disappear when you use it. It is

- a. non-renewable b. expensive
c. renewable d. heavy

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If the weather wasn't windy, the wind turbine (not will) work.
- What would happen if they (don't) burn the rubbish?
- If Omar was taller, he would (been) a very good basketball player.
- I could read more books if I (have) more time.
- If you started learning a new language, which one (will) you choose?

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

مجاهاة في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of what you do to help the environment"



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

interview (n)	مقابلة شخصية	region (n)	منطقة
solar farm (n)	محطة توليد طاقة شمسية	desertification (n)	التصحّر
interrupt (ed) (v)	يقاطع الكلام	drought (n)	جفاف
power station (n)	محطة توليد الطاقة	create (d) (v)	يصنع - يبدع

تلمية ▪ Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary ▪ يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary ▪ لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 29 WB page 88

farmland (n)	الأرض الزراعية	oil (n)	البترو
plan (ed) (v), (n)	يخطط - خطة	permission (n)	إذن - تصريح
decide (d) (v)	يقرر	popular (adj)	مشهور
idea (n)	فكرة	personally (adv)	بصفة شخصية - شخصياً
hill (n)	تل	source (n)	مصدر
reporter (n)	مراسل صحفي		

Directions

الاتجاهات

north	شمال	east	شرق
south	جنوب	west	غرب

Lesson 6

SB page 30 WB page 89

reason (n)	سبب	happen (ed) (v)	يحدث
report (n)	تقرير	farm (ed) (v)	يحرث - يعمل بالزراعة
improve (d) (v)	يحسن - يطور	landscape (n)	منظر طبيعي
Benban Solar Park	مزرعة بنبان للطاقة الشمسية (في أسوان)	Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى
		special (adj)	خاص - مميز

farming (n)	الزراعة	research (ed) (v), (n)	يبحث - بحث
organiser (n)	منظم	quite (adv)	إلى حد ما / تمامًا
whole (adj)	كامل - تام	African Union	الاتحاد الإفريقي
Great Green Wall initiative	مبادرة الجدار الأخضر العظيم	record (ed) (v)	يسجل - يدون
living thing	كائن حي	bar chart (n)	شريط الرسم البياني
president (n)	رئيس	fishing (n)	الصيد

Countries and cities

Sahel region	منطقة الساحل	Aswan	بلد ومدينة أسوان
UK	المملكة المتحدة	Sudan	دولة السودان
Dubai	دبي	South Sudan	دولة جنوب السودان

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
shine يلمع - يضيء	shone	shone
hear يسمع	heard	heard
build يبني - يشيد	built	built
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Collocations

give	electricity يولد الكهرباء	cause	fire يسبب حريق
create	jobs يوفر فرص عمل	do	pollution يسبب تلوث
	jobs يوجد فرص عمل	a survey	بحري دراسة إستطلاعية
	problems يسبب مشاكل		

لتلوه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات. (للمزيد من التعريفات انظر قاموس المعاصر اللغوي)

Study these definitions

create	make or produce	يبدع - ينتج
desertification	when an area becomes a desert	التصحّر

region

an area of a country

منطقة

initiative

something to improve a difficult situation

مبادرة

solar farm

an area with many solar panels that provides electricity

محطة توليد طاقة شمسية

II Listening and Reading

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 29

Reporter

So, Mrs Jones. Tell us why your **community**⁽¹⁾ decided to build a solar park on this **farmland**⁽²⁾. This area is popular for **tourism**⁽³⁾ and people come here to enjoy the **countryside**⁽⁴⁾ and the beautiful **views**⁽⁵⁾ of trees and hills. Many people would say the solar park is ugly. They don't want to see lots and lots of ugly solar panels in the countryside.



Mrs Jones

I don't agree. **Personally**⁽⁶⁾, I think that the solar panels are beautiful. We need to create clean energy that doesn't pollute the environment. Solar panels produce clean, renewable energy. In my opinion, we need to stop burning **fossil fuels**⁽⁷⁾ which create greenhouse gases and cause climate change.

Reporter

What do you think about the solar park, Mr Brown? Do you agree with Mrs Jones?

Mr Brown

I agree that we need clean, renewable energy. But I don't agree that we should build solar parks in the countryside. We should build them in cities near factories. And I don't agree that they're beautiful. They're ugly and they destroy the countryside. Farmers need this land.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مجتمع	(2) أرض زراعية	(3) السياحة	(4) الريف
(5) مناظر طبيعية	(6) بصفة شخصية	(7) وثود حفري	

Mrs Jones : I totally disagree⁽⁸⁾. The solar panels don't destroy the countryside. This solar park was built on one field. No trees were cut down⁽⁹⁾ and the farmer can still keep his sheep in the fields. The sheep can walk under the solar panels to eat the grass. And don't forget, the solar panels produce money for the community. It helps us all. In my opinion, every community should have their own source⁽¹⁰⁾ of energy.

Reporter : Well, thank you both for talking to us today. Now it's time to go back to the studio ...

Check Vocabulary

مصدر (10) | يقطع (9) | لا أوافق عليها (8)

• on Lesson 5 WB page 88

Dalida : What do you think of this plan to build wind turbines⁽¹⁾ in the sea near the beach?

Nesma : Personally, I think it's a good idea. Wind turbines produce renewable energy⁽²⁾.

Dalida : I agree that we need renewable energy, but I think the wind turbines should be built on the land.

Nesma : I don't agree that they should be built on the land. There is more wind at sea.

Dalida : Yes, but don't forget, many tourists love our beaches⁽³⁾. They don't want to look at ugly wind turbines.

Nesma : I totally disagree. In my opinion, wind turbines look nice, and they won't be very near the beach.

Dalida : Perhaps you're right.



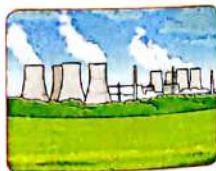
Check Vocabulary

شواطئ (3) | طاقة متجددة (2) | توربينات الرياح (1)

• on Lesson 5 WB page 88

Imad : What do you think of the plan to build a power station outside the town?

Fares : In my opinion, it's a good thing. It will give us more electricity and jobs, too.



Imad : I don't agree that it's a good thing. It burns fossil fuels. Don't forget, fossil fuels are not sustainable.

Fares : I totally disagree. People are still finding oil under the ground every year.

Imad : Personally, I think that we shouldn't build any new power stations. We should only use renewable energy.

Fares : I agree that we need renewable energy, but I think we still need to use fossil fuels, too.

• on Lesson 5 WB page 88

Dalida : What do you think of this plan to build wind turbines in the sea near the beach?

Nesma : Personally, I think it's a good idea. Wind turbines produce renewable energy.

Dalida : I agree that we need renewable energy, but I think the wind turbines should be built on the land.

Nesma : I don't agree that they should be built on the land. There is more wind at sea.

Dalida : Yes, but don't forget, many tourists love our beaches. They don't want to look at ugly wind turbines.

Nesma : I totally disagree. In my opinion, wind turbines look nice, and they won't be very near the beach.

Dalida : Perhaps you're right.

Reading

• on Lesson 6 SB page 30

The Great Green Wall

This report⁽¹⁾ is about a green⁽²⁾ initiative⁽³⁾ in Africa called the Great Green Wall. This initiative was set up⁽⁴⁾ in 2007 by the African Union to solve⁽⁵⁾ the problem of desertification⁽⁶⁾ in the Sahel region⁽⁷⁾ of Africa.



Check Vocabulary

المنطقة (7) | التصحر (6) | يحل (5) | يُنشئ (4) | مبادرة (3) | صديق للبيئة (2) | تقرير (1)

Desertification happens when green land becomes desert. In the Sahel region, this has happened because climate change is **creating**⁽⁶⁾ more **droughts**⁽⁹⁾ every year and people do not always **farm**⁽¹⁰⁾ the land well. People cannot grow food and they are losing their farms and homes.

The Great Green Wall initiative will **plant**⁽¹¹⁾ millions of trees, **seedlings**⁽¹²⁾ and plants across Africa from **west**⁽¹³⁾ to **east**⁽¹⁴⁾, to **create**⁽¹⁵⁾ a **growing**⁽¹⁶⁾, green **landscape**⁽¹⁷⁾. When it is finished, the wall will be 8,000 km long. It will be the biggest living thing in the world. It will create jobs for 10 million people. The trees and plants will **improve**⁽¹⁸⁾ the land for farming again, and people will be able to grow crops.

The Great Green Wall will improve the lives of everyone who lives in the Sahel region. It will also help **reduce**⁽¹⁹⁾ the problems caused by climate change for the whole world.

Check Vocabulary

(8) إبداع / خلق	(9) جفاف	(10) يزرع	(11) يزرع	(12) شتلة / نبتة	(13) غرب
(14) شرق	(15) يخلق / يوجد	(16) متزايد	(17) منظر طبيعي	(18) يحسن	(19) يقلل

on Lesson 6 WB page 89

Cleve Hill Solar Farm

This report is about plans to build the largest solar farm in the UK. The initiative, called Cleve Hill, plans to produce enough energy for 91,000 homes across the region and should be open in 2023.



The UK plans to use renewable energy **instead of**⁽¹⁾ fossil fuels by 2050 and Cleve Hill will help with this. The solar farm will have 880,000 solar panels on countryside that was **farmland**⁽²⁾, **around**⁽³⁾ two kilometres from the village of Graveney. In the past, solar farms were not very good in the UK because it is not very sunny. However, new large batteries in the solar farm can save and produce electricity even when the sun is not **shining**⁽⁴⁾.

Check Vocabulary

(1) بدلاً من	(2) أرض زراعية	(3) حوالى	(4) تسطع
--------------	----------------	-----------	----------

Some people in the village are not happy about the plan. They think that the solar farm is too big and will create problems for **wildlife**⁽⁵⁾. Also, they are worried that the large batteries are **dangerous**⁽⁶⁾ and could cause **fires**⁽⁷⁾.

The **organisers**⁽⁸⁾, **however**⁽⁹⁾, say that the batteries are **safe**⁽¹⁰⁾. They also say that there will be **special**⁽¹¹⁾ **areas**⁽¹²⁾ for wildlife. They say that the solar farm will help to reduce the problems caused by climate change.

Check Vocabulary

(5) الحياة البرية	(6) خطير	(7) حرائق	(8) المنظمون	(9) مع ذلك	(10) آمن	(11) خاص	(12) مناطق / مساحات
-------------------	----------	-----------	--------------	------------	----------	----------	---------------------

on Lesson 7 SB page 31

There are many green **initiatives**⁽¹⁾ across the world which are helping to protect the environment. There are projects to build solar farms to create **green energy**⁽²⁾. There are projects to plant **seedlings**⁽³⁾ and trees to give us cleaner air. At home, people are choosing to use **rechargeable batteries**⁽⁴⁾ and energy-saving light bulbs. Some people are buying more products made of bamboo, which is sustainable and doesn't cause pollution. Some people are even using **air conditioning**⁽⁵⁾ less often because it uses so much energy. What can you do to help protect the environment?



Check Vocabulary

(1) مبادرة	(2) الطاقة النظيفة	(3) نبتة	(4) بطاريات قابلة لإعادة الشحن	(5) تكييف الهواء
------------	--------------------	----------	--------------------------------	------------------

Videoscript

on Lesson 5 SB page 29

The energy that is produced by the sun is called **solar energy**⁽¹⁾. This is good for the environment because it is renewable. This means that it comes from **natural sources**⁽²⁾.

Check Vocabulary

(1) الطاقة الشمسية	(2) مصادر طبيعية
--------------------	------------------

Egypt has almost nine and a half hours of **sunshine**⁽³⁾ every day. The sun is nearly always shining and there aren't usually many clouds in the sky. It is one of the sunniest countries in the world. This is why Egypt is using the sun to produce energy.

Benban Solar Park⁽⁴⁾ is the largest solar farm in Africa and one of the biggest in the world. Benban opened in 2019 and it covers almost 38 square kilometres. It has got thousands of solar panels. It produces enough energy every year for hundreds of thousands of homes and **businesses**⁽⁵⁾. Did you know that, if you went into space, you would be able to see Benban Solar Park?

Another type of renewable energy is wind energy. There are wind farms in Egypt, like this one in **Hurghada**⁽⁶⁾.

Egypt uses a lot of renewable energy, and **the government**⁽⁷⁾ wants people to use more. They want 20% of all energy to come from renewable sources. If we all used more renewable energy, it would help us to save the **planet**⁽⁸⁾.

Check Vocabulary

(3) أشعة الشمس	(4) مزرعة بنبان للطاقة الشمسية	(5) مشاريع تجارية
(6) مدينة الغردقة	(7) الحكومة	(8) كوكب

General Notes on Reading & Listening

everyone

كل فرد

تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد ويستخدم الضمير they أو (He - She) بدلاً منها في الجمل التي تتبعها.

ex.: - Everyone who lives in this region is quite happy. They love their region.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

television interview	مقابلة تلفزيونية	I totally disagree	لا أوافق كلياً
I don't agree = I disagree (that)	لا أوافق (أن)	I agree that	أوافق أن
personally, I think	شخصياً أنا أعتقد	ask for permission	يطلب الأذن
discuss in a group / pairs	يناقش في مجموعة / في ثنائيات	Can I say something ?	هل يمكنني قول شيء ؟
ask for speak	يطلب التحدث	You're right.	أنت حق.
		instead of	بدلاً من

solve the problem
by 2050

compare with

(be) called

for a holiday

set up

for the whole world

يحل المشكلة

بحلول عام ٢٠٥٠

يقارن بـ

يدعى - يسمى

لقضاء الإجازة

بشيد - ينشئ

للعالم بأكمله

write up

problems for

in my opinion

think about / of

south of

produce money for

show on a map

يكتب بالتفصيل

مشاكل لـ

في رأيي - من وجهة نظري

يفكر في

جنوب

تجلب المال لـ

يوضح / يعرض على الخريطة

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. They had a/an with my favourite writer on TV yesterday.
a. view b. review c. interview d. preview

2. They build farm using sunlight to produce electricity.
a. wind b. solar c. water d. storm

3. I live in a small , famous for planting flowers.
a. region b. station c. season d. landscape

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

4. **SB** The wind turbines energy for the community.

a. find b. produce c. go d. help

5. **SB** Ask for before you speak when you discuss in a group.

a. permission b. agriculture c. help d. furniture

6. **SB** The Great Green Wall will help the problems caused by climate change.

a. make b. increase c. push d. reduce

7. **SB** There are projects to build solar farms to create green

a. land b. energy c. field d. trees

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. I used to make a before doing a big project.

a. pan b. play c. plan d. plane

9. Many people decided to the land and grow new fruits and vegetables.

a. put b. farm c. leave d. fire

10. When you need more information, online for it.
a. replay b. research c. repair d. redo

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

11. They are a survey on wildlife in Africa.
a. making b. doing c. giving d. taking
12. my opinion, money makes life go round.
a. On b. At c. In d. From
13. The government has set many new projects.
a. up b. at c. of d. in
14. New projects more jobs for the young.
a. lose b. damage c. destroy d. create

Definitions

15. happens when green land becomes desert.
a. Earthquake b. Desertification c. Deforestation d. Drought
16. A is an area of a country.
a. region b. village c. town d. city
17. A solar is an area with many solar panels that provides electricity.
a. farm b. energy c. power d. pool

Guessing the meaning

18. He always me, I can't talk while he is talking .
a. creates b. gives c. interrupts d. plans
19. He does his best to make his project better. He tries to it.
a. destroy b. improve c. agrees d. refuses
20. When there's no rain for long, we'll suffer from
a. power b. flood c. drought d. draft
21. I didn't expect that gift, it's so Thank you.
a. special b. popular c. normal d. ugly

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمة	المترادفات	المضاد
Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
beautiful	جميل	pretty-lovely
advantages	مزايا	pros
dangerous	خطير	serious - unsafe
		safe

introduction	مقدمة	preface	خاتمة
outside	بالخارج	out - outdoors	بالداخل
totally	كلياً - تماماً	fully - completely	جزئياً
possible	ممكن - محتمل	probable	مستحيل
include	يشمل	contain	يستثنى
reduce	يقلل	decrease	يزيد
		increase	

Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة	أمثلة
dis-	تعطي عكس المعنى	disagree لا يوافق
-ing	تعطي الصفة من الفعل	living حي - مفعم بالحياة growing متزايد
	تعطي اسم من الفعل	farming الزراعة fishing الصيد

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- This rose is a beautiful flower. We can replace "beautiful" with
a. soft b. safe c. pretty d. ugly
- The antonym of the word "totally" is
a. partially b. probably c. totally d. perfectly
- Rock climbing is a dangerous sport. The antonym of the word "dangerous" is
a. serious b. unsafe c. certain d. safe
- The introduction of the new storybook is amazing. The antonym of the word "introduction" is
a. series b. conclusion c. start d. preface
- The antonym of the word "pretty" is
a. beautiful b. amazing c. boring d. ugly
- Green energy reduces the pollution. The antonym of the word "reduces" is
a. decreases b. lows c. cuts d. increases

7. To get the noun from the verb "farm", we add the suffix
 a. -ed b. -ing c. -ly d. -tion
8. We add the prefix to get the opposite of "advantage".
 a. un- b. in- c. dis- d. re-
9. The suffix can be used to get the adjective from the verb "live".
 a. -ment b. -ing c. -ed d. -ion
10. The trainer excluded Sami from the team. The antonym of "excluded" is
 a. contained b. included c. reduced d. increased

Skills Corner



يُشْفِي التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.
 للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)
 Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

مهاراة القراءة

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 30 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 170 & 169 ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- **Determining the main idea** تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية

1. The main idea of the passage is
 a. facing floods b. facing drought
 c. facing desertification d. facing earthquakes

B. Answer the following questions :

- **Making inference** عمل استنتاج

2. Infer how we can reduce the problem caused by climate change in the Sahel region.

- **Summarising a text** تلخيص النص

3. Give a brief summary of the second paragraph of the passage in your own words.

2. Writing Corner

مهاراة الكتابة

جمل تساعدك على تلمية مهاراة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

- Desertification happens when green land becomes desert.
١. يحدث التصحر عندما تتحول الأرض الخضراء إلى صحراء.
- Climate changes create more droughts every year.
٢. تسبب التغيرات المناخية مزيداً من الجفاف كل عام.
- The Great Green Wall initiative will plant millions of trees across Africa.
٣. ستقوم مبادرة الجدار الأخضر بزراعة ملايين الأشجار عبر قارة أفريقيا.
- It will create jobs for 10 million people.
٤. سوف توفر هذه المبادرة حوالي ١٠ ملايين فرصة عمل.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

improve – opinion – think – thinking – advantages – trees

- What do you of my plan ?
- What are the of solar farms ?
- In my , we need to stop burning fossil fuels.
- The Great Green Wall will plant millions of
- The initiative will the lives of everyone.

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على مهاراة الكتابة

- Write a review of about ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :
"Desertification"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

3. Speaking Corner

Giving and responding to opinions :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. What do you think about my plan ? ١. ما رأيك في خطتي ؟	- In my opinion, it's a clever plan. - I think it's a clever plan. - في رأيي، إنها خطة رائعة.
2. Do you agree with me ? ٢. هل توافقني الرأي ؟	- Yes, I totally agree with you. - نعم، أوافقك الرأي تمامًا.
3. What is the main cause of desertification ? ٣. ما هو السبب الرئيسي للتصحّر ؟	- I think climate change is the main cause of desertification. - اعتقد أن تغير المناخ هو السبب الرئيسي للتصحّر.

مهارة التحدث

إعطاء الآراء والرد عليها :

Skills corner

★ تدرب على المهارات طبقاً للورقة الامتحانية كل درس على حده :

• مهارة القراءة : تدرب على اسئلة قطعة (استخراج معلومات - اعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية - فهم ما يشير اليه الضمير - تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص - مهارة التفكير النقدي.

• مهارة الكتابة : تدرب على كيفية الكتابة مع مراعاة (التنظيم - التهجى - ترابط الأفكار - علامات الترقيم - القواعد اللغوية - اختيار المفردات اللغوية).

• مهارة التحدث : تدرب على اتقان الوظائف اللغوية للتعامل مع سؤالات المحادثة في الامتحان.



المعاصر في اللغة الانجليزية

امنح نفسك لمن يستحق

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 5 & 6

Understand Apply Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Hamza invites his cousin Seif to his birthday party.

Hamza : Hi, Seif. I'd like to invite you to my birthday party.

Seif : (1) ! How old will you be ?

Hamza : (2)

Seif : Great ! (3) ?

Hamza : It will be next Sunday evening. (4)

Seif : Certainly, I will come. What present would you like to have for your birthday ?

Hamza : (5)

Seif : Who will come ?

Hamza : All our friends, of course.

Seif : That sounds great !

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

opinion - Personally - countryside - use - disagree - used

Some people like living in big cities and other people don't like it.

(1) , I think that living in big cities is very difficult now. In my

(2) , living in the (3) is much quieter, cleaner and healthier. Our grandparents (4) to live in villages. What do you think about that ?

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A/An is an area of a country.

a. landscape b. village c. opinion d. region

2. I don't like to see the rubbish in the street. It is a/an view.

a. beautiful b. ugly c. safe d. clean

3. To get the opposite of agree, we add the prefix
 a. il- b. dis- c. un- d. im-
4. To form the adverb of "total", we add the suffix
 a. -sion b. -ment c. -ly d. -y
5. The earthquake was really dangerous. The synonym of the word "dangerous" is
 a. safe b. unsafe c. quiet d. partial
6. Our teacher helped us to solve the problem. The opposite of "solve" is to
 a. complicate b. clarify c. clear d. support

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If you came early, you (meet) your uncle.
 2. If I (am) you, I would join the holiday.
 3. What (will) you do if you were lost in a foreign country?
 4. They would take some photos if they (have) a camera.
 5. The students (will) be happy if they won the competition.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of the Great Green Wall"

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتي

ممتاز
 جيد جدا
 جيد
 غير جيد

If you got ●, you need to revise the unit again on the next page.
 قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد،
 قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

At the end of this unit, I will be able to في نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادراً على أن

1 Learn important vocabulary اتعلم مفردات لغوية هامة

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> bamboo | <input type="checkbox"/> community |
| <input type="checkbox"/> batteries | <input type="checkbox"/> electricity |
| <input type="checkbox"/> hairbrush | <input type="checkbox"/> remote control |
| <input type="checkbox"/> sea level | <input type="checkbox"/> farmland |

2 Read and write sentences using "used to" + (inf.) and the second conditional (if) :

اقرأ واكتب جمل باستخدام "used to" وحالة (if) الشرطية الثانية

- ☐ We used to waste water.
☐ I didn't use to have an electric toothbrush.
☐ If we had more time, we'd visit our uncle.
☐ The farmers would move if there was another flood.

3 Talk about living more sustainably

أتحدث عن كيفية الحياة بطريقة أكثر استدامة

- ☐ (A) - What could you do to live a sustainable life ?
☐ (B) - I could use energy - saving light bulbs.
☐ (A) - What could you do to save the environment ?
☐ (B) - I could use less plastic.

Master your term جزء للمتابعة في كراسة المعاصر
 جزء للمتابعة الشهرية بعد كل ثلاث وحدات

لمزيد من التدريبات

Review

on unit 9

SB page 31 WB page 90

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
sustainable products light bulb toothbrush climate change environment crops protect floods electric grid produce remote inexpensive community wind turbines renewable energy solar panels remote control desertification region	1. Used to + (inf.) * People used to ride camels in the past. * People didn't use to use energy - saving light bulbs. 2. Second Conditional (if) past would ('d) + inf. If simple * If we lived in Hurghada, we'd go to the beach. * If the weather wasn't windy, the wind turbine wouldn't work. * What would you do if you were ill?	1. Discussing how to live more sustainably (A) What could you do to stop using things that are bad for the environment? (B) We could use less plastic. 2. Giving and responding to opinions. (A) What do you think of solar energy? (B) I think it's sustainable and more renewable. (A) What do you think about my new car? (B) In my opinion, it's a smart car.

Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة
معالجة جديدة لأنماط وأنماط مختلفة
لمهارة الكتابة

A (review / biography / short story)

Climate change / Solar energy in Africa / The Great Green Wall.



Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لتنمية مهارة الكتابة

- How can mangrove trees protect farms?
- How can most African villages get their electricity?
- When does desertification happen?



Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

- sea level	- solar energy	- desertification
- mangrove trees	- remote villages	- region
- seedlings	- inexpensive	- drought
- climate changes	- floods	- landscape



Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتركيب مساعدة

- Climate change means
- It's important to
- If there were more mangrove trees,
- This report is about
- This has happened because



Practise

تدرب على مهارة الكتابة

Write a report of about ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:
"The Great Green Wall"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضوع إختبار) في كل وحدة والتي تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع تدريبات الوحدة و كل التدريبات الخاصة بالمنهج

unit
9

Vocabulary

products	منتجات	organisations	منظمات
electric toothbrush	فرشاة أسنان كهربية	rechargeable	قابل للشحن
provide	يزود / يوفر	produce	ينتج
floods	فيضانات	desertification	التصحر
communities	مجتمعات	climate change	تغير مناخي
electric grid	شبكة كهربية	drought	جفاف
solar energy	طاقة شمسية	initiative	مبادرة

مفردات لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

2. Language

1. He used to smoke⁽¹⁾ when he was young.
2. She didn't use to⁽²⁾ save energy.
3. If I were you, I'd see⁽³⁾ the doctor.
4. What would you do if you got up⁽⁴⁾ early?

Check Language

- (1) يستخدم الفعل في المصدر بعد (used to)
(2) يستخدم (didn't use to) بعد نفي used to متبوعاً بالمصدر
(3) صيغة الشرط (مصدر + 'd) في حالة (if) الشرطية الثانية
(4) صيغة الشرط يكون في زمن الماضي البسيط في الحالة الشرطية الثانية

كلمات لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار

3. Speaking

Questions	Answers
1. Why do people visit the Red Sea coast?	- They enjoy the pure water and fine weather.
2. What do you think of using solar energy?	- In my opinion, it's very good for the environment.
3. Which kind of renewable energy can we use in Egypt?	- We can use wind turbines and solar energy.

Test

on Unit 9

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار
إلكترونياً وتصويبه

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Munir is at a mobile phone shop looking for a good mobile phone to buy.

Assistant : Good evening. Can I help you ?

Munir : Good evening. (1)

Assistant : We have a good collection of new mobile phones.
(2) ..?

Munir : It's great ! (3) ..?

Assistant : It's 7000 pounds.

Munir : It's very expensive. (4) ..

Assistant : This mobile is cheaper. (5) ..

Munir : Really ? Japanese mobile phones are very good. I'll buy it.

Assistant : Here you are.

Munir : Thanks.

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

would – expensive – clean – solar – will – inexpensive

All the countries try to replace the fossil fuels with new types of energy. One of these types is the (1) energy. It is (2) and (3) because it doesn't cost much money. If people had used it many years ago, they (4) have protected their environment and save much money.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

I have a friend called Magdy who always pretends to know everything. Whenever a name is mentioned, he says he knows him. I believed Magdy until one day I found out that he was a big liar. Once he visited me when I was sitting with my cousin Mr. Samir Sadek, who happened to be a well famous writer. Before I introduced my friend to Mr. Samir, his eyes fell on one of the books, which was on the table.

Magdy at once said that the author of the book was one of his relatives, and started telling stories about the adventures they had together. He also said that Mr. Samir never wrote a book before discussing its ideas with him. Mr Samir asked my friend Magdy if he could recognize Mr Samir if he saw him. My friend assured him that he would.

With a loud laugh, he introduced himself to my friend who was so ashamed that he immediately left the house. Since that day, he does not meet me and he never says that he knows anything or anybody.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What does the underlined word "they" refer to ?
 a. Magdy and his friend b. The writer and his friend
 c. The writer and Mr. Samir. d. Magdy and Mr. Samir
2. The writer discovered that Magdy
 a. knew everybody in the city b. never told lies
 c. was a big liar d. knew Mr. Samir
3. The writer's cousin asked Magdy if he knew Samir Sadek to
 a. prove that Magdy was not telling the truth
 b. know where he lived
 c. discuss the lies he tells with Magdy
 d. tell him about his new story

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What was Magdy's bad habit ? What's your opinion of it ?

5. Summarise the passage in your own words.

6. If you have friend as Magdy, will you keep him as a friend ? Why ?

C. Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We can form the adverb of the word "personal", by adding the suffix
 a. -sion b. -ment c. -ly d. -y

2. Building new cities is a good way to solve many problems. The opposite of the word "build" is
 a. create b. construct c. help d. destroy
3. We can use wind to produce energy.
 a. wheels b. types c. points d. turbines
4. To get the antonym of the word "expensive", we add the prefix
 a. in- b. im- c. il- d. un-
5. "....." means able to continue without causing damage to the environment.
 a. Nonrenewable b. Sustainable c. Friendly d. Electric
6. We should protect our environment; not it.
 a. cycle b. recycle c. damage d. manage

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Nehal (doesn't used) to go swimming at the age of ten.
2. Hamza used (playing) football in the club.
3. How would you behave if you (lose) your mobile in a restaurant ?
4. If you asked their help, they would (helped) you.
5. People didn't (using to communicate) with social media 30 years ago.

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

محتاج عنده في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of how to be a successful person"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 9 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Hassan and Salma are talking about climate change.

Hassan : Hi, Salma. How are things ?

Salma : Fine, thank you.

Hassan : What did your teacher of science talk about today ?

Salma : (1)

Hassan : Climate change ! (2)

Salma : Climate change means that some changes will affect the environment and our lives badly .

Hassan : What can scientists do to face this problem ?

Salma : They can (3) some kinds of trees to protect farms and communities.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations :

1. You are asked about your opinion about solar energy.

2. Ask your brother about his opinion about renewable energy.

3 Write a paragraph of six sentences on :

"Desertification"

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- If I (be) you, I'd study hard.
- Ahmed used to smoke in the past, but now he (isn't).
- The knife (used not to) write with.
- What (can) you do if you had a lot of money ?
- We didn't use (use) energy - saving light bulbs.

Review C

SB pages 32 & 33 WB pages 91 & 92



تدريب
للتدريبات على الثلاث
وحدات
Master your term

Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 32

Narrator : Between August 2019 and July 2020 about 11,000 square kilometres of **Amazon rainforests**⁽¹⁾ were burnt and cut down. The trees were cut down to make farms to plant **crops**⁽²⁾ for cows. When the trees were burned, a lot of greenhouse gases were created, which caused climate change. But also, when the trees were destroyed, the **habitats**⁽³⁾ of thousands of birds and animals were lost. The animals that lived had **nowhere**⁽⁴⁾ to live and they couldn't find food. This is why some habitats are made into **nature reserves**⁽⁵⁾. In 1951, the **Serengeti**⁽⁶⁾ in Africa was made a nature reserve.

Check Vocabulary

(1) غابات الأمازون (2) محاصيل (3) مواطن (4) لا مكان (5) محميات طبيعية (6) سيرينغيتي (نظام بيئي)

on Lesson 1 WB page 91

Woman : Today, I'm going to talk about a plan to **introduce**⁽¹⁾ an animal back to **Britain**⁽²⁾. I'd like to start by saying that bears used to live in Britain many years ago. However, there have been no bears in the country for hundreds of years. So why do scientists want to bring them back ? To begin with, they are beautiful animals. Visitors love to see them, and they will be able to watch the bears **safely**⁽³⁾ from special areas.

Man 1 : I'm sorry, but I'm not sure what you mean by special areas.

Woman : The bears will live in **woods**⁽⁴⁾, which is their natural habitat, but there will be **fences**⁽⁵⁾ to keep the bears from people. Visitors will walk along high paths up in the trees and watch the bears from there. Are there any more questions ?

Man 2 : Yes, what do you think about the farmers who worry that the bears will kill their animals ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) يُقدّم (2) بريطانيا (3) بأمان (4) غابات (5) أسوار - سياج

- **Woman** : Personally, I don't think they need to worry. The bears won't live near any farms. They will only stay in woods and they will be behind the fences. So, **to conclude**⁽⁶⁾, this is just one plan to bring back animals that used to live in Britain. In my opinion, this is a great start.

Check Vocabulary

(6) الخلاصة

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 32

In 2020, a lot of **greenhouse gases**⁽¹⁾ were created by **deforestation**⁽²⁾ in the Amazon area. Trees were burned and a lot of carbon dioxide was made by all the fires. We could avoid creating carbon dioxide by not cutting down our forests and burning the trees. We need to protect our **rainforests**⁽³⁾ because they are important **habitats**⁽⁴⁾ for wildlife, plants and trees. The millions of trees keep the air clean for the whole planet. The greenhouse gas **methane**⁽⁵⁾ was produced by the cows that are brought to the area after the rainforest has been destroyed. So, it is time to plant more and more trees.

Check Vocabulary

(1) غازات الاحتباس الحراري (2) إزالة الغابات (3) غابات مطيرة (4) بيئات طبيعية (5) غاز الميثان

on Lesson 2 SB page 33

There are lots of ways we can protect our environment and build a **greener**⁽¹⁾ world. We need to use cleaner, greener energy. If **factories**⁽²⁾ had **solar panels**⁽³⁾ on their buildings, they would save money. We need more people to work together to get **renewable energy**⁽⁴⁾ for their communities. If more communities had a **wind turbine**⁽⁵⁾, they would have cheaper, cleaner energy. We could also help the environment by planting more trees. What about plastic? Millions of plastic bottles are used every day. When these bottles are **recycled**⁽⁶⁾, the plastic is used to make clothes, toys, carpets and **furniture**⁽⁷⁾!

Check Vocabulary

(1) أكثر ملائمة للبيئة (2) مصانع (3) الألواح طاقة شمسية (4) طاقة متجددة (5) توربينات الرياح (6) يُعاد تصنيعها (7) الأثاث

- Glass and metal can be recycled, too. We don't recycle enough and that's why there's still so much rubbish in **landfill sites**⁽⁸⁾.

Check Vocabulary

(8) مواقع مقالب النفايات

on Lesson 2 SB page 33

If everyone does one thing to help the **environment**⁽¹⁾, it will help a lot. For example, we can all use less paper or **turn off**⁽²⁾ the lights when we leave a room.

I didn't use to buy **rechargeable**⁽³⁾ **batteries**⁽⁴⁾, but now I do. We can all help. I don't think there's much that young people can do to help the environment. Our parents buy our food and clothes. They do the shopping. If my parents don't want to recycle anything, there's nothing I can do.

Check Vocabulary

(1) البيئة (2) يطفى - يغلق (3) قابل لإعادة الشحن (4) بطاريات

on Lesson 2 WB page 92

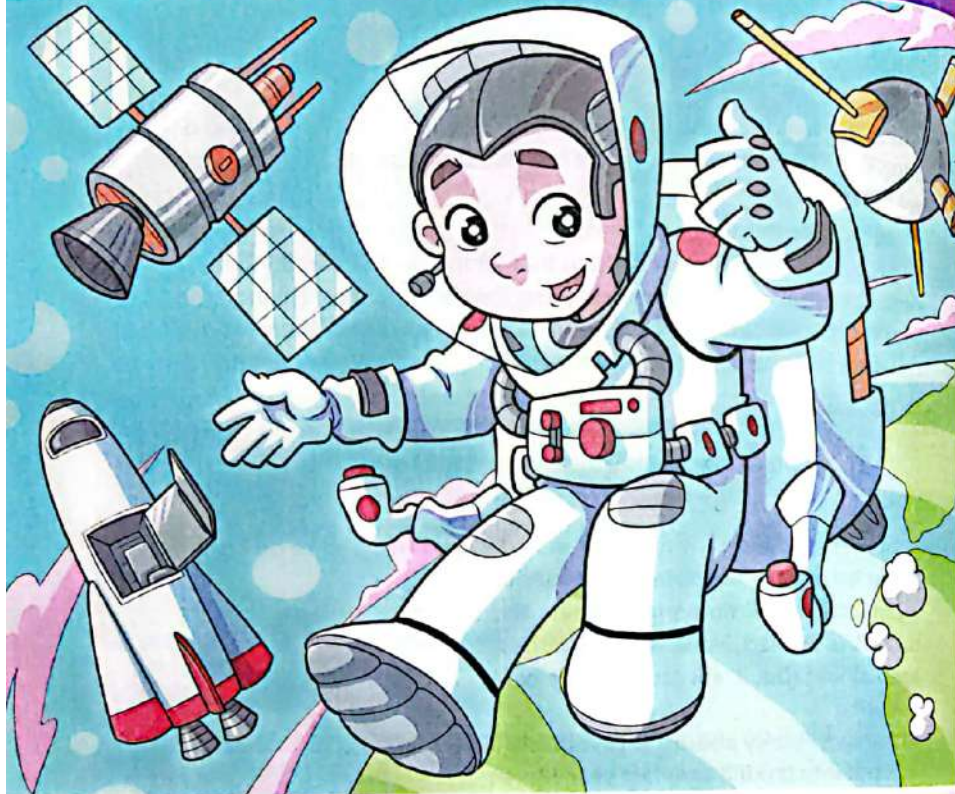
Rubbish is produced by all of us every day, and we need to do something about it. In many countries, most rubbish is put into landfill sites and in others, the rubbish is burned. However, if countries keep doing this, it will **cause**⁽¹⁾ a lot of **pollution**⁽²⁾.

In **Sweden**⁽³⁾, only about 1% of rubbish was put into landfill sites last year. More than 50% of rubbish is recycled, and most houses are just 300 metres from a "**recycling station**⁽⁴⁾" where people can put paper, glass and plastic. The **rest**⁽⁵⁾ of their rubbish is burned in special **power stations**⁽⁶⁾. Here, the rubbish is **made into**⁽⁷⁾ electricity and **heating**⁽⁸⁾. These power stations cause some air pollution, but something **useful**⁽⁹⁾ is created, too.



Check Vocabulary

(1) يسبب (2) تلوث (3) دولة السويد (4) محطة إعادة التصنيع (5) الباقى (6) محطات توليد كهرباء (7) يتحول إلى (8) تدفئة - الحرارة (9) مفيد



Objectives

• Reading :

A magazine article about a space scientist; the history of space exploration; a text about satellite technology; the poem The Day; an informative text about the International Space Station

• Writing :

A paragraph about objects that use space technology; an informative text about a spacecraft

• Listening :

A quiz about space; a podcast about satellites;

a discussion about a famous photo

• Speaking :

Talking about life experiences; talking about space and satellite technology; saying when events happened

• Language :

The past perfect

• Life Skills :

Critical thinking

• العلامة SB : تتبع أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة WB : تتبع أسئلة كتاب التدريبات
• Master your term في الشهيرة في
• قاموس المعاصر اللغوي • ملحق المعاصر للأهر الشرف
• ملحق A week is enough



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

space station (n)	محطة فضائية	lens - lenses (n)	عدسة - عدسات
telescope (n)	تليسكوب	solar system (n)	نظام شمسي
gravity (n)	الجاذبية الأرضية	spacecraft (n)	مركبة فضاء
orbit (ed) (v), (n)	يدور حول - مسار	astronomer (n)	عالم فلكي
researcher (n)	باحث / دارس	satellite (n)	قمر صناعي
flood (ed) (v), (n)	يفيض - يغمر بالمياه / فيضان		

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).

Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية انظر نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 34 & 35 WB page 93

timeline (n)	تسلسل زمني	retire (d) (v)	يتقاعد
event (n)	حدث / مناسبة هامة	American (adj)	أمريكي (الجنسية)
Mars (n)	كوكب المريخ	organise (d) (v)	ينظم
astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء	quiz (n)	إختبار قصير
Dubai	مدينة دبي	competition (n)	مسابقة
prepare (d) (v)	يعد - يجهز	lecturer (n)	محاضر
solution (n)	حل	space (n)	الفضاء
jet (n)	طائرة نفاثة	graduate (d) (v)	يتخرج (من جامعة / معهد)
machine (n)	آلة	teaching assistant (n)	مدرس مساعد
force (n)	قوة	Finland (n)	دولة فنلندا
attract (ed) (v)	يجذب	equipment (n)	معدات

Lesson 2

SB pages 36 & 37 WB page 94

Islamic (adj)	إسلامي	family party (n)	حفلة عائلية
discover (ed) (v)	يكشف	death (n)	موت - وفاة

discovery (n)	إكتشاف	alive (adj)	حي
publish (ed) (v)	ينشر	planet (n)	كوكب
age (n)	عمر	believe (d) (v)	يعتقد / يؤمن
invent (ed) (v)	يخترع	round (adj)	دائري / مستدير
inventor (n)	مخترع	century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
author (n)	كاتب - مؤلف	amount (n)	كمية

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تعريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
choose يختار	chose	chosen
become يصبح	became	become
think يفكر / يعتقد	thought	thought
sweep يكنس	swept	swept
hear يسمع	heard	heard

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات. ولمزيد من التعريفات أنظر قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

astronaut	a person who travels into space	رائد فضاء
astronomer	a person who studies the stars and planets	عالم فلكي
gravity	a force which attracts things or people to the centre of the Earth	الجاذبية الأرضية
satellite	a machine in space that goes around the Earth to send or collect information	قمر صناعي
researcher	a person who studies something carefully	باحث / دارس
space station	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a large spacecraft where people live and work a large satellite going around the Earth where astronauts can live and work to study space. 	محطة فضاء / مركبة فضاء

telescope

a piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away

تلسكوب

lens

a piece of glass used in cameras or on glasses, that can make things look bigger or smaller

عدسة

orbit

to move around a star or planet

يدور في مدار

solar system

all the planets and their moons which go around the sun

النظام الشمسي / المجموعة الشمسية

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

give	a specific time يحدد موعد معين	enter	a competition ينضم إلى المسابقة
take	a taxi يستقل سيارة أجرة	start	a competition يقيم منافسة / مسابقة
come	second يأتي في المركز الثاني	have	a weekend يقضي عطلة
make	a discovery يكتشف		

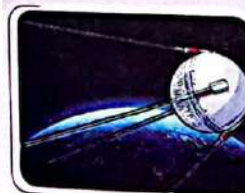
II Reading and Listening

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 34

1957: the first satellite, Sputnik 1.

سبوتنيك ١ هو أول قمر صناعي.



1961: the first man in space, Yuri Gagarin.

يوري جاجارين هو أول رجل في الفضاء.



1963: the first woman in space, Valentina Tereshkova.

فالنتينا تريشكوفا هي أول سيدة في الفضاء.



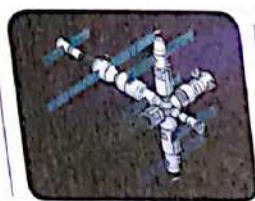
1969: Neil Armstrong becomes the first astronaut to walk on the moon.

نيل أرمسترونج يصبح أول رائد فضاء يمشي على القمر.



1990: The world's first space station, Mir, goes into space.

مير هي أول محطة فضاء في العالم تذهب إلى الفضاء.



1990: The first telescope is sent into space.

أول تليسكوب يتم إرساله إلى الفضاء.



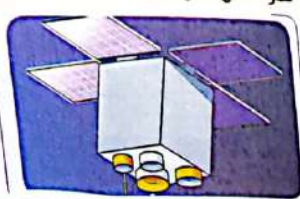
1998: The International Space Station.

محطة الفضاء الدولية.



2001: A new Egyptian satellite.

قمر صناعي مصري جديد.



on Lesson 1 SB page 35

Prize-winning⁽¹⁾ Egyptian helps NASA⁽²⁾

For many years, NASA has been trying to understand what it can do with the rubbish that space journeys⁽³⁾ produce. Scientists have been looking for ways to solve the problem of rubbish. Astronauts⁽⁴⁾ use a lot of plastic, paper and other waste on their journeys to space.

This can be a real problem. So NASA started a competition, asking the world's best scientists to try and find a solution⁽⁵⁾.



Check Vocabulary

حل (5) رواد فضاء (4) رحلات إلى الفضاء (3) وكالة ناسا الفضائية (2) الفائز بجائزة (1)

Ayman Ragab is an Egyptian scientist who has always been interested in space science. In 2019, he entered NASA's competition and came second⁽⁶⁾.

Ayman suggested using jets⁽⁷⁾ of air to make the waste smaller and then help to recycle it.

Ayman is from the village of al-Dababiya near Luxor and graduated⁽⁸⁾ in Engineering from Aswan University. He has worked as a teaching assistant⁽⁹⁾ at the same university and now works as a researcher⁽¹⁰⁾ for a university in Finland.

Since he won his prize, he has worked on NASA's Technology Transfer Project⁽¹¹⁾ which looks at how to use the latest technology in space, and he has recently found ways to save energy when there is little gravity⁽¹²⁾.

Check Vocabulary

مدرس مساعد (9) يتخرج (من جامعة) (8) طائرة نفاثة (7) فاز بالمركز الثاني (6) جاذبية منخفضة (12) مشروع ناسا لنقل التكنولوجيا (11) باحث (10)

on Lesson 1 WB page 93

June 2018

Today, the famous American astronaut Peggy Annette Whitson has just said that she is going to retire⁽¹⁾. More than 500 people have been to space, but Peggy has spent longer in space than any other woman. She has been travelling to space every few years since 2002. As well as⁽²⁾ being an astronaut, Peggy has been working as a researcher⁽³⁾, a university lecturer⁽⁴⁾ and on the International Space Station⁽⁵⁾. Our newspaper has been writing about her work for more than 15 years, and we wish her luck⁽⁶⁾ for the future!



Check Vocabulary

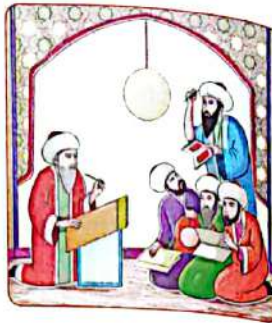
خط (6) محطة الفضاء الدولية (5) مُحاضر (4) باحث (3) بالإضافة إلى (2) يتقاعد (1)

on Lesson 2 SB page 36

Exploring space - past and present

The first astronomers

The stars and the planets have always been important to us. In **ancient times**⁽¹⁾, people knew what time of year it was by looking at where the stars were in the sky. The Ancient Egyptians **discovered**⁽²⁾ that a star called Sirius appeared in the sky just before the Nile **flooded**⁽³⁾.



Early ideas about the sun and the Earth

An astronomer from the 2nd century, called Ptolemy, **believed**⁽⁴⁾ that the sun **orbited**⁽⁵⁾ the Earth. It was a **popular**⁽⁶⁾ idea that people believed for many centuries. Islamic astronomers in the 11th - 13th centuries thought that the idea might be wrong.

A new idea

In 1532, the astronomer Nicolaus Copernicus showed that the Earth orbited the sun, but he hadn't **published**⁽⁷⁾ his ideas until just before he died. Copernicus hadn't wanted people to know about his ideas while he was **alive**⁽⁸⁾, because he knew they would be **unpopular**⁽⁹⁾.

The first telescopes

Before the beginning of the 17th century, astronomers had only studied space with their own eyes. Then, in 1608, the **telescope**⁽¹⁰⁾ was **invented**⁽¹¹⁾. The Italian astronomer Galileo **improved**⁽¹²⁾ the **design**⁽¹³⁾. He made the **lenses**⁽¹⁴⁾ **stronger**⁽¹⁵⁾ so that he could study the **planets**⁽¹⁶⁾ in our **solar system**⁽¹⁷⁾.

Modern discoveries

The modern **age**⁽¹⁸⁾ is an exciting time for space **discovery**⁽¹⁹⁾. We can see **objects**⁽²⁰⁾ that are far away in space and **look for**⁽²¹⁾ life on other planets. What discoveries do you think we will make in the future?

Check Vocabulary

(1) ينشر	(2) مكتشف	(3) يفرض	(4) يعتقد	(5) يدور حول	(6) محبوب / له شعبية	(7) المنشور
(8) حن	(9) غير محبوب	(10) تلسكوب	(11) اخترع	(12) يُحسّن	(13) التصميم	(14) عدسات
(15) أقوى	(16) كواكب	(17) النظام الشمسي	(18) عصر	(19) اكتشاف	(20) أشياء	(21) يبحث عن

Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 37



Rami : What are you looking at, Kamal ?

Kamal : Hi, Rami. It's a **quiz**⁽¹⁾ about **space**⁽²⁾ history. Some of the answers to the questions are very **surprising**⁽³⁾. I scored 2 out of 4. Would you like to try ?

Rami : OK. Ask me the first question.

Kamal : When did people first **discover**⁽⁴⁾ the planets in our solar system ?
A: about 2000 years ago or B: about 400 years ago.

Rami : Hmm ... I don't think **astronomers**⁽⁵⁾ had discovered the planets before the telescope was invented, so I think the answer is B: about 400 years ago.

Kamal : Wrong! Astronomers had discovered them a long time before that ! People from an ancient place in **the Middle East**⁽⁶⁾ called Babylonia discovered the planets in the first and second **century**⁽⁷⁾. They saw that the planets moved differently from the stars in the sky, so they knew that they were different.

Rami : Wow! That was a long time ago !

Kamal: Yes, it was ! Second question ... When did people discover that the Earth was round ? A: in the 6th century or B: in the 15th century.

Rami : Oh, I know people believed that the Earth was **flat**⁽⁸⁾ for a long time. So I'll choose answer B: in the 15th century.

Check Vocabulary

(1) امتحان نموذج	(2) الفضاء	(3) مدهش	(4) مكتشف	(5) علماء الفلك	(6) الشرق الأوسط	(7) قرن	(8) مُسطح
------------------	------------	----------	-----------	-----------------	------------------	---------	-----------

Kamal: Wrong answer ! People had discovered the Earth was round a long time before the 15th century ! Greek scientists in the 6th century saw that the sky looked different from different places. This made them think that the planet was round.

Rami : Oh dear ! I'm not doing very well.

Kamal: Don't worry. Here's the third question. Who **invented**⁽⁹⁾ the telescope ? A: Galileo or B: Hans Lippershey ?

Rami : Hmm ... Well Galileo improved the **design**⁽¹⁰⁾ of the telescope, but he didn't invent it. So the answer is B, Hans Lippershey.

Kamal: That's right. Hans Lippershey lived in the **Netherlands**⁽¹¹⁾ in the 16th century. He wasn't an astronomer – he made **glasses**⁽¹²⁾. He discovered that he could use more than one lens to make objects look bigger ... So, Galileo didn't invent the telescope, but he was the first person to use it to study space. Question 4. How many people had walked on the moon by the end of the 20th century ? A: 2 or B: 12 ?

Rami : Hmm, I'm sure it's more than two, so I think B is the right answer – 12 people.

Kamal: That's right ! Twelve people had walked on the moon by the end of the 20th century. No more people have walked on the moon this century, so the number is still the same.

Rami : So I got 2 out of 4 – the same as you ! That was really interesting, Rami ! I think I learnt a lot.

Check Vocabulary

(9) اخترع (10) تصميم (11) دولة هولندا (12) عدسات



On Lesson 2 SB Page 37

If you look up to the sky **during the day**⁽¹⁾, you can see clouds and the sun. At night, you can see the moon, some planets and hundreds of **thousands**⁽²⁾ of stars. The sun is a star and all of the planets in our **solar system**⁽³⁾ move around it. It takes our planet, Earth, 365 days to **orbit**⁽⁴⁾ the sun.

Check Vocabulary

(1) أثناء النهار (2) آلاف (3) النظام الشمسي (4) يدور

We know this, and many other things about our solar system, because of the work of Islamic **astronomers**⁽⁵⁾ more than one thousand years ago.

In the tenth century, an astronomer from **Iran**⁽⁶⁾ called Abd al-Rahman al-Sufi wrote a very important book about the solar system called **The Book of Fixed Stars**⁽⁷⁾. This described the **exact position**⁽⁸⁾ of the stars in the night sky at different times of the year, and it also included drawings and **descriptions**⁽⁹⁾ of different groups of stars called **constellations**⁽¹⁰⁾. The group of stars in a constellation can form a picture in the sky, such as the **Great Bear**⁽¹¹⁾ and **Orion**⁽¹²⁾. Nobody had described them so accurately before al-Sufi did.

A very large group of stars is called a **galaxy**⁽¹³⁾. Earth is in a galaxy called the **Milky Way**⁽¹⁴⁾. Abd al-Rahman al-Sufi wrote about other galaxies, such as the **Large Magellanic Cloud**⁽¹⁵⁾ and the **Andromeda Galaxy**⁽¹⁶⁾, before many other people had even seen them.

An Egyptian astronomer called Ibn Yunus studied how planets moved in the solar system in the eleventh century. Later, an important European astronomer called Copernicus used these studies to suggest that planets moved around the sun. Before this, some people had thought that the sun moved around Earth.

Today, astronomers are still discovering new things about stars, planets and galaxies. What do you think they will discover in the future ?

Check Vocabulary

(5) علماء الفلك	(6) دولة إيران	(7) كتاب النجوم الثابتة	(8) الموقع الدقيق
(9) وصف	(10) مجموعة نجوم	(11) الدب الأكبر	(12) الجوزاء
(13) مجرة	(14) مجرة درب التبانة	(15) مجرة ماجلان الكبرى	(16) مجرة المرأة المسلسلة

General

Notes on Reading & Listening

1 space

* space (n)

ex.: - The scientists managed to build a space station into **space**.

فضاء

* space (n)

ex.: - Is there a **space** for my bag on the chair next to you, Basim ? فراغ

ex.: - Leave a **space** to avoid infection when you are in class. مسافة

2 astronaut - astronomer - astrologer

* astronaut

(شخص يسافر للفضاء في مهمة)

ex.: There are four **astronauts** on the spacecraft.

* astronomer

(شخص يدرس علم الفلك)

ex.: An **astronomer** is the person who studies stars scientifically.

* astrologer

(منجم)

ex.: Some **astrologers** create websites to publish their predictions.

3 Subject + verb so that + sub. + can/could + inf.

ex.: He **studies** hard **so that** he **can** succeed.

ex.: He **studied** hard **so that**he **could** succeed.

4 trip - journey

* trip

(رحلة قصيرة)

ex.: How was your **trip** to the museum yesterday?

* journey

(رحلة طويلة)

ex.: The **journey** to Luxor will take five days.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

as well as	بالإضافة إلى	in the 15 th century	في القرن الخامس عشر
dream of	يحلم بـ	have a lot to do	لديه الكثير للقيام به
go around	يدور حول	The centre of the Earth	مركز الأرض
go into space	يسافر في الفضاء	let in	يسمح بالدخول
prepare for	يعد لـ	on Mars	على كوكب المريخ
with their own eyes	بعيونهم المجردة	walk on the moon	يمشي على سطح القمر
a piece of equipment	إحدى المعدات	study space	يدرس الفضاء
by looking at	من خلال النظر في	in ancient times	في العصور القديمة
by the end of	قبل إنتهاء ...	just before	قبل / قبيل
learn more about	يتعلم الكثير عن	from the past	من الماضي
prize-winning	الفائز بجائزة	on other planets	على الكواكب الأخرى
orbit the sun	يدور حول الشمس		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

- Our system includes the sun and eight planets.
a. rainy b. solar c. cloudy d. model
- Yesterday, dad bought a camera with a very good
a. telescope b. lens c. orbit d. comet

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

- SB** Galileo studied the in our solar system.
a. discoveries b. lenses c. planets d. times
- WB** The moon the Earth once every 27 days.
a. orbits b. lands c. organises d. retires
- WB** Azza loves studying the stars and planets. She wants to be
a/an
a. astrologer b. soldier c. astronaut d. astronomer

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- A lot of orbit the Earth.
a. planets b. satellites c. telescopes d. projects
- I want to enter an international math
a. competition b. race c. discovery d. lens
- Most employees at 60.
a. reclaim b. recall c. retire d. recollect

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- Let's go on a boat on the Nile for an hour.
a. trip b. journey c. flight d. project
- Habiba Marzouk is dreaming going to the Olympics.
a. on b. of c. at d. about

Definitions

تعريفات

- A/An is a person who travels into space.
a. writer b. astronaut c. astronomer d. astrologer

12. A piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away is called a
 a. telescope b. glasses c. wheel d. robot
13. The space is a large spacecraft where people live and work.
 a. robot b. telescope c. satellite d. station
14. The is a force which attracts things or people to the centre of the Earth.
 a. space b. gravity c. satellite d. jet
15. A is a machine in space that goes around the Earth.
 a. plane b. spacecraft c. satellite d. comet
16. A/An is a person who studies something carefully.
 a. player b. actor c. painter d. researcher

Guessing the meaning from the text

تخمين المعنى

17. Dad retired at 50 as he has some health problems. That means that he stopped at fifty.
 a. working b. living c. reading d. running
18. In 1608, the telescope was invented. That means that it was
 a. moved b. encouraged c. designed d. showed
19. Nora helped to organise an important sports event. The word "organise" in the sentence means
 a. leave b. arrange c. arrive d. choose

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

متضادات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/opposite المضاد
accurate دقيق	correct / exact	inaccurate غير دقيق
correct صحيح	right / true	incorrect / false خاطئ
specific مُعَيَّن / مُحدَّد	particular/certain	non specific غير محدد / معين
recently حديثاً / مؤخراً	lately	previously - anciently سابقاً - قديماً
modern حديث / عصري	new/up-to-date	old/ancient قديم

far away بعيد - ناء	remote - distant	close - nearby قريب
alive حي	living	dead ميت
popular شائع / منتشر	common/well-known	unpopular غير شائع

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
a -	تكوّن الصفة من الفعل	alive حي
un -	تعطي عكس المعنى	unpopular غير محبوب / معروف
- ion	تكوّن الاسم من الفعل	collection مجموعة
in -	تكوّن العكس	incorrect غير صحيح
- ly	تحول الصفة إلى ظرف	successfully بنجاح
- ian	تكون الصفة والاسم	Italian إيطالي (الجنسية)

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- You can make an adverb from the adjective "successful" by adding the suffix
 a. - al b. - ly c. - er d. - y
- We add the suffix to get the noun from the word "Italy".
 a. - er b. - ment c. - ian d. - ing
- I haven't been to the club recently. The word "recently" can be replaced by the word
 a. early b. lately c. well d. hard
- The prefix "....." gives the opposite of the word "correct".
 a. un - b. ir - c. im - d. in -
- There is a café far away. The word "far away" can be replaced by ".....".
 a. near b. close c. remote d. nearby
- We collect some money for a specific purpose. The synonym of the word "specific" is ".....".
 a. common b. general c. particular d. distant

III Language

Remember تذكر

The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative statement :

الجملة الخبرية المثبتة :

I, we, you, they, اسم جمع
He, she, it, اسم مفردhave
has + p.p. التصريف الثالث

ex.: - I have found a pen. - She has studied hard.
- My uncle and aunt have sent me an email.

2 Negative statement :

الجملة الخبرية المنفية :

I, we, you, they, اسم جمع
He, she, it, اسم مفردhave not (haven't)
has not (hasn't) + p.p. التصريف الثالث

ex.: - We have not (haven't) finished studying English yet.

3 Interrogative :

صيغة الاستفهام :

A) Yes / No question :

السؤال بـ «هل» :

Have
has + subject الفاعل + p.p. ?

ex.: - Have you eaten Chinese food ?
- Yes, I have. - No, I haven't.
- Has she cooked fish yet ?
- Yes, she has. - No, she hasn't.

B) Wh - question :

السؤال باستخدام كلمة إستفهام :

question word
كلمة استفهام + have
has + subject الفاعل + p.p. ?

ex.: - What have you brought ? - Where has Ali gone ?
- I have brought my bag. - He has gone to Paris.

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present perfect to talk about experiences in the past without giving a specific time.

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي بدون تحديد وقت حدوثه (أي أن الوقت لا يكون من المهم ذكره).

ex.: - My favourite writer has written a new book.

- I have been deaf all my life.

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام عند ذكر عدد مرات الفعل أو الكم وذلك في وجود كلمات مثل
two / three / many / a few / several / a lot of

ex.: - I have drunk two cups of coffee.

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمراً حتى الآن.

ex.: - I have lived in Aswan since 2007.

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وله أثر في الحاضر.

ex.: - My hands are dirty. I have mended my bike.

لاحظ أن : عند تحديد وقت وقوع الحدث في الماضي نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط.

ex.: - Tamer has sent me an email. He wrote it yesterday.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

• غالباً ما يأتي المضارع التام مع هذه الكلمات :

just	حالياً/تو	never	أبداً	yet	حتى الآن	for	لمدة
already	بالفعل	ever	من قبل	since	منذ		

The Present Perfect Continuous Tense:

زمن المضارع التام المستمر :

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statement

الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

Subject
الفاعل + have ('ve)
has ('s) + been + (inf. + ing) ...

ex. - I have been reading a new book since June.
- She has been travelling for a week.

2 Negative Statement → **Subject** + **haven't / hasn't** + **been** + **(inf. + ing) ...**
 الجملة الخبرية المنفية
 ex. - I haven't been working.
 - Mum hasn't been cleaning the house.

A Yes / No questions : السؤال بـ «هل» :
Have / Has + **subject** + **been** + **(inf. + ing) ... ?**
 صيغة الاستفهام
 ex. - Have you been visiting England this month ?
 - Yes, I have. - No, I haven't.

B Wh-question : السؤال بكلمة استفهام :
Question word + **have / has** + **subject** + **been** + **(inf. + ing) ... ?**
 كلمة استفهام
 ex. - How long has he been reading this book ?
 - He has been reading this book for a week.

Usage : الاستخدام

The Present Perfect Continuous Tense is used :

- 1 To talk about something that started in the past and is still happening now.**
 للتحدث عن شيء ما بدأ في زمن الماضي وما زال مستمر حتى الوقت الحالي.
 Nora has been dreaming of going into space all her life.
 ex. : - I have been waiting for the bus for a long time now.

- 2 To talk about actions that started in the past and have present results.**
 للتحدث عن أحداث بدأت في الماضي ولها أثر في الوقت الحاضر.
 ex. : It has been raining all day, so the garden is very wet.

Time words : كلمات وتعبيرات زمنية تستخدم مع زمن المضارع التام المستمر

for	لمدة	(a long time / very long / the last / the past)
since	منذ	(2000 / Monday / April / yesterday / 6 o'clock)
all	طوال	(morning - evening - day)
this	هذا	(week - month - year)

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB Have you ever (using) a telescope ?
2. SB What have you been (dream) of since you were young ?
3. WB "I (be) to this restaurant before. Is it good ?" - "Yes, it is."
4. WB Ahmed (read) three books this week. He loves reading !
5. WB Heba (do) her homework for two hours. She hasn't finished yet.
6. WB Younis (read) a new story for an hour, he is still reading it.

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. Have you (be) waiting for the bus for a long time ?
8. Haytham has (create) an app already.
9. I have already (come) to school.
10. Nada has (win already) a gold medal.
11. Mrs Mona has (be) teaching English since 2001.
12. I've been (do) this hobby since last year.
13. You look tired. What (had) you been doing ?
14. They have been (studied) for three hours now.

The Past Perfect Tense

زمن الماضي التام

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative statements → **Subject** + **had ('d)** + **p.p.**
 الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

- ex. - He **had done** his homework before he **watched** TV.
 - They **had** their lunch after they **had studied** English.

Negative statements

الجملة الخبرية
المنفية

2

Subject فاعل + hadn't + p.p.

ex. I hadn't watched TV before I finished my homework.

A Yes / No question السؤال بـ «هل»

Had + Subject فاعل + p.p.?

ex. - Had you finished everything by five?
- Had she studied English well before her last exam?

3 Interrogative

صيغة
الاستفهام

B Wh-question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + had + Subject فاعل + p.p.?

ex. - What had they bought before travelling?
- Where had you been before going to the cinema?

Usage الاستخدام

(1) We use the past perfect to talk about something that happened before another event in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضي التام للحدث عن حدثين تم أحدهما قبل حدث آخر في الماضي.

الحدث الأول (الأقدم) ماضي تام والحدث الثاني (الأحدث) ماضي بسيط.

- I went to the cinema after I had completed my work.

الحدث الثاني : ماضي بسيط الحدث الأول : ماضي التام

Time connectors

يستخدم زمن الماضي التام مع الروابط الآتية :

1

After بعد Past Perfect Tense زمن الماضي التام Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط
As soon as بمجرد أن

Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط after as soon as Past Perfect Tense زمن الماضي التام

ex. - After he had parked his car, he went to work.
- He had breakfast as soon as he had washed his face.

2

Before By the time When قبل قبل عندما Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط Past Perfect Tense زمن الماضي التام

Past Perfect Tense زمن الماضي التام before by the time when Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

ex. - Before he arrived, his uncle had left to Mansoura.
- He had written the letter to his uncle by the time he visited him.
- When we arrived at the station, the train had left.

⚠ لاحظ أنه في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد After / Before نستخدم (inf. + ing) بعدهما

ex. - After parking his car, he went to work.
- Before watching TV, he had studied his lessons.

3

ماضي بسيط غالباً منفي until till حتى Past Perfect Tense زمن الماضي التام
didn't + inf.
wasn't + P.P. / adj.
weren't + P.P. / adj.ex. - He didn't watch TV until he had done his homework.
- The car wasn't sold till he had repaired it.
- Sara wasn't happy until her mother had come.

4

نتيجة because as لأن سبب Past Simple Past Perfect (had + P.P.)

ex. - Ali was tired because he had worked hard.
- Nadia succeeded as she had studied hard.



- ex. - Ali had worked hard so he was tired.
- Nadia had studied hard that's why she succeeded.

(2) The past perfect is used to describe an action that happened before a specific time in the past.

يستخدم الماضي التام ليصف حدث تم في الماضي قبل وقت محدد في الماضي.



- Before the beginning of the 17th century, astronomers had only studied space with their own eyes.

- ex. - By 2001, my uncle had built his house.
- Before my last birthday, I had bought a bike.

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. **SB** How many people (walked) on the moon by the end of the 20th century?
2. **WB** I didn't send the report until I (revise) it.
3. **WB** I hadn't been to Karim's house since he (paints) it yellow.
4. **WB** Fatma (has) never heard Italian before she went to Rome.
5. **WB** We (take) a taxi to the beach because the bus had already left.

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. After Nada (cooks) the food, her visitors arrived.
7. Before (listened) to the radio, Ali had done his homework.
8. After Ola had studied her lessons, she (goes) out.

9. The boy ran away as soon as he (seeing) the dog.
10. When Ayman arrived at the station, the train (leaving) already.
11. Before he (go) to school, he had packed his bag.
12. We (don't) decide to have lunch until we had visited the museum.
13. Had he (leave) our tickets before he went to the show?
14. She had succeeded last week so she (be) happy.
15. By the time he (goes) to bed, he had watched the film.
16. The river (is) very dry because it hadn't rained for weeks.
17. Lina knew the best room in the hotel because she had (be) there before.
18. Scientists (did) a lot of research before the first person walked on the moon in 1969.
19. After (studied) the moon, Farouk El Baz started studying deserts on the Earth.

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) **تنويه** Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

مهارة القراءة

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 SB page 36 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 198 ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

- **Determining the main idea** تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية

1. This passage is about

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| a. NASA project | b. microscopes |
| c. solar system | d. exploring space |

- **Making inference** عمل استنتاج

2. What do you think would happen if Copernicus told people his idea before he died?

.....

- **Summarising a text** تلخيص نص

3. Summarise the first paragraph of the passage in your own words.

.....

2. Writing Corner

A. Read the sentences

"A biography of Ayman Ragab"

1. Ayman Ragab is an Egyptian scientist.
 ١. أيمن رجب عالم مصري.
2. He has always been interested in space science.
 ٢. كان دائمًا مهتم بعلم الفضاء.
3. In 2019, he entered NASA's competition and came second.
 ٣. في عام ٢٠١٩ اشترك في مسابقة وكالة ناسا وحصل على المركز الثاني.
4. He is from a village near Luxor.
 ٤. هو من قرية تقع بالقرب من مدينة الأقصر.
5. He graduated in Engineering from Aswan University.
 ٥. تخرج من كلية الهندسة جامعة أسوان.
6. He has worked as a teaching assistant at Aswan University.
 ٦. عمل في وظيفة مدرس مساعد في جامعة أسوان.
7. Now, he works as a researcher for a University in Finland.
 ٧. يعمل دكتور أيمن في وظيفة باحث في جامعة بدولة فنلندا الآن.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

ever - been - never - satellite - astronomer - orbits

1. The Earth the sun.
2. The goes around the Earth to collect information.
3. She has working as an engineer since 2000.
4. Have you used a telescope ?
5. A/An is the person who studies the stars and planets.

C. Practise by yourself

- Write a review of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"Space"

مهارات الكتابة

دمل تساعدك على تنمية مهارة الكتابة.

3. Speaking Corner

مهارات التحدث

Asking and answering questions about life experiences.

توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن التجارب الحياتية :

Questions	Answers
1. Have you ever used a telescope ? ١. هل سبق لك استخدام التلسكوب من قبل ؟	- Yes, I used a telescope on the science trip last year. - نعم. لقد قمت باستخدامه في الرحلة العلمية العام الماضي.
2. What have you been dreaming of since you were young ? ٢. بماذا كنت تحلم عندما كنت صغيراً ؟	- I have been dreaming of being an engineer. - لقد كنت أحلم أن أصبح مهندساً.
3. Has anyone of your friends tried an unusual sport ? ٣. هل قام أحد أصدقائك بتجربة رياضة مختلفة ؟	- Yes. My friend Ali has tried to climb a mountain. - نعم. قام صديقي «علي» بتجربة رياضة تسلق الجبال.

أحرص على اقتناء



EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

للمف الثالث الإعدادي

مراجعة نهائية

اسم يعنى التفوق



General Exercises

On

LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Mazen has got lost in Port Said and he asks a taxi driver to help him to reach the Sun hotel.

Mazen : Excuse me. Can you help me ?

Taxi driver : Of course, (1)

Mazen : (2)

Taxi driver : Walk along this road and then turn right. Do you want me to take you there ?

Mazen : (3) Is it far from here ?

Taxi driver : (4)

Mazen : Is there a museum near the hotel ?

Taxi driver : Yes, there is the Egyptian Museum.

Mazen : Thanks. (5)

Taxi driver : The ticket of the museum costs 20 pounds.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

have - walked - robot - Mars - has - astronaut

Man had dreamt of travelling into space before achieving it in the 20th century. Man (1) on the moon during the 1960s. A space station (2) been built and then a space (3) was invented. Do you think we will be able to walk on (4) in the 21st century ?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A is a large spacecraft where people live and work.

a. satellite

b. lens

c. rocket

d. space station

2. To get the adverb of the adjective "successful", we add the suffix
a. - ly b. - ity c. - al d. - able
3. When something isn't modern; it's
a. new b. advanced c. clear d. ancient
4. To get the opposite of the adjective "popular", we use the prefix
a. dis - b. un - c. in - d. im -
5. This idea can't be right. The synonym of "right" is
a. wrong b. false c. correct d. common
6. They gave me a specific job in the project. The antonym of "specific" is
a. modern b. nonspecific c. remote d. particular

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. She (work) here for five years. She is still here.
2. The government (built) many roads recently.
3. (you have) ever travelled into space ?
4. She has (be) to London with her parents before.
5. I (arrive) home before the film started.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

محتاج عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A biography of Ayman Ragab"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

braces(n)	تقويم أسنان - دغامة	signal(n)	إشارة
helmet(n)	خوذة	trainers(n)	حذاء رياضي
receiver(n)	جهاز استقبال	wireless(adj)	لاسلكي
sensor(n)	جهاز استشعار	in vain (adj)	عيثاً - بلا جدوى
continent (n)	قارة	fellow (n)	رفيق
grain (n)	حبوب	toiler (n)	عامل مكافح

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية أنظر نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 38 & 39 WB page 95

allow(ed) (v)	يُمكن - يسمح	since(adv/prep)	منذ
anywhere(adv)	في أي مكان	motorbike(n)	دراجة بخارية
without(adv/prep)	بدون	sports matches(n)	مباريات رياضية
satellite TV (n)	القنوات الفضائية	podcast(n)	إذاعة / بث
design(ed) (v), (n)	يصمم - تصميم	air bags	وسادات هوائية
nature (n)	الطبيعة	clear material	مادة شفافة
system (n)	نظام	check (ed) (v)	يُفحص - يدقق
headphones (n)	سماعات الأذن	show (ed) (v), (n)	يعرض - عرض

Lesson 4

SB page 40 WB page 96

context(n)	السياق	poem(n)	قصيدة
verse(n)	فقرة شعرية	rhyme(d) (v), (n)	نسخة - قافية
poet (n)	شاعر	task (n)	مهمة
fridge (n)	ثلاجة	diplomat (n)	دبلوماسي
wheat (n)	قمح	wait (ed) (v)	ينتظر
seed (n)	بذرة		

Clear the confusion

won	فاز	one	رقم واحد
I	أنا	eye	عين
here	هنا	hear	يسمع
know	يعرف	no	لا
sea	بحر	see	يرى
son	ابن	sun	شمس

Abbreviations

GPS	Global Positioning System	نظام تحديد المواقع
BCE	before common era	قبل الميلاد
Dr	doctor	طبيب
Mr	mister	السيد
TV	television	تلفزيون

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
blow	blew	blown
fall	fell	fallen
say	said	said
teach	taught	taught

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.
ولمزيد من التعريفات أنظر قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

braces	something that people can wear to make their teeth straight	تقويم أسنان - دغامة
GPS	a system (Global Positioning System) for finding how to find something or to get to a place using satellites	نظام تحديد المواقع
helmet	a special hard hat used to protect the head	خوذة
satellite receiver	a machine which can receive or read information that is sent by a satellite	جهاز استقبال القمر الصناعي

sensor	something which can measure small amounts of light, heat, sound, etc.	جهاز استشعار
signal	information or an instruction that is sent by sound, light, etc.	إشارة
wireless	able to use the internet without wires	لاسلكي
toiler	someone who is working hard	مكافح - مجتهد
grain	a seed or seeds from a plant such as wheat	حبوب

Collocations

send	signals	يرسل إشارات	take	photos	يلتقط صور
-------------	---------	-------------	-------------	--------	-----------

II Reading and Listening

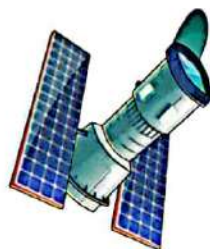
Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 38

We couldn't live without ... satellite technology

Since⁽¹⁾ the late 20th century,⁽²⁾ we have used satellite technology for many of the things we do every day. Our lives would be very different without⁽³⁾ it. Here are some of the things that we use satellites for.

GPS⁽⁴⁾ - Before satellites were invented, people had always used maps to find their way. Now, most people use GPS, which uses a **system**⁽⁵⁾ of satellites that work together. These send **signals**⁽⁶⁾ to **receivers**⁽⁷⁾ on Earth, which **work out**⁽⁸⁾ where you are. We have GPS in cars, on phones and even in some modern motorbike **helmets**⁽⁹⁾!



Check Vocabulary

(1) منذ	(2) أواخر القرن العشرين	(3) بدون	(4) نظام تحديد المواقع
(5) نظام	(6) إشارات	(7) أجهزة استقبال	(8) بحسب/يُحدّد
(9) خوذة			

Weather reports - Satellites **allow**⁽¹⁰⁾ us to study the weather all around the world. They send photos of the Earth from space. When these are put together, they show how clouds and **storms**⁽¹¹⁾ are moving.

TV and the internet - Lots of people have satellite TV **so that**⁽¹²⁾ they can watch their favourite **shows**⁽¹³⁾ and sports matches. The signal goes to a receiver on the house. In some areas, satellites send signals to the internet, too.

Mobile Phones⁽¹⁴⁾ - Have you ever had problems using your phone because the signal is bad? Satellite phones can work **anywhere**⁽¹⁵⁾ in the world. They are very **useful**⁽¹⁶⁾ in places **far from**⁽¹⁷⁾ cities, such as on mountains or in deserts.

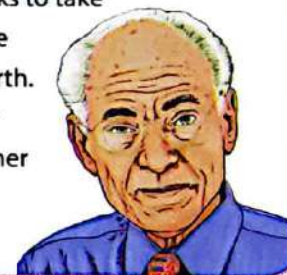
Check Vocabulary

(10) يُمكن - يسمح	(11) عواصف	(12) لكي	(13) عروض
(14) هواتف محمولة	(15) في أي مكان	(16) مفيد	(17) بعيد عن

on Lesson 3 WB page 95

Farouk El-Baz

Scientists had done a lot of **research**⁽¹⁾ before the first person walked on the moon in 1969, and one of the most important scientists was Farouk El-Baz. He helped to plan where Apollo 11 should **land**⁽²⁾ on the moon. Farouk also taught **astronauts**⁽³⁾ which rocks to take from the moon on **later visits**⁽⁴⁾. After studying the moon, Farouk started studying deserts on the Earth. He used **satellites**⁽⁵⁾ to find rivers that were under the sand, and this work has helped Egypt and other countries to find new water.



Check Vocabulary

(1) بحث	(2) يهبط	(3) رواد فضاء	(4) زيارات تالية	(5) أقمار صناعية
---------	----------	---------------	------------------	------------------

• on Lesson 4 SB page 40

Day

This poem was written by Sir Cecil Spring-Rice, a British diplomat born on February 27, 1859.

"I am busy⁽¹⁾," said the sea.
"I am busy. Think of me making continents⁽²⁾ to be.
I am busy," said the sea.

"I am busy," said the rain.
"When I fall it's not in vain⁽³⁾;
Wait and you will see the grain⁽⁴⁾.
I am busy," said the rain.

"I am busy," said the air,
"Blowing here and blowing there,
Up and down and everywhere.
I am busy," said the air.



"I am busy," said the sun.
"All my planets, every one,
Know my work is never done.
I am busy," said the sun.

Sea and rain and air and sun,
Here's a fellow toiler⁽⁵⁾ – one,
Whose task will soon be done.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مشغول (2) قارات (3) بلا جدوى (4) حبوب (5) رفيق مكافح

Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 39

Voice : Satellites⁽¹⁾ have changed the way that we do a lot of things on Earth. But did you know space technology⁽²⁾ is also used to make many of the objects⁽³⁾ we use every day? In fact, around 50 new products⁽⁴⁾ are invented every year using space technology. Here are some of the ones you might use.



Check Vocabulary

(1) الأقمار الصناعية (2) تكنولوجيا الفضاء (3) أشياء (4) منتجات

Narrator : One, trainers⁽⁵⁾

Voice : In the 1970s, space scientists invented a new type of helmet⁽⁶⁾. The material inside the helmet contained small bags of air, which made the helmet more comfortable and protected the astronaut⁽⁷⁾ better. A few years later, one of these scientists had the idea of using same type of air bags⁽⁸⁾ in trainers. Many modern trainers now use this design.



Narrator : Two, mobile phone cameras

Voice : In 1990, space scientists invented a new sensor⁽⁹⁾ that allowed scientists to take photos in space without using much energy. This technology is now used in the cameras in our mobile phones.



Narrator : Three, wireless headphones⁽¹⁰⁾

Voice : It's important for astronauts to be able to communicate with their team on Earth. Before the 1960s, headphones were big and uncomfortable. So space scientists designed light⁽¹¹⁾, wireless headphones that astronauts could speak into without using their hands. Neil Armstrong spoke through wireless headphones when he first stepped onto the moon.



Narrator : Four, sunglasses

Voice : In 1980, scientists were working on a way to protect astronauts' eyes in space. They read that the eyes of some birds have special oil that protects them from light and helps them to see more clearly⁽¹²⁾. The scientists designed a lens⁽¹³⁾ that could do the same thing. Today, this type of lens is used in sunglasses.

Check Vocabulary

(5) حذاء رياضي (6) خوذة (7) رائد فضاء (8) الوسادات الهوائية (9) سماعات الأذن (10) خفيف الوزن (11) بوضوح (12) عدسة (13) جهاز استشعار

Narrator : Five, clear braces⁽¹⁴⁾

Voice : People have wanted perfect teeth since ancient times⁽¹⁵⁾. Did you know that the Ancient Egyptians had used the insides⁽¹⁶⁾ of sheep to make braces for teeth? In more modern times⁽¹⁷⁾, braces were made from metal, and then, in 1986 the first clear braces were created. They used a special kind of plastic that is strong even when it's very thin. It was created to protect equipment⁽¹⁸⁾ on trips into space.

Check Vocabulary

• معدات (18) الصور الحديثة (17) الأجزاء الداخلية (16) الصور القديمة (15) تقويم الأسنان (14)

on Lesson 4 WB page 96

1. I watched my favourite football team yesterday, and they won!
2. Oh, there is something in my eye.
3. My friend called me, but I could not hear.
4. I asked my mother if I could go to the park, but she said no.
5. What can you see from the top of the tower?
6. Ali is Hassan's youngest son.

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 since

* since = because

ex.: Sama didn't go to school since she was ill.

* since

ex.: They've lived in Luxor since they were married.

2 weather - climate

* weather

ex.: A: What's the weather like today?

B: It's hot and dry.

* climate

ex.: Egypt has a good climate all the year.

3 sports (n) / (adj)

رياضات - رياضي

ex.: Swimming, horse riding and boxing are all sports.

ex.: There is a sports club in our town.

4 age - aged

* age

عمر - عصر

ex.: What age are you? = How old are you?

ex.: In old ages, people had a hard life.

* aged

عن عمر يناهز

ex.: My uncle, Magdi, died aged 56 (at the age of 56).

5 sign - signal

* sign (n)

ex.: There is a "No smoking" sign everywhere in the hospital. لافتة

ex.: Scientists are looking for signs of life on the moon. علامة

* signal (n)

إشارة (ضوئية - صوتية) للإرسال معلومات معينة لشخص ما.

ex.: The officer gave a signal to the policemen to start attacking the gang.

6 poem

قصيدة

is a piece of writing in which the words are arranged in separate lines, often ending in rhyme, and are chosen for their sound and for the images and ideas they suggest.

- هو أحد أشكال مهارة الكتابة يتم ترتيب الكلمات بها في سطور منفصلة، وغالباً ما تنتهي بقافية، ويتم اختيارها لصوتها وللصور والأفكار التي تقترحها.

7 poet

شاعر

is a person who writes poems.

- هو الشخص الذي يقوم بكتابة القصائد.

8 rhyme

سجع - قافية

words that have the same sound.

- الكلمات التي لها نفس الصوت.

ex.: hall - wall

mouse - house

fall - call

9 verse

one of the parts that a poem is divided into.

هو أحد الأجزاء التي تقسم القصيدة إليها.

ex.: The moon poem consists of three verses.

مقطع شعري

Important Expressions & Prepositions

a system of satellites	نظام القمر الصناعي	since the late 20 th century	منذ أواخر القرن العشرين
send messages	يرسل رسائل	on phones	على الهواتف
show how	يبين كيف	all around the world	دول العالم
useful in	مفيد في	put together	يضع سوياً
find their way	يجدوا طريقهم	in some areas	في بعض المناطق
use ... for	يستخدم ... لـ	far from cities	بعيداً عن المدن
work together	يعمل سوياً	on satellite TV	على الفضائيات
in the hall	في الصالة	on later visits	في زيارات لاحقة
do research	يقوم بعمل بحث		
work out	يحسب - يحل - يستنتج		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- You can wear on your teeth.
a. bracelet b. braces c. parcels d. headphones
- You can wear for sports. They're very comfortable to your feet.
a. boots b. air bags c. trainers d. suits
- Africa is one of the seven in the world.
a. contents b. continents c. contexts d. countries

SB and WB Exercises

- Another word for a man is
a. fool b. fellow c. follow d. foil
- How many does the poem have ?
a. viruses b. lenses c. verses d. races
- If you have satellite TV, the signal goes into a small on your house.
a. report b. receiver c. century d. article

El-Moasser Exercises

- I can't make a call because there is no telephone
a. wireless b. signal c. system d. space
- You must wear a when you ride on a motorbike.
a. helmet b. bag c. boot d. suit
- The sun in the morning.
a. lies b. shines c. sets d. gets

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- We use a camera to photos.
a. receive b. take c. find d. lie
- The in Africa is always hot.
a. whether b. weather c. clay d. tip
- Manar couldn't her way in the dark.
a. find b. put c. send d. show

Definitions

تعريفات

- A/An is a system for finding how to find something or place.
a. USA b. ATM c. BCE d. GPS
- A is someone who is working hard.
a. receiver b. sensor c. toiler d. towel
- The is something that people can wear to make their teeth straight.
a. braces b. bracelet c. ring d. necklace
- A/An is a special hard hat used to protect the head.
a. boot b. helmet c. cap d. mask
- A is information or an instruction that is sent by sound, light, etc.
a. sensor b. signal c. wireless d. squeak

Guessing meaning

تخمين المعنى

18. Omar succeeded in all his exams last year. That means that he all his exams.
a. failed b. passed c. fell d. went
19. **WB** If something is , you don't need to plug it in.
a. wireless b. fatherless c. sadness d. powerless

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym/Opposite
useless	عديم الفائدة	worthless - valueless
allow	يُمكن - يسمح	let
comfortable	مريح	relaxing
pass	يجتاز	succeed in
send	يرسل	deliver
		useful
		stop/prevent
		uncomfortable
		fail
		receive

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
- ful	تكون الصفة من الاسم	useful مفيد
- less	تكون الصفة من الاسم	wireless لاسلكي
- er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	receiver جهاز استقبال
un -	تكون عكس المعنى	unsuccessful غير ناجح

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- You can make an adjective from the noun "use", by adding
a. - ly b. - ful c. - ness d. - y
- We add the suffix to get the adjective from the noun "wire".
a. - ness b. - y c. - less d. - ed
- His parents don't allow him to stay out late. The word "allow" can be replaced by the word
a. let b. stop c. prevent d. pass
- Satellites send lots of signals. The antonym of the word "send" is
a. deliver b. allow c. pass d. receive

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارف (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)

(Master Your Term) في ملحق Part 2

1. Reading Corner

مهارات القراءة

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 3 WB page 95 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 221 ثم قم بالتدريب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

- **Determining the main idea** تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية

1. This passage is about

- a. Neil Armstrong b. Galileo
c. Farouk El-Baz d. Ptolemy

- **Making inference** عمل استنتاج

2. What other work do you think Farouk El-Baz had done before he studied the deserts ?

- **Summarising a text** تلخيص نص

3. Give a brief summary of the passage in your own words.

2. Writing Corner

مهارات الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على تنمية مهارة الكتابة.

التلفزيون والإنترنت "TV and the internet"

- Lots of people have satellite TV. كثير من الناس لديهم قنوات فضائية.
- They can watch their favourite shows and sports matches. يستطيعوا مشاهدة عروضهم المفضلة ومباريات كرة القدم.
- The signal goes to a receiver on the house. ٣. تصل الإشارة إلى جهاز الاستقبال الموجود فوق المنزل.
- In some areas, satellites send signals to the internet, too. ٤. في بعض المناطق ترسل الأقمار الصناعية الإشارات إلى الإنترنت أيضاً.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

used - for - to - study - verses - system

1. Satellites allow us to the weather all around the world.
2. GPS uses a of satellites.
3. How many does the poem have ?
4. Satellite technology is useful weather reports.
5. People had always maps to find their way.

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

- Write a biography of about 110 words on :
"Farouk El-Baz"

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

▶ Asking and answering questions about space and satellite technology :

توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن تكنولوجيا الفضاء والأقمار الصناعية :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. Why is satellite technology useful for weather reports ? ١. لماذا تعد تكنولوجيا الأقمار الصناعية مفيدة لتقارير الطقس ؟	- They show how clouds and storms are moving. - توضح كيف تتحرك السحب والعواصف.
2. How did people find their way around before the discovery of satellites were invented ? ٢. كيف كان الأشخاص يجدون طريقهم قبل اكتشاف القمر الصناعي ؟	- They used maps. - كانوا يستخدمون الخرائط.
3. What sends the signal ? ٣. ما الذى يرسل الإشارة ؟	- A satellite sends it. - يقوم القمر الصناعي بإرسالها.
4. How have you used satellite technology this week ? ٤. كيف استخدمت تكنولوجيا القمر الصناعي هذا الأسبوع ؟	- I checked the weather this morning and I watched my favourite show on satellite TV last night. - لقد تحققت من حالة الطقس هذا الصباح وشاهدت العرض المفضل لدى على القناة الفضائية الليلة الماضية.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Rania is doing her homework and asks her cousin, Samar, a question.

Samar : Hi, Rania, what are you doing ?

Rania : (1) Can you help me with a question ?

Samar : (2) What is it ?

Rania : (3) ?

Samar : The word "sad" is the antonym of the word "delighted".

Rania : You mean that the word "delighted" has the same meaning as the word "happy" and the word "pleased".

Samar : Exactly, that's right.

Rania : (4) ?

Samar : Yes, I was very good at English at school. Ask me if you need any help.

Rania : (5) You're the best cousin.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

become - quick - communication - systems - became - important

Thanks to modern technology, communication has become very easy. People have (1) able to communicate with each other in a (2) and comfortable way. Satellites (3) have helped people to know their way in deserts or remote places. For you, which is the most (4) modern invention ?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- To form the opposite of the word "successful", we add the prefix
a. im- b. ir- c. un- d. il-
- The antonym of the verb "send" is to
a. receive b. deceive c. create d. belong
- The is a machine which can receive or read information that is sent by a satellite.
a. sensor b. helmet
c. satellite receiver d. GPS system
- The synonym of the word "far" is
a. remote b. nearby c. next d. close
- If we add the suffix to the word "wire", we get the adjective.
a. - ion b. - y c. - less d. - ful
- The is information or an instruction that is sent by sound, light, etc.
a. sign b. signal c. site d. sensor

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

يحتاج منه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of satellite technology".

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

exhibition(n)	معرض - عرض	guide (n)	مرشد
planetarium(n)	قبة سماوية	directions(n)	اتجاهات
vehicle(n)	مركبة	railway(n)	سكة حديدية
source(n)	مصدر	Mediterranean(n)	البحر المتوسط
The International Space Station	المحطة الفضائية الدولية	sailor (n)	بحار

تلميح Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).

Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية لهية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 41 WB page 97

around(pre/adv)	حول	flat(adj)	مسطو - فسطح
clear(adj)	واضح	Venetian(n)	شخص من مدينة فينيسيا الإيطالية
Russia	دولة روسيا	circle (n)	دائرة
newspaper (n)	جريدة	appear (ed) (v)	يظهر
Europe (n)	قارة أوروبا	Englishman (n)	رجل إنجليزي (الجنسية)
Spanish (n)	أسباني (الجنسية)	Asia (n)	قارة آسيا
travel(led) (v), (n)	يسافر - سفر		

Lesson 6

SB page 42 WB page 98

Informative (adj)	إعلامي - إخباري	huge (adj)	ضخم
Hubble(n)	مرصد هابل الفلكي	journey(n)	رحلة
achievement (n)	إنجاز	perseverance(n)	مثابرة / عزيمة
nearly (adv)	تقريباً	probe(n)	مجس (آلة)
asteroid(n)	كويكب (كوكب شيار)	public transport	المواصلات العامة
diary (n)	يوميات / مفكرة يومية	winner(n)	فائز
date	تاريخ	entry (n)	مدخل

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
draw يرسم	drew	drawn
bring يحضر / يجلب	brought	brought
leave يغادر	left	left
understand يفهم	understood	understood
hit يصد - يضرب	hit	hit

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

maps يرسم خرائط	draw maps يرسم خرائط
phone calls يجري مكالمات هاتفية	get directions يحصل على الاتجاهات
notes يدون الملاحظات	take back يسترد / يعيد
sure يتأكد	

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 5 SB page 41

Guide⁽¹⁾: This is a very interesting photo. Do you know what it is?

Lina : It's the moon.

Guide : That's right. This is a photo of the moon, but it's an **unusual**⁽²⁾ photo. This isn't what we see when we look into the sky at night. This is **the far side**⁽³⁾ of the moon.

Injy : So this is the side of the moon we can't see from Earth.

Guide : That's right. No one had seen this side of the moon before 1959. That's when the **Russian**⁽⁴⁾ spacecraft, Luna 3 took the first photos of it. As soon as the photos were taken, they appeared in newspapers around the world. The photos weren't very **clear**⁽⁵⁾, but everyone was very excited to see them. Then, in 1965, Russia sent Zond 3, another spacecraft to orbit the moon. It took 25 photos and they were much clearer.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مرشد (2) غير عادي (3) الجانب البعيد (4) روسي (5) واضح

Lina : Has anyone made a map of the moon ?

Guide : Good question ! From 1966 to 1967, the USA sent spacecrafts to orbit the moon and take photos. They used these to create **maps**⁽⁶⁾ of the moon. At the same time, Russia created maps using the photos from Zond 3.

Injy : Were all of the photos of the far side of the moon taken by spacecraft ?

Guide : No, soon after the maps were created, astronauts from the Apollo 8 spacecraft became the first people to see the far side of the moon. They took photos of the moon as they orbited it.

Lina : Have any spacecraft **landed on**⁽⁷⁾ the far side of the moon ?Guide : Yes. NASA sent a spacecraft to the far side of the moon in 1962, but it broke when it landed. A long time after this, in 2019, a Chinese spacecraft **successfully**⁽⁸⁾ landed on the far side of the moon.

Check Vocabulary

(6) خرائط (7) هبط على (8) بنجاح

Reading

• on Lesson 5 WB page 97

The history of maps

100s Ptolemy draws one of the first maps. It shows the area **around**⁽¹⁾ the **Mediterranean**⁽²⁾.1100s Al Idrisi, from North Africa, **draws maps**⁽³⁾ in a book called Tabula Rogeriana. It **shows**⁽⁴⁾ the world as a **circle**⁽⁵⁾.1500s The **Spanish**⁽⁶⁾ **sailor**⁽⁷⁾ Juan de la Cosa draws the first map to show America. Gerardus Mercator **finds a way to**⁽⁸⁾ draw the round world on **flat**⁽⁹⁾ paper.1800s Roads and **railways**⁽¹⁰⁾ make travel easier. Maps become smaller and better.

Check Vocabulary

(1) حول (2) البحر المتوسط (3) يرسم خرائط (4) يوضح - يعرض (5) دائرة
(6) أسباني (7) بحار (8) يجد طريقة لـ (9) مُسطح (10) سكة حديدية

1950s The first satellite photos are taken of the Earth and maps give much more information.

2005 People start to use maps on their phones and computers. They use satellites to **get directions**.⁽¹¹⁾

Check Vocabulary

يحصل على الاتجاهات (11)

on Lesson 6 SB page 42

The International Space Station

What is the International Space Station ?

The International Space Station⁽¹⁾ is a **huge**⁽²⁾ spacecraft 70 km **above**⁽³⁾ the Earth. It's a place where astronauts live and work when they **go into space**.⁽⁴⁾ Most astronauts stay on the Space Station for about six months.



How fast does it travel ?

The Space Station **orbits**⁽⁵⁾ the **Earth**⁽⁶⁾ every day. It travels at 27,000 kilometres an hour. That means that it **goes around**⁽⁷⁾ the Earth every 90 minutes ! It's one of the brightest **objects**⁽⁸⁾ in the sky and you can see it without using a telescope.

When was it built ?

Lots of countries worked **together**⁽⁹⁾ to make the Space Station and astronauts from all around the world have stayed on it. The first piece of the Space Station went into space in 1998. Since the first astronauts arrived in 2000, more than 200 astronauts from 19 countries have stayed there.

What is life like on the space station ?

Life on the Space Station is **different from**⁽¹⁰⁾ life on Earth in many ways. In space, washing, sleeping and eating can be difficult ! But **communication**⁽¹¹⁾ isn't a problem. Astronauts can send emails or **make phone calls**⁽¹²⁾ to their families back home.

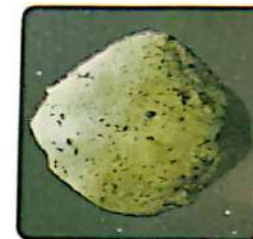
Check Vocabulary

(1) محطة الفضاء الدولية	(2) ضخ	(3) فوق	(4) ينطلق إلى الفضاء	(5) يدور حول	(6) كوكب الأرض
(7) يدور حول	(8) أشياء	(9) معًا/سويًا	(10) مختلف عن	(11) الاتصال/التواصل	(12) إجراء مكالمات هاتفية

on Lesson 6 WB page 98

Journey to Bennu⁽¹⁾

In 2020, a spacecraft landed on Bennu. Bennu is an asteroid, which is a large rock that is flying through space. The spacecraft, called Osiris-Rex, took small rocks from Bennu and will take them back to the Earth in 2023.



This was an amazing **achievement**.⁽²⁾ Bennu is more than 300 million kilometres from the Earth, but it is very small. It is only 510 metres from one side to the other ! Osiris-Rex left the Earth in 2016 and had orbited Bennu for nearly two years before it found a place to land **safely**.⁽³⁾

Then, in 2021, Osiris-Rex left Bennu for its journey home. This will be around 2.3 billion kilometres, because the spacecraft must orbit the sun **twice**⁽⁴⁾ before it can land on the Earth.

So why has Osiris-Rex **made this difficult journey**⁽⁵⁾ ? Scientists think that the rocks from Bennu could help them to understand how the Earth was made. Scientists also think that understanding Bennu will help them know where the **asteroid**⁽⁶⁾ is going. It is **possible**⁽⁷⁾ that it will hit the Earth, although not for many years !

Check Vocabulary

(1) بينو (كويكب) (2) إنجاز (3) بأمان (4) مرتين (5) يقوم برحلة صعبة (6) كويكب (7) ممكن

on Lesson 7 SB page 43

My trip to the planetarium⁽¹⁾ By Hassan El-Sayed

Last year, I went to the planetarium in Alexandria with my cousin, Magdy. I was really excited because I hadn't been to a planetarium before. Magdy lives in Alexandria, so he had visited the planetarium a few times with his family.



Check Vocabulary

(1) القبة السماوية

We saw a really interesting film about Ancient Egypt. We learned about how the Ancient Egyptians had studied the stars to **find out**⁽²⁾ when the Nile **flooded**⁽³⁾. They had even used the stars to help them build the pyramids.

After the film, we went to an **exhibition**⁽⁴⁾ about Mars. Did you know a space robot had explored Mars before the end of the 20th **century**⁽⁵⁾? It **landed**⁽⁶⁾ on Mars in 1997.

We had an amazing time. We were there all morning, but when we left, we hadn't seen everything! I'd like to back there again one day.

Check Vocabulary

(2) يكتشف (3) يفيض (4) عرض (5) قرن (مائة عام) (6) بهبط

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 orbit - spin

* orbit (v)

يدور (حول شيء)

ex.: The Earth **orbits** the sun.

* spin (v)

يدور (حول محوره)

ex.: The Earth **spins** on its axis once a day.

2 station - stop

* station (n)

محطة

(مبنى أكبر وبه مكتب لبيع التذاكر مثلاً) ودائماً تكون مكان لانطلاق الرحلة من مكان ما أو نقطة الوصول لمكان ما)

bus station / train station

* stop (n)

موقف - محطة

bus stop (أى مكان يتوقف فيه الأتوبيس)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

include facts	يتضمن حقائق	the far side of	الجانب البعيد لـ / (الأخر)
above the Earth	فوق كوكب الأرض	go around	يدور حول
go into space	ينطلق إلى الفضاء	different from	مختلف عن
stay on the space station	يظل في محطة الفضاء	on Earth	على كوكب الأرض
		in many ways	بطرق مختلفة

travels at ...	يسافر بسرعة	find a way to	يجد طريقة لـ
take turns	يتناوب الأدوار	move forward	يتقدم للأمام
get the answer right	يحصل على الجواب الصحيح	use satellites for maps	يستخدم الأقمار الصناعية لرسم الخرائط
as soon as	بمجرد أن	the journey back	رحلة العودة
at the same time as	فى نفس توقيت	bring back	يُعيد - يعود بـ
soon after	مباشرة بعد	a long time after	بعد وقت طويل
colour photo	صورة بالألوان	a robot space vehicle	مركبة فضائية آلية (غير مأهولة)
land on	يهبط على		
check your idea	تأكد من صحة أفكارك		
refer to	يشير إلى		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- A/An is a person who works on a ship.
a. butcher b. cook c. sailor d. farmer
- We saw a/an about Mars yesterday.
a. aquarium b. match c. vehicle d. exhibition
- We can see the positions and movements of the planets and stars in a/an
a. museum b. exhibition c. planetarium d. aquarium
- There are many motor in the city such as cars, buses and lorries.
a. tools b. vehicles c. photos d. newspapers

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

- WB** Roads and railways made easier in the 1800s.
a. read b. use c. stay d. travel
- WB** Bennu is a/an , which is a large rock that is flying through space.
a. asteroid b. entry c. satellite d. spacecraft
- SB** Most astronauts stay on the station for about six months.
a. space b. robot c. rocket d. aquarium

8. **SB** Astronauts can send emails or phones calls to their families.
a. do b. make c. train d. draw

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. Buses and cars are examples for public
a. plans b. transport c. ports d. parts
10. If something is not high or deep, it is
a. dark b. difficult c. flat d. clear
11. Wood and plastic are examples of renewable
a. railways b. vehicles c. sources d. roads
12. That man gets lost, so he asks about
a. directions b. calls c. plans d. satellites
13. You need a lot of to come first at any competition.
a. preference b. perseverance c. conversations d. calls
14. Always sure that you buy the right things before leaving a shop.
a. do b. take c. make d. give

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. The astronauts managed to build a space on the Moon.
a. stop b. platform c. station d. airport
16. The Earth the sun.
a. orbits b. spins c. walks d. flies
17. Rahma is different Mai. Mai is a bit taller.
a. than b. from c. about d. off

Guessing the meaning from the text

تفمين المعنى

18. There are no mountains or hills in this land. It's a/an area.
a. high b. far c. flat d. easy
19. He wrote all his secrets in his He used to write all what happened to him in it.
a. map b. dairy c. diary d. project
20. This shape has no sides. It's a
a. square b. circle c. star d. diamond

21. The person who helps tourists to know the history of the monuments is called a/an
a. astronomer b. sailor c. editor d. guide

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
huge ضخم	enormous/massive	tiny صغير (الحجم)
bright لامع/ساطع	colourful	dull - pale مطفأ - معتم
stay يبقى/يظل	remain	leave يغادر
difficult صعب/معقد	hard/complex	easy سهل
possible ممكن/مستطاع	probable	impossible مستحيل
public عام	general	private خاص

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
- ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	successfully بنجاح carefully بحرص - بعناية
- ese	تكون الصفة من الاسم أو الجنسية من اسم البلد	Japanese ياباني (الجنسية)
- ation	تكون الاسم من الفعل	communication الاتصال - التواصل
im -	تكون عكس المعنى	impossible مستحيل
- ing	تكون الصفة من الفعل	amazing مدهش

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. They live in a huge house. The synonym of the word "huge" is ".....".
a. tiny b. small c. enormous d. easy
2. The prefix "....." gives the antonym of the word "possible".
a. un - b. ir - c. in - d. im -

3. You can make an adjective from the word "Japan" by adding the suffix

- a. - tian b. - ese c. - ion d. - tion

4. The word "public" is a/an

- a. verb b. adjective c. preposition d. adverb

5. I can't stay in one place for too long. The synonym of the word "stay" is ".....".

- a. leave b. sleep c. remain d. close

6. The antonym of "public" is

- a. private b. general c. common d. popular

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تلميح للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)
Part 2 فى ملحق (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

مهارة القراءة

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 WB page 98 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 237 ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

- **Making inference** عمل استنتاج

1. What do you think the two things the scientists hope to learn ?

.....

- **Making prediction about upcoming events** تنبؤ للأحداث المتوقعة

2. What will the spacecraft bring to the Earth ?

- It will bring small rocks from Bennu back to the Earth in 2023.

- **Summarising a text** تلخيص نص

3. What is the best summary of the first paragraph of the passage ?

.....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

حمل تساعدك على تنمية معارة الكتابة.

"The International Space Station" محطة الفضاء الدولية

1. The International Space Station is a huge spacecraft.
محطة الفضاء الدولية هي مركبة فضاء عملاقة.
2. It's a place where astronauts live and work when they go into the space.
إنها المكان الذي يعيش ويعمل فيه رواد الفضاء عندما يسافرون إلى الفضاء.
3. The space station orbits the Earth every day.
تدور محطة الفضاء حول الأرض كل يوم.
4. It travels at 27,000 kilometers an hour.
تسافر بسرعة ٢٧ ألف كيلومتر في الساعة.
5. It goes around the Earth every 90 minutes.
تدور حول الأرض كل ٩٠ دقيقة.
6. It's one of the brightest objects in the sky and you can see it without a telescope.
إنها من أكثر الأشياء وضوحاً في السماء وتستطيع أن تراها بدون المنظار.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

from - get - to - washed - make - drew

1. Roads and railways travel easier.
2. Al Idrisi is North Africa.
3. Ptolemy one of the first maps.
4. People use satellites to directions.
5. Eman had already the dishes.

تلميح

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرس قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على معارة الكتابة.

- Write a review of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

"The history of maps"

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

► Saying when events happened :

ذكر توقيت الأحداث :

1. The first photo of the Earth was taken from space in 1946.
- التقطت أول صورة لكوكب الأرض من الفضاء في عام ١٩٤٦م.
2. A long time after that, in 1967 the first colour photo of the Earth was taken.
- بعد ذلك بوقت طويل في عام ١٩٦٧. التقطت صورة ملونة لكوكب الأرض.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Kamal is talking with his mother about the best way to help the community.

Kamal : Mom, some of my friends and I decided to make something useful for our neighbourhood. What's your opinion ?

Mother : (1) ! What is your plan ?

Kamal : (2) What do you think we should do ?

Mother : (3)

Kamal : Collecting rubbish is one of our plans. (4) ?

Mother : You can also plant some trees.

Kamal : But planting trees needs money. (5) ?

Mother : Sure. I will give some money to help you do that.

Kamal : Thank you, mum. You're very helpful.

Mother : I'm very proud of you, son.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

didn't - everywhere - send - take - make - had

The mobile phone is one the most important modern inventions. It has many advantages as you can use it (1) and you can (2) photos with it. You can also (3) and receive emails by it. People (4) used the telephone for a long time before the mobile was invented.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The elephants aren't small animals; they are

a. lazy b. active c. huge d. tiny

To space and ba

2. To form the adverb of the word "careful", we add the suffix

a. - ion b. - ly c. - ity d. - ment

3. Some fish have bright colours. The antonym of the word "bright" is

a. colourful b. dull c. right d. shiny

4. Pollution is a very hard problem. The synonym of the word "hard" is

a. free b. available c. general d. difficult

5. We add the prefix to form the opposite of the word "possible".

a. im - b. ir - c. un - d. dis -

6. The is the person who works on a ship.

a. guide b. builder c. sailor d. astronaut

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. After they (win) the match, they celebrated.

2. When Hamza had come, the film (start).

3. Amr (not come) to the meeting till we had told him.

4. What (you had) done with that problem ?

5. Laila sent the email after she (revise) it.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

اجاب على نهاية الكتاب

"A review of the International Space Station"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتى



If you got ●, you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

At the end of this unit, I will be able to ساكون قادراً على أن في نهاية هذه الوحدة.

1 Learn important vocabulary تعلم مفردات لفوية هامة

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> astronaut | <input type="checkbox"/> planetarium |
| <input type="checkbox"/> telescope | <input type="checkbox"/> satellite phones |
| <input type="checkbox"/> orbit | <input type="checkbox"/> signals |
| <input type="checkbox"/> solar system | <input type="checkbox"/> receivers |

2 Read and write sentences using the present perfect, the present perfect continuous and the past perfect.

اقرأ واكتب جمل باستخدام المضارع التام والمضارع التام المستمر والماضى التام.

- ☐ Adel has always been interested in space.
- ☐ They haven't gone to space before.
- ☐ What have you been doing at school this week ?
- ☐ She had finished her homework.

3 Talk about life experiences and space. نتحدث عن التجارب الحياتية والفضاء.

- ☐ A : Have you ever used a telescope ?
- ☐ B : Yes, I used a telescope on the science trip.
- ☐ A : How many people had walked on the moon by the end of the 20th century ?
- ☐ B : Twelve people had walked on the moon.

Master your term جزء للمتابعة فى كراسة المعاصر
جزء للمتابعة الشهرية بعد كل ثلاث وحدات

لمزيد من التدريبات

Review

on unit 10

SB page 43 WB page 99

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
محطة فضاء astronaut telescope comet spacecraft space shuttle unusual sport explore discover astronomer lenses orbit solar system signals storms ATM GPS wireless science competition مسابقة علمية	<p>1. The Present Perfect زمن المضارع التام</p> <p>(I, We, You, They) have + p.p. (He, She, It) has</p> <p>ex. She has watered the plants. ex. They have eaten pizza.</p> <p>2. The Past Perfect زمن الماضى التام</p> <p>Subj. + had + p.p. ex. Adel had travelled abroad. - He hadn't published his ideas until just before he died.</p> <p>3. The Present perfect continuous زمن المضارع التام المستمر</p> <p>Subj. + has been + Inf. + ing ex. I'm really tired because I have been studying all night.</p>	<p>1. Talking about life experiences</p> <p>• نتحدث عن التجارب الحياتية.</p> <p>* Have you ever helped to organise a sports event ? - Yes, I have helped to organise the handball Africa Cup of Nations.</p> <p>2. Talking about space</p> <p>• نتحدث عن الفضاء.</p> <p>* What is the International Space Station ? - It is a huge spacecraft above the Earth.</p> <p>3. Talking about satellite technology</p> <p>• نتحدث عن تكنولوجيا الأقمار الصناعية.</p> <p>* How have you used satellite technology this week ? - I watched my favourite programme on satellite TV.</p>

A (review / biography / short story)

→ (Space / the history of maps / Farouk El-Baz / Satellite technology)



Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لتنمية مهارة الكتابة

- What do you need to become an astronaut ?
- Who invented the telescope ?
- Why is satellite technology useful for the weather report ?
- How did the invention of maps help us ?



Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

- space station	- signals	- wireless
- a space robot	- GPS	- telescope
- spacecraft	- orbit	- maps
- organise	- satellite phones	- find out
- technology		- directions
- receivers		- weather report



Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتركيب مساعدة

- To study the space you should	- It is important to
- Maps help to	- Using satellite technology helps the
- Farouk El-Baz helped astronauts to	



Practice

تدرب على مهارة الكتابة

→ Write a biography of about (110) words on :

"A famous scientist"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

أهم النقاط (موضع إختبار) في كل وحدة والتي تسلط على من خلالها التعامل مع تدريبات الوحدة و كل التدريبات الخاصة بالمنهج.

مفردات لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

1. Vocabulary

modern age	العصر الحديث	solar system	النظام الشمسي
timeline	الجدول الزمني	signals	إشارات
space station	محطة فضاء	find out	يكتشف
astronaut	رائد فضاء	receivers	أجهزة استقبال
telescope	منظار	satellite phones	هواتف الأقمار الصناعية
surface	سطح	wireless	لاسلكي
orbit	يدور حول	planetarium	القبة السماوية

2. Language

قواعد لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

1. Salma has tried⁽¹⁾ lots of sports.
2. Youssef has been dreaming⁽²⁾ of going to space.
3. Have you ever used⁽³⁾ a telescope ?
4. Ali had finished⁽⁴⁾ his studies.
5. He didn't go out until he had finished⁽⁵⁾ his homework.

Check Language

- (1) جملة في زمن المضارع التام
- (2) جملة في زمن المضارع التام المستمر
- (3) صيغة الاستفهام في المضارع التام
- (4) جملة في زمن الماضي التام
- (5) أداة الربط (until) التي تربط بين جملتين الحدث الأقدم ماضي تام والحدث غائبا ماض بسيط منفى.

3. Speaking

وظائف لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

Talking about life experiences and space

- التحدث عن التجارب الحياتية والفضاء

Questions



Answers



1. Have you ever tried an unusual sport ?	- No, I have never tried an unusual sport.
2. When did people discover the planets in our solar system ?	- About 2,000 years ago.
3. What does GPS use to send messages?	- GPS uses a system of satellites to send messages.



A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Maha is asking her father, who has just arrived, to attend her friend's birthday party.

Father : Good evening, Maha.

Maha : Good evening, father. I need your permission to do something, please. (1)

Father : I don't mind, but (2)

Maha : It will be next Friday evening. Could you give me some money to buy her a present ?

Father : (3) Where will it be ?

Maha : (4)

Father : I don't mind. But, who will attend it ?

Maha : (5)

Father : Okay. I'll take you to her home by car.

Maha : Thank you. You're the best dad .

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

GPS - maps - Can - weather - global - Did

Satellite technology is very useful to our lives nowadays. People used (1) in the past to find their way. With satellite technology, people use (2) to find places. We can use satellites to study the (3) to know where the clouds and the storms are moving. (4) you name other things that can work with satellite technology ?

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

In today's modern society, modern technology controlled everything in our world. At homes, factories, schools, malls and hospitals. One of the most important and effective inventions is the internet. It is a very educational and productive tool in order to become knowledgeable and stay well connected.

Many people use the internet for business purposes while others use it in order to communicate on social networking sites such as Twitter or Facebook. Despite the beneficial uses, people often abuse its powers. This tool puts consumers at risk for identity theft through scamming, phishing and even hacking. Cyber-crime is an illegal activity committed on the internet that uses a computer as its primary means of theft.

Through identity theft, a thief without someone's knowledge acquires a piece of their personal information such as their social security number, or even their bank account data and uses it to commit a theft. It is often difficult to catch cyber criminals because the internet makes it easier for people to do things from any location on the globe. The criminals use methods such as spam advertisements and even phone programs that have viruses.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The main idea of the passage is
 a. Internet is a useless means of communication.
 b. Internet can be useful and harmful.
 c. People always use the internet to hurt each other.
 d. It is easy to catch cyber criminals.
- Cyber criminals do theft
 a. without someone's money
 b. without someone's knowledge
 c. with someone's help
 d. with someone's money and knowledge
- It is not easy to catch the cyber criminals because
 a. they use difficult system b. they do things from any location
 c. they pay a lot of money d. they are very busy

b. Answer the following questions :

- How do you think the internet will be more useful in the future ?

- Summarize the first paragraph of the passage in your own words.

- From the passage infer استنتج two reasons for our need of internet these days.

C. Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The box wasn't small as I expected. It was a/an one.
a. modern b. noisy c. large d. old
- We use the prefix to form the adjective from the verb "live".
a. a - b. ir - c. im - d. un -
- The antonym of the word "ancient" is
a. old b. modern c. general d. common
- My parents don't allow me to watch TV late. The synonym of the word "allow" is
a. prevent b. protect c. let d. find
- A large spacecraft where people live and work is a
a. space robot b. space discovery c. space station d. spacecraft
- We add the suffix to the verb "discover" to get the noun.
a. - al b. - tion c. - sion d. - y

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- Sohaila phoned her father after she (know) the exam results.
- Before Mona (leave) the club, she had greeted all her friends.
- Marwan hasn't finished his homework (just).
- Where had (you go) before the party ?
- After the player had been honoured, he (cry) happily.

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

معادته في نهاية الكتاب

"A biography of Dr Farouk El-Baz"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 10 for Al-Azhar students

إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Salma and Ali are talking about a famous scientist.

Salma : What are you doing ?

Ali : I'm (1) a book.

Salma : What is the book (2) ?

Ali : It is about a famous scientist.

Salma : What is his name ?

Ali : He is Dr Farouk El-Baz.

Salma : What important thing did he do ?

Ali : He helped to plan where Apollo II should (3) on the moon.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations :

- Someone asks you if you have tried an unusual sport.

- Your friend has been dreaming of going into space.

3 Write a paragraph of six sentences on :

"Space"

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختر ذكائك

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Mona loves to study the stars and planets. She wants to be a/an
a. astronomer b. astronaut c. astrologer d. doctor
- Nora has been of going into space all her life.
a. dream b. dreams c. dreamed d. dreaming
- He hadn't published his ideas until just before he
a. die b. dying c. died d. death
- Egypt has a good during the year.
a. climate b. weather c. wether d. limit
- The Earth on its axis once a day.
a. orbits b. lands c. spins d. travels

UNIT 11

Media now and in the past

SB pages 44-53 WB pages 100-106



Objectives

• Reading :

News stories from different sources; a text about the first female broadcaster; an interview about working in the media

• Writing :

A news report; an email asking about working in the media; a biography about a person in the media

• Listening :

A discussion about jobs in the media; a radio news report; different opinions about a story

in the news; a conversation about a new restaurant

• Speaking :

Discussing types of news; describing a picture from the news; reporting news

• Language :

Reported speech

• Life Skills :

Critical thinking

• اعلامة : نسق أسئلة كتاب النص
• اعلامة : نسق أسئلة كتاب التحدث



• المبتدئة اليومية و الشهيرة في Master your term
• قاطوس العناصر للتوى • ملحق العناصر للأمر الشريف
• ملحق A week is enough

LESSONS

1 & 2

SB pages 44-47 WB pages 100 & 101



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

press (n)	الصحافة	stuck (adj)	عالق
media (n)	وسائل الإعلام	pipe (n)	ماسورة
news websites (n)	مواقع إخبارية إلكترونية	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
webpage (n)	صفحة على الإنترنت	witness (n)	شاهد
warning (n)	تحذير - إنذار	TV news programme	برنامج تلفزيوني إخباري
trust (ed) (v) , (n)	يثق - ثقة		

Jobs in the media وظائف في الصحافة والإعلام

camera operator (n)	مصور تلفزيوني	radio presenter (n)	مقدم برامج إذاعية
journalist (n)	صحفي	web designer (n)	مصمم مواقع إلكترونية
newsreader (n)	قارئ / مقدم أخبار	editor (n)	رئيس تحرير - محرر
photographer (n)	مصور فوتوغرافي		

Types of media أنواع وسائل الإعلام

magazine (n)	مجلة	internet (n)	شبكة الاتصالات (الإنترنت)
newspaper (n)	جريدة - صحيفة	television (n)	تلفاز
radio (n)	راديو		

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضي على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 44 & 45 WB page 100

person (n)	شخص	crosswords (n)	كلمات متقاطعة
control (led) (v)	يتحكم في	news articles (n)	مقالات إخبارية
page (n)	صفحة	decide (d) (v)	يقرر

Lesson 2

SB pages 46 & 47 WB page 101

road (n)	طريق	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
flood (ed) (v), (n)	يغمر بالمياه - فيضان	fix (ed) (v)	يصلح
injured (adj)	مصاب	fire (n)	حريق - نار
police officer (n)	ضابط شرطة	motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية
alone (adv)	بمفرده	event (n)	حدث
shopping centre (n)	مركز تسوق / تجاري	replace (d) (v)	يستبدل
city centre (n)	وسط المدينة	traffic (n)	حركة المرور
accident (n)	حادث	roof (n)	سطح
experience (d) (v)	يواجه - يعاني	side (n)	جانب
show (n)	عرض		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
burst	burst	burst
steal	stole	stolen
drive	drove	driven
stick	stuck	stuck
wear	wore	worn
hit	hit	hit

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات. وللمزيد من التعريفات انظر قاموس المعاصر اللغوي

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

media	newspapers, magazines, radio, television, the internet, and other forms of communication that give news الإعلام
camera operator (n)	• a person who controls a television camera مصور تليفزيوني • a person whose job is to film things for television, film, etc.
journalist (n)	a person who researches and writes news articles صحفي

newsreader (n)

a person whose job is to read the news on TV or radio

قارئ أخبار

photographer (n)

a person whose job is to take photographs

مصور فوتوغرافي

radio presenter (n)

a person who talks on a radio programme

مقدم برامج إذاعية

web designer (n)

a person who decides how a webpage should look

مُصمم مواقع / شبكات

editor

a person whose job is to choose what should be in a newspaper, magazine, etc. and who checks the information and language

رئيس تحرير - محرر

witness

a person who has seen an accident, crime, etc. and can tell the police about it

شاهد

warning

something that tells you about something dangerous or bad that might happen

تحذير

stuck

not able to be moved

عالق

pipe

a long; thin piece of metal or plastic, used to carry water, gas, etc. often under the ground or through buildings.

ماسورة

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

design	a website	يُصمم موقع على الأنترنت	take	photographs / photos	يلتقط صور
do	a job	يقوم بوظيفة / مهمة	get	news	يعرف الأخبار

II Listening and Reading



Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 45

Fatma : What job do you want to do when you are older, Reem? I've been thinking about studying media. I love writing and I'm interested in the news so I think a journalist would be a good job for me.

Reem : You'd be amazing at that, Fatma! I think you would be good on the TV as a newsreader⁽¹⁾ too!

Check Vocabulary

مقدم أخبار (1)

Fatma : No way⁽²⁾! I'd hate⁽³⁾ to be on TV, I would be so nervous⁽⁴⁾.

Reem : A radio presenter then? That would be cool! I'd like to do that.

Fatma : Yes, I'd quite like to have a radio show, but I think I'd prefer to work for a newspaper.

Reem : Online news is the future I think! No one will buy newspapers in a few years. I'm going to study to be a web designer⁽⁵⁾.

Fatma : Hmmm, well, maybe I will work for online news then. I'll write the stories and you can design the website⁽⁶⁾!

Reem : Great! And your brother can be the photographer, he likes taking photos!

Fatma : Good idea!

Check Vocabulary

(2) مستحيل (3) يكره (4) متوتر (5) مصمم مواقع الكترونية (6) موقع الكتروني

Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 46

The text is from a newspaper.

Wednesday 3rd May

FLOOD IN City Centre⁽¹⁾

Yesterday morning, part of the city centre was under water for more than six hours after a large⁽²⁾ water pipe⁽³⁾ burst⁽⁴⁾. The road and all the shops in the shopping centre⁽⁵⁾ were closed all day.

A local witness⁽⁶⁾ said : "There was a lot of water in the road and the shops. Some people were still⁽⁷⁾ trying to drive on the road. I saw a man on a new, blue motorbike⁽⁸⁾ who was stuck⁽⁹⁾. He was really cross⁽¹⁰⁾."

The water has now gone and the road is open. They will replace⁽¹¹⁾ the pipe today with a new, strong pipe. Some of the shops are still closed while the owners⁽¹²⁾ clean their businesses⁽¹³⁾.

Check Vocabulary

(1) وسط المدينة (2) كبير (3) ماسورة (4) تنفجر (5) مركز تسوق (6) شاهد (7) لا يزال (8) دراجة بخارية (9) عالق (10) غاضب (11) يستبدل (12) أصحاب / ملاك (13) محلات تجارية

The text is from a TV news programme.

Newsreader⁽¹⁾ : "Welcome to the lunchtime news⁽²⁾. This is Mariam El-Shazly. This morning at around 10 am, a water pipe burst outside the Shabana Supermarket. The road is closed while workers⁽³⁾ try to fix⁽⁴⁾ the pipe. Some of the local shops are flooded⁽⁵⁾ and some cars are stuck in the road."



Police Officer : "An old water pipe in the city centre has burst. People are working to fix it as quickly as possible⁽⁶⁾ and we hope⁽⁷⁾ to open the road soon."

Check Vocabulary

(1) مقدم الأخبار (2) أخبار وقت الظهيرة (3) عمال (4) يصلح (5) مغمور بالمياه (6) بقدر الامكان (7) يأمل - يتمنى

The text is from social media.

Omar Zaki - Today, 10:30 am

WARNING⁽¹⁾ ! The street outside the shopping centre is closed! There is water everywhere⁽²⁾. A big, old red car is stuck in the middle⁽³⁾ of the road⁽⁴⁾. DON'T TRY TO GO THERE!

Check Vocabulary

(1) تحذير / إنذار (2) في كل مكان (3) في منتصف (4) طريق

on Lesson 2 SB page 47

There was a bad accident⁽¹⁾ on the road to our school yesterday. A car hit⁽²⁾ a big tree, and the driver was injured⁽³⁾. We were stuck⁽⁴⁾ and couldn't move. The police arrived quickly and took the damaged⁽⁵⁾ car to the side of the road. Unfortunately⁽⁶⁾ we went to school late!

Check Vocabulary

(1) حادث (2) يصطدم بـ (3) مصاب (4) عالق بـ (5) تالف (6) لسوء الحظ

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 news (n)

أخبار (تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد)

ex.: - The news of today is so good.

تستخدم (a piece of) كجزئ لتحويل الكلمة إلى صيغة (الجمع)

ex.: - I've got two pieces of good news from Basim.

2 closed – closet

* closed ≠ open

مغلق ≠ مفتوح

ex.: - I went to the cinema, but it was **closed**.

* closet

خزانة (أدوات المطبخ - ملابس الخ)

ex.: - My mom keeps onions and garlic in the kitchen **closet**.ex.: - There are a few clothes in Sama's **closet**.

اللافت : (water closet) بمعنى "المراحيض"

ex.: - There are **water closets** in malls.

3 wit – witness

* wit (n)

ذكاء - دهاء

ex.: - Fayez has got much **wit**. He is intelligent.

اللافت أن : (half - wit) بمعنى شخص "أحمق - أبله - متهور - طائش"

* witness(ed) (v) / (n)

شاهد / يشهد

ex.: - The police are seeking for a **witness** to tell what has really happened.ex.: - Have you **witnessed** the accident ?

4 cross (v / adj)

* cross (ed) (v)

يعبر

ex.: - The old man can't **cross** the road. There are too many cars on the road.

* cross (adj)

غضبان

ex.: - Noha is **cross**. She has failed.

5 the police

الشرطة

اللافت : كلمة (police) تعامل دائمًا معاملة الجمع ويأتي قبلها (the)

ex.: - The **police** are stopping people from driving too fast.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in the news	في الأخبار	on a motorbike	على الدراجة البخارية
get from	يحصل على من	all day	طوال اليوم
study at university	يدرس في الجامعة	stuck in	عالق بـ
study media	يدرس الإعلام	in the city centre	في وسط البلد

interested in	مهتم بـ	in the middle	في وسط
on a page	في صفحة	in the photograph	في الصورة
on the radio / TV	في الراديو / التلفاز	start with	يبدأ بـ
in the future	في المستقبل	look for	يبحث عن
work for a newspaper	يعمل لدى جريدة	as quickly as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن
rather than	بدلاً من	lunchtime news	أخبار وقت الظهيرة
work in the media	يعمل في مجال الصحافة والإعلام	prefer to + inf.	يفضل أن
work in TV/radio	يعمل في التلفزيون / الإذاعة	know how to + (inf.)	يعرف كيف يقوم بـ
on the road	على الطريق	look really good	يبدو جيد حقاً
do on the media	يعمل في مجال الإعلام	late to work	متأخر عن العمل
a good job for	وظيفة جيدة لـ	give reasons for	يعطي أسباب / مبررات لـ
break down	يتعطل	take away	يزيل / ينقل
on time	في الوقت المحدد		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- Newspapers, television and radio are called the
a. projects b. media c. lands d. sites
- I was very pleased as I had heard the good about my success.
a. reviews b. sites c. news d. webs
- I my parents. I know they always do the best for me.
a. trust b. control c. fail d. expect
- She was the only who said the man was innocent of the crime .
a. page b. warning c. witness d. event

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

- SB Fatma likes photos.
a. making b. baking c. taking d. looking
- SB Yesterday morning, a part of the city centre was under water after a large water pipe
a. sank b. threw c. flew d. burst

7. **SB** A car hit a big tree, and the driver was
 a. excited b. injured c. enjoyable d. interested
8. **WB** Fatma loves writing and is interested in the news, so she would be a
 a. photographer b. journalist c. dentist d. web designer

El-Moasser Exercises

9. He had a terrible car and his leg was broken.
 a. operation b. accident c. event d. interview
10. The thief the golden necklace from the old lady.
 a. drove b. stuck c. stole d. borrowed
11. The bathroom is full of water, there must be a problem with the
 a. roads b. pipes c. floors d. ovens

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. Sama couldn't give reasons coming late.
 a. of b. for c. at d. with
13. Where do you normally your news from ?
 a. bring b. make c. catch d. get

Definitions

14. A camera is a person who controls a television camera.
 a. mechanic b. operator c. manager d. presenter
15. The is a person who researches and writes news articles.
 a. newsreader b. architect c. journalist d. designer
16. A person whose job is to take photos is a
 a. painter b. photographer
 c. web designer d. camera operator
17. A news is a person whose job is to read the news.
 a. leader b. paper c. designer d. reader

Guessing the meaning

18. He bought the villa. He's the now.
 a. owner b. worker c. actor d. researcher
19. His face is red. He must be about what I did.
 a. pleased b. cross c. bored d. injured
20. He can't go to anywhere. He is in his house because of the flood.
 a. busy b. full c. stuck d. free

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
normally بشكل معتاد	ordinarily	untypically - unusually بشكل غير عادي/غير نمطي
online على الإنترنت	connected	offline غير متصل بالإنترنت
cross غاضب	angry	calm هادئ
local محلي	native - national - regional	international عالمي / دولي
everywhere في كل مكان	all around - all over	nowhere لا مكان
interesting شيق	fascinating	uninteresting - boring غير شيق - مممل
still لا يزال	yet	no longer لم يعد
trust ثقة	confidence	distrust - doubt عدم ثقة

Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
re -	يعطى معنى إعادة فعل الشئ	rewrite يعيد كتابة
- er	يحول من فعل إلى اسم (وظيفة)	designer مصمم presenter مقدم worker عامل photographer مصور فوتوغرافي
- ing	تحويل من فعل إلى صفة	interesting شيق
- ly	تحويل من فعل إلى ظرف	completely تمامًا - كلياً politely بطريقة مهذبة

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

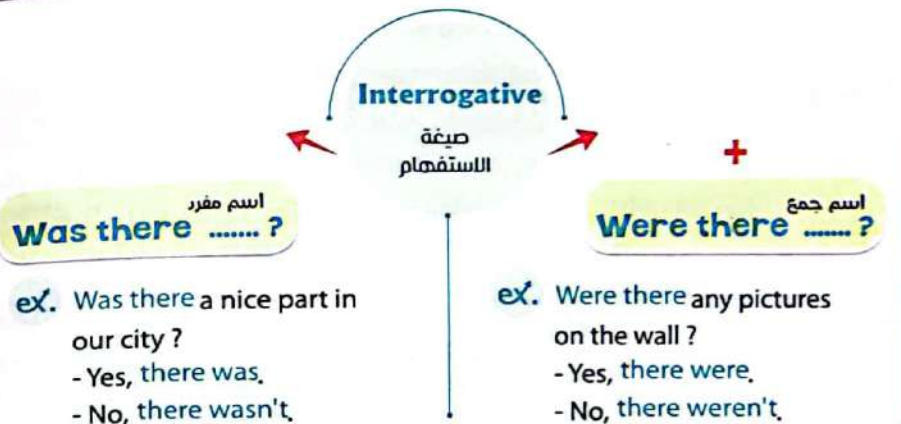
1. The word "untypically" is the antonym of the word
 a. normally b. exceptionally c. unusually d. strangely
2. It's good that you keep your parents' trust. The antonym of the word "trust" is
 a. confidence b. design c. interest d. distrust

3. This film is very boring. I won't watch it again. The antonym of the word "boring" is
 a. silly b. uninteresting c. unusual d. interesting
4. The synonym of the word "ordinarily" is
 a. exceptionally b. normally c. especially d. unusually
5. Air fills everywhere around us. The antonym of the word "everywhere" is
 a. all around b. no longer c. nowhere d. well rounded
6. The synonym of the word "cross" is
 a. calm b. angry c. tiny d. brave
7. She is still sick. She can't go home. The antonym of the word "still" is
 a. nothing b. no where c. no longer d. no way
8. We add the suffix to get the noun from the verb "design".
 a. -ed b. -y c. -er d. -ly
9. To get the adjective of the verb "interest", we add the suffix
 a. -ment b. -ive c. -ing d. -able
10. The synonym of the word "interesting" is
 a. fascinating b. boring c. uninteresting d. calm

III Language

Remember تذكر

The past simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط



Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. **SB** There (were) a lot of water in the road.
2. **SB** (Were) there an accident yesterday? - Yes, there was.
3. **SB** Last week, we (decide) to spend the weekend in Sharm El-Shiekh.
4. **SB** We took our friend's car. Unfortunately, the car (break) down.
5. **WB** Marwa's father (buy) a big motorbike last week.
6. **WB** We (paint) our house alone last week.
7. **WB** The actor (wear) expensive sunglasses in yesterday's show.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. There (were) some milk in the fridge yesterday.
9. (Was) there many people in the library last week?
10. A : Were there many children playing in the park ?
B : No, there (wasn't).
11. Did you (saw) the accident yesterday ?
12. I (feel) sick when I ate the pudding.
13. My cat (not sleep) on her bed last night.

Skills Corner

يُفِيهِ التَّعَامُلُ مَعَ مَهَارَاتِ (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فِي الْوَرَقَةِ الْإِمْتِحَانِيَّةِ لِكُلِّ دَرَسٍ عَلَى حِدَةٍ.
لِلْمَزِيدِ مِنَ الشَّرْحِ وَالتَّدْرِيبَاتِ عَلَى مَهَارَاتِ (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)
Part 2 فِي مِلْحَقٍ (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

مهارة القراءة

قُمْ بِقِرَاءَةِ 46 page 2 SB Reading on lesson من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 259 & 258 ثم قُمِ
بِالتَّدْرِيبِ عَلَى إِجَابَةِ بَعْضِ أَسْئَلَةِ قِطْعَةِ الْفَهْمِ طَبَقًا لِمَوَاصِفَاتِ الْوَرَقَةِ الْإِمْتِحَانِيَّةِ.

A. Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d :

- **Determining the main idea** تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية

1. The main idea of the passage is about
a. a flood in the city centre b. an earthquake
c. a festival d. a party

B. Answer the following question :

- **Making inference** عمل استنتاج

2. Infer how it would be like if workers didn't repair the broken pipe .

- **Summarising a text** تلخيص النص

3. Give a brief summary for the last paragraph of the passage in your own words.

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جَمَلُ تَسَاعُودِكَ عَلَى تَنْمِيَةِ مَهَارَةِ الْكِتَابَةِ

1. A part of the city centre was under water for six hours.
١. كَانَ هُنَاكَ جُزْءٌ مِنْ وَسْطِ الْمَدِينَةِ تَحْتَ الْمِيَاهِ لِمُدَّةِ ٦ سَاعَاتٍ.
2. A large water pipe burst and the shops were closed.
٢. انْفَجَرَتْ مَاسُورَةٌ مِيَاهٍ كَبِيرَةٌ وَأُغْلِقَتِ الْمَحَلَّاتُ.
3. Some workers replaced the pipe with a new one.
٣. قَامَ بَعْضُ الْعَمَالِ بِاسْتِبدَالِ الْمَاسُورَةِ بِأُخْرَى جَدِيدَةٍ.
4. The roads and shops were opened again.
٤. تَمَّ فَتْحُ الطَّرِيقِ وَالْمَحَلَّاتِ مَرَّةً أُخْرَى.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

media – was – stuck – burst – were

1. Omar's car was in traffic as the road was closed.
2. We can't play football because the ball has !
3. There a terrible accident on the road yesterday.
4. Sara wants to study

تنويه

بَعْدَ دِرَاسَةِ الْقَوَاعِدِ وَالْمَفْرَدَاتِ
اللُّغَوِيَّةِ الْخَاصَّةِ بِالْمُتَلِمِّينِ
قُمِ بِالتَّدْرِيبِ عَلَى بِنَاءِ الْجُمْلَةِ

C. Practise by yourself

تَدْرِبْ عَلَى مَهَارَةِ الْكِتَابَةِ

- Write a review of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"Your favourite job in the media"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

1. Discussing types of news :

مناقشة أنواع الأخبار :

Questions	Answers
1. Which type of media do you trust the most ? ١. أي نوع من وسائل الإعلام تثق به أكثر ؟	- I prefer the newspapers and TV programmes. - أفضّل الصحف والبرامج التلفزيونية .
2. What type of media do you think is most interesting for news ? ٢. أي نوع من وسائل الإعلام تعتقد أنها أكثر إثارة في عرض الأخبار ؟	- I think TV. - أعتقد التلفاز .

2. Asking and answering questions about media :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الصحافة والإعلام :

Questions	Answers
1. Would you like to work in the media ? ١. هل تود العمل في مجال الإعلام ؟	- Yes. - نعم .
2. Which jobs would you like to do in the media ? Why ? ٢. أي الوظائف تود العمل بها في مجال الإعلام ؟ ولماذا ؟	- I would like to be a journalist as I like researching and writing news articles. - أود أن أعمل صحفياً لأنني أحب البحث وكتابة المقالات الصحفية .
3. Which jobs wouldn't you like to do in the media ? Why ? ٣. أي الوظائف لا تود العمل بها في مجال الإعلام ؟ ولماذا ؟	- I wouldn't like to be a camera operator as it needs a lot of time. - لا أود أن أعمل مصور تلفزيوني لأنها تحتاج للكثير من الوقت .

3. Describing a picture from the news :

وصف صورة من الأخبار :

Questions	Answers
A : What caused this flood in the city centre ? - ما الذي تسبب في هذا الفيضان في وسط المدينة ؟	B : The picture shows that a large water pipe burst. - توضح الصورة أن ماسورة مياه ضخمة انفجرت .

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 1 & 2

Understand Apply Create

1. Finish the following dialogue :

Amira is talking to Nancy who is going to the bookshop.

Amira : Hi, Nancy.

Nancy : Hi, Amira.

Amira : Where are you going ?

Nancy : (1) Will you come with me ?

Amira : (2) Why are you going to the bookshop ?

Nancy : To buy a pen and a notebook for my sister. (3) ?

Amira : Yes, I went to school yesterday. (4) ?

Nancy : Because I got up late. Did you have any homework ?

Amira : (5) We should do the exercises page 57.

Nancy : Thank you very much .

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

engineer – be – journalist – successful – articles – been

It's important to choose the right job that you would like to do. For me, I would like to be a/an (1) because I like researching and writing news (2) I know that it won't (3) an easy job, but I will do my best to be a/an (4) one.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An is a person who decides how a webpage should look.

a. interviewer

b. radio presenter

c. editor

d. web designer

2. To get the adverb of "complete", we add the suffix

a. -tion

b. -y

c. -ly

d. -ment

3. Terrorism الإرهاب is no longer a local problem. The synonym of "local" is
 a. normal b. regional c. social d. formal
4. The antonym of "trust" is
 a. crossword b. confidence c. believe d. distrust
5. We add the prefix to the verb "write" to mean write something again.
 a. re- b. im- c. ir- d. il-
6. He was so cross as he couldn't answer the question. The word "cross" means
 a. happy b. tired c. angry d. fascinating

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- There (were) a plant in the living room.
- (Was) there any cars in the city last Monday ?
- There (was) ten boys in the park yesterday.
- Yesterday Salma (buys) a new mobile.
- What (does) Ali do last week ?

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

جواب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review about a job that you would like to do in the media".



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

governor (n)	محافظ	female voice	صوت نسائي
tournament (n)	بطولة - دورة (مسابقات)	guardian (n)	حارس
water park (n)	ملاهي مائية	award (n)	جائزة
tourism (n)	السياحة	linguist (n)	عالم باللغة - لغوي
recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير	graduate (d) (v)	يتخرج
retire (d) (v)	يتقاعد	presenter (n)	مقدم برامج
broadcaster (n)	إذاعي - مذيع	career (n)	الحياة المهنية
broadcasting (n)	بث		

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
 Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 48 & 49 WB page 102

building (n)	مبنى	recently (adv)	حديثاً - مؤخرًا
climate change (n)	التغير المناخي	scientist (n)	عالم
pleased (adj)	مسرور	warm (ed) (v), (adj)	يُدْفئ - دافئ
area (n)	منطقة	explain (ed) (v)	يشرح - يفسر
conversation (n)	محادثة	tired (adj)	متعب

Lesson 4

SB page 50 WB page 103

programme (n)	برنامج	encourage (d) (v)	يشجع
Arab world (n)	العالم العربي	broadcast (ed) (v), (n)	بث إذاعة
novel (n)	رواية	literature (n)	الأدب
faculty (n)	كلية	join (ed) (v)	ينضم - يلتحق
present (ed) (n)	يقدم	beauty (n)	الجمال

whole (adj)	كامل - كل	head (n)	مدير - رئيس
specialise (d) (v)	يتخصص	elementary school (n)	مدرسة ابتدائية
produce (d) (v)	ينتج - يصدر	housewife (n)	ربة منزل
language (n)	لغة		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	المضارع	Past	الماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
bear	تلد	bore		born	
bring	يحضّر - يجلب	brought		brought	
tell	يخبر	told		told	
say	يقول	said		said	
leave	يترك - يغادر	left		left	
hurt	يؤذي - يؤلم	hurt		hurt	
hear	يسمع	heard		heard	
buy	يشترى	bought		bought	

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

have	a conversation	يقوم بحوار	do	sport	يمارس رياضة
	a job	يقوم بوظيفة	study	online	يدرس عن بعد
win	the match	يفوز بمباراة	leave	a job	يترك وظيفة

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات (وللمزيد من التعريفات انظر قاموس المعاصر للغوى).

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

governor	the person who rules a city or an area	محافظ
water park	an amusement park that include water slides, fountains and swimming pools	ملاهي مائية
recycling	reusing the waste in a useful way	إعادة تدوير / تصنيع
tournament	a series of contests in some sport or game	بطولة - دورة مباريات
broadcast	to send a programme or some information by radio or TV	بث (في الإذاعة / التلفزيون)

linguist	a person who specialises in languages	عالم باللغة - لغوي
voice	sound produced by a person when they speak	صوت (بشري)
retire	to leave a job or stop working because of old age	يتقاعد
presenter	a person who presents a programme on the radio or TV	مقدم برامج (إذاعية / تلفزيونية)

II Listening and Reading

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 48

News reporter⁽¹⁾: This is the 12 o'clock news. Today a new **water park⁽²⁾** opened in Sharm El Sheikh. The **governor⁽³⁾** of the town said the park was the biggest in Egypt and would be great for **tourism⁽⁴⁾** in the area. The **owner⁽⁵⁾** of the new park explained that there would be over one hundred new jobs for people at the park. The park has restaurants and the owner is going to build a new hotel next year. The owner also told us that the park had taken over three years to build. The first fifty visitors today can go to the water park **for free⁽⁶⁾**.



Check Vocabulary

مجاناً (6) مالك (5) سياحة (4) محافظ (3) ملاهي مائية (2) مراسل الأخبار (1)

on Lesson 3 SB page 49

Narrator : Maged

Journalist : What do you think about the new water park, Maged?

Man : I think it's great! I've got a new job working in one of the restaurants and I'm **looking forward to⁽¹⁾** visiting the park with my friends.



Check Vocabulary

يتطلع إلى (1)

Narrator : Heba

Journalist : What do you think about the new water park, Heba?

Woman : Well, I'm happy now they've finished because there has been a lot of building and it has been **noisy**⁽²⁾!



Narrator : Nadia

Journalist : What do you think about the new water park, Nadia?

Woman : We need more jobs and visitors to the area. I have a shop in the town and so the more tourism, the better! It looks cool, too.



Narrator : Kareem

Journalist : What do you think about the new water park, Kareem?

Man : I don't know. I'm not sure that we need more water parks. It's **getting very busy**⁽³⁾ around this area. But more jobs will be a good thing, we need them for the **young people**⁽⁴⁾ here.



Check Vocabulary

(2) ضوضائي - صاخب (3) يزداد ازدحاماً (4) الشباب

on Lesson 3 WB page 102

"I want to go to the new water park," said Lama.

"I went there last week," said Malak.

"I haven't been yet," said Hanan.

"I'm going with my family on Saturday," said Dina.

"Aya won't go because she doesn't like water parks!" said Injy

Reading

on Lesson 4 SB page 50

The Mother of All Broadcasters⁽¹⁾

Egyptian **radio broadcasting**⁽²⁾ started in 1934. It was the first broadcast in Africa and in the whole **Arab world**⁽³⁾. Safia el Mohandes was the first **female voice**⁽⁴⁾ on the radio. Safia was born in 1922 in Cairo. Her father was a famous **linguist**⁽⁵⁾. He **encouraged**⁽⁶⁾ Safia to read Arabic books and **novels**⁽⁷⁾. Safia also studied English **literature**⁽⁸⁾ at the university and **graduated from**⁽⁹⁾ the **Faculty of Arts**⁽¹⁰⁾ in 1945.



In 1947, Safia joined the Egyptian radio, and she was the first female **radio presenter**⁽¹¹⁾. Safia presented programmes for women and for children. Her most famous programme, "**Housewives**⁽¹²⁾," presented news, **educational**⁽¹³⁾ advice and **drama**⁽¹⁴⁾ for the whole Egyptian family.

Safia was very kind and helpful to all radio broadcasters. She helped everyone, and so she was called 'the mother of all broadcasters'. Safia was **head**⁽¹⁵⁾ of the radio broadcasting from 1975 until she **retired**⁽¹⁶⁾ in 1982.

Check Vocabulary

(1) إذاعيين	(2) بث إذاعي	(3) العالم العربي	(4) صوت نسائي	(5) لغوي	(6) شجع
(7) روايات	(8) الأدب	(9) تخرج من	(10) كلية الآداب	(11) مقدم إذاعي	(12) ربات البيوت
(13) تعليمي	(14) دراما	(15) مدير	(16) تقاعدت		

on Lesson 4 WB page 103

Farouk Shousha is a **well-known**⁽¹⁾ radio presenter and a famous **poet**⁽²⁾.
Early life⁽³⁾

Shousha was born in Damietta in 1936. He went to a nearby **elementary school**⁽⁴⁾. He went to the **local library**⁽⁵⁾ at a very early age, and was able to read many books in the Arabic language.

Later on⁽⁶⁾, Shousha went to Cairo University and graduated from the **Faculty of Dar al-Ulum**⁽⁷⁾ in 1956.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مشهور - معروف	(2) شاعر	(3) بداية حياته	(4) مدرسة ابتدائية
(5) المكتبة المحلية	(6) فيما بعد - لاحقاً		(7) كلية دار العلوم

Career⁽⁸⁾

Shousha worked as a radio presenter in 1958 and later on as a TV presenter too.

He always liked poetry⁽⁹⁾ and Arabic literature⁽¹⁰⁾. He presented⁽¹¹⁾ many programmes like 'Our Beautiful Language' on the radio, and "Cultural Evening"⁽¹²⁾.

Awards⁽¹³⁾

In his programmes, Shousha always talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and its rich literature. For this reason, he was called 'the guardian'⁽¹⁴⁾ of the Arabic language'. He won the Nile Prize⁽¹⁵⁾ for Literature in 2016.

Check Vocabulary

الحياة المهنية (8)	الشعر (9)	الأدب العربي (10)	قام بتقديم (11)
امسية ثقافية (12)	جوائز (13)	حارس (14)	جائزة النيل (15)

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1

لاحظ التعبيرات الآتية مع حرف الجر **on**

- * **on fire** مشتعل
- * **on duty** العمل / الخدمة
- * **on business** في مهمة عمل
- * **on average** في المتوسط
- * **on balance** على العموم

2 graduate

- * **graduate from** يتخرج من (كلية / جامعة /)
 - * **graduate in** يتخرج بشهادة في
 - * **a graduate of** خريج
- ex.:** - Farouk Shousha **graduated from** the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum.
- ex.:** - I **graduated in** Engineering from Ain Shams University.
- ex.:** - Samar is a **graduate of** the Faculty of Medicine.

3 because

- * **because of + noun/inf. + ing**
 - * **because + جملة كاملة**
- ex.:** - He stopped working **because of** old age/being old.
- ex.:** - She was tired **because** she had done a lot of work.

4 finish + (verb + ing)

ينهى - ينتهى

ex.: - They have **finished building** the new museum.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

radio news report	تقرير أخبارى على الراديو	talk about	يتحدث عن
take (time) to	يستغرق وقت ل.....	check information	يتحقق من المعلومات
special about	مميز / خاص بخصوص	find out	يكشف
at the park	في الحديقة	bring more tourism	يجلب سياحة أكثر
for free	مجانياً	over 100 new jobs	أكثر من 100 وظيفة جديدة
talk to	يتحدث إلى (شخص)	at a very early age	في عمر مبكر جداً
graduate from	يتخرج من	famous for	مشهور بـ
early life	بداية حياة (شخص)	specialise in	يتخصص في
the mother of all broadcasters	أم الإذاعيين	for this reason	ولهذا السبب
later on	فيما بعد ذلك - لاحقاً		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- The of Cairo ordered to fix the broken pipe in the main street.
a. worker b. tourist c. governor d. scientist
- They build more hotels and restaurants to increase the money we get from
a. accidents b. news c. time d. tourism
- Salma from the Faculty of Arts.
a. encouraged b. graduated c. started d. presented
- The national team won the as they did their best in the matches.
a. tournament b. charity c. test d. fight

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

- SB** Safia el Mohandes was the first female on the radio.
a. report b. sound c. news d. voice

6. **WB** Why was Farouk Shousha called "the guardian of the Arabic"?
 a. world b. language c. people d. culture

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. will cause droughts and floods in some areas.
 a. Social media b. Climate change
 c. Recycling d. Online shopping
8. He is a carpenter. He in making furniture.
 a. specialises b. encourages c. joins d. produces

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

9. Huda graduated the Faculty of Science.
 a. in b. of c. from d. on
10. Don't pay; this book is free.
 a. to b. on c. in d. for
11. A/An is a person who specialise in languages.
 a. dentist b. linguist c. engineer d. pilot
12. means to leave a job or stop working because of old age.
 a. Reuse b. Recycle c. Retire d. Redo

Definitions

التعريفات

13. The is the person who rules a city or area.
 a. president b. governor c. editor d. writer
14. down means to pull to the ground or destroy a building.
 a. Look b. Put c. Lock d. Knock
15. means reusing the waste in a useful way.
 a. Recycling b. Refreshing c. Redoing d. Rebuilding
16. A is a series of contests in some sport or game.
 a. towel b. tour c. tournament d. tower

Guessing the meaning

تخمين المعنى

17. He doesn't have any energy to do anything. He is now.
 a. powerful b. tired c. clever d. heavy
18. Shahd did a successful experiment in the lab and found a new cure. علاج
 She is a/an
 a. journalist b. mathematician c. scientist d. explorer
19. I enjoyed talking to you Mr Hatem. It was a useful
 a. article b. map c. photo d. conversation

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
special مميز - خاص	exceptional - unusual	usual - common عادي - مألوف
true صحيح	correct - accurate	false - inaccurate-untrue خطأ - غير دقيق
remember يتذكر	keep in mind - recall	forget ينسى
well-known معروف - مشهور	famous	unknown غير معروف / مشهور
noisy مزعج	loud	quiet هادئ
win يفوز	succeed	lose يخسر
nobody لا أحد	no one - none	everyone كل شخص
start يبدأ	begin	finish - end ينهي

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix/Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Example مثال
-or	تحول من فعل إلى اسم	governor محافظ
-ing	تحول من فعل إلى اسم	recycling إعادة التدوير
-al	تحول من اسم إلى صفة	educational تعليمي cultural ثقافي
in-	تعطي عكس الصفة	inexpensive رخيص

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The suffix can form the noun from the verb "recycle".
 a. -ed b. -ing c. -al d. -ment
2. We add the suffix to get the adjective from the noun "education".
 a. -ing b. -ly c. -al d. -tion
3. The synonym of the word "noisy" is
 a. loud b. busy c. quiet d. pleased

4. The synonym of the word "true" is
 a. delighted b. displeased c. correct d. false
5. There was nobody in the theatre. The antonym of the word "nobody" is
 a. no one b. everyone c. none d. nothing
6. The junior team won the final match. The antonym of the word "won" is
 a. lost b. succeeded c. passed d. followed
7. Talia can finish the race in 2.5 minutes. The antonym of the word "finish" is
 a. end b. complete c. start d. close

Language

Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

الكلام المباشر "Direct Speech" هو الكلام الذي يأتي على لسان شخص ما مباشرة أو نضاً ويكون الكلام موضوعاً بين علامتي تنصيص ".....":
 - "I am ill," said Ali.

الكلام غير مباشر "Reported Speech" هو الكلام الذي ينقله شخص ما عن شخص آخر، ولا يوضع الكلام غير المباشر بين علامتي تنصيص:
 - Ali said (that) he was ill.

Statement → الجملة الخبرية :

Speaker	فعل القول	(that)	subject	Past Simple	باقي الجملة
المتحدث Ali	• said • explained • reported • told object + خبر	قال فسر أبلغ أخبر	الفاعل he	فعل ماضي was	ill.
الشخص الذي قال الكلام المباشر	لاحظ أن : told لابد أن يتبعها مفعول	يمكن حذفها	يتم تحويل الضمائر بما يتناسب مع المتكلم والمخاطب	يتحول الزمن إلى الأبعد	

خطوات تحويل الجملة الخبرية إلى غير المباشر :

1. تحويل فعل القول كالتالي :

said تبقى كما هي	said	said to تحول إلى	told
say / says تبقى كما هي	say / says	say to / says to تحول إلى	tell / tells

للحظ الفرق بين told / said

said لا يأتي بعدها مفعول

ex. Ali said, "I like rice." → Ali said that he liked rice.

told لابد أن يأتي بعدها مفعول

ex. "I like rice." Ali said to me. → Ali told me that he liked rice.

للحظ تحويلات أخرى لفعل القول :

يمكن تحويل فعل القول إلى promised / explained / admitted حسب مضمون الكلام داخل الأقواس
 - He said to me, "I will help you." - He promised (that) he would help me.

2. تحذف الأقواس وترتبط بكلمة that ويمكن حذفها :

3. يتم تحويل الضمائر بما يتوافق مع المتكلم والمخاطب :

ضمائر الفاعل		ضمائر المفعول		صفات الملكية	
Direct Speech	Indirect Speech	Direct Speech	Indirect Speech	Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
I	he / she	me	him / her	my	his / her
you	I / we	you	me / us	your	my / our
we	they	us	them	our	their

4. يتم تحويل الظروف الزمنية وأسماء الإشارة كالتالي إذا كان فعل القول ماضياً وتبقى كما هي إذا كان فعل القول مضارعاً :

أسماء الإشارة		التعبيرات الزمنية			
Direct Speech	Indirect Speech	Direct Speech	Indirect Speech	Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
this	that	today	that day	tonight	that night
these	those	tomorrow	the following day	now	then
ظروف المكان		yesterday	the day before	ago	before
here	there	last week	the week before		

٥ يتم تحويل زمن الفعل كالتالي إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا وتبقى كما هي إذا كان فعل القول مضارعًا :

Present Simple → Past Simple

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. "I like fish", said Sama. | - Sama said that she liked fish. |
| 2. Ali said "My Mum doesn't get up late". | - Ali said that his mum didn't get up late. |

Present Continuous → Past Continuous

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. "I'm writing a paragraph.", Ali said to Ahmed. | - Ali told Ahmed (that) he was writing a paragraph. |
| 2. "The children are playing in the garden.", Nancy said. | - Nancy said (that) the children were playing in the garden. |

Past Simple → Past Perfect

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. "I helped my mother.", Adel said to me. | - Adel told me (that) he had helped his mother. |
| 2. "We didn't enjoy the show.", said my friends. | - My friends said (that) they hadn't enjoyed the show. |

لاحظ : يمكن أن يبقى زمن الماضي البسيط كما هو ولا يُحول.

Present perfect simple → Past perfect simple

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. "I've made a mistake.", said Adel. | - Adel said (that) he had made a mistake. |
| 2. "We haven't finished our homework." they said. | - They said (that) they had not finished their homework. |

Modals

- | | |
|---|--|
| can - will - has / have to - must - may - shall | could - would - had to - might - should |
| 1. "It may rain.", Sarah said to me. | - Sarah told me (that) it might rain. |
| 2. "The bus will leave soon.", said my friend. | - My friend said (that) the bus would leave soon. |

لاحظ :

١ لا يتم تغيير الزمن إذا كان فعل القول say(s) / tell(s)

- ex. - Mother says, "I **will visit** your aunt tomorrow."
- Mother says that she **will visit** my aunt tomorrow.

٢ لا يتم تغيير الأزمنة إذا كانت جملة القول تعبر عن حقائق

- ex. - The teacher said, "Lions **don't eat** grass."
- The teacher said that lions **don't eat** grass.

٣ لا يتم تغيير الأزمنة إذا قيل الكلام منذ فترة قصيرة

- ex. - Ayman said **just now**, "I **live** in Qalyoub."
- Ayman said **just now** (that) he **lives** in Qalyoub.

Exercises on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. **SB** A witness (told) that the building was on fire.
2. **SB** The scientist explained that the world (are) warming because there was climate change.
3. **SB** The police said that lots of mobile phones (have) been stolen that year.
4. **SB** The man told us that the football tournament would start (tomorrow).
5. **WB** Samy said that he (is) tired.
6. **WB** Lama said that she (wants) to go to the new water park.
7. **WB** The teacher said that (these) books had been very interesting.
8. **WB** Heba said that they (don't) go to the museum on Tuesday.

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. My friend said that the bus (will) leave soon.
10. Sara (said) us that the new shop would open in two weeks.
11. Tarek said that (him) was learning how to swim.
12. Ali told (I) that English was his favourite subject.
13. Amal told Mahmoud that he (can) play tennis on Saturday.
14. "I'm coming for lunch, Adel.", (told) Nader.
15. She told me that she (is reading) a story.
16. Anas told Salma that he had played football (yesterday).

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.
للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)
Part 2 فى ملحق (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

مهارة القراءة

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 50 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 275 ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Choose the correct answer :

- **Determining the main idea** تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية

1. The main idea of the passage is about the mother of all
a. doctors b. **broadcasters** c. engineers d. orphans

B. Answer the following questions :

- **Making inference** عمل استنتاج

2. Infer what would happen if Safia's father wasn't a linguist.

- **Summarising a text** تلخيص النص

3. Give a brief summary for the first paragraph passage in your own words.

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على تنمية مهارة الكتابة

- Farouk Shousha is a well-known radio presenter.
١. فاروق شوشة هو مقدم برامج إذاعي معروف.
- He is also a famous poet.
٢. هو أيضاً شاعر مشهور.
- Shousha was born in Damietta in 1936.
٣. ولد شوشة في محافظة دمياط في عام ١٩٣٦.
- He was able to read many books in the Arabic language at a very early age.
٤. في عمر مبكراً جداً، استطاع شوشة قراءة الكثير من الكتب باللغة العربية.
- He graduated from the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum at Cairo University.
٥. تخرج فاروق شوشة من كلية دار العلوم جامعة القاهرة.
- He worked as a radio presenter and a TV presenter, too.
٦. عمل كمقدم إذاعي وعمل أيضاً كمقدم تلفزيوني.
- He was called "the guardian of the Arabic language".
٧. لقب بحارس اللغة العربية.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete :

news - was - is - told - park - online

- A governor wants to build a new water
- Tamer me that he liked the museum.
- A witness said that the building on fire.
- What is the story about ?
- What do you think about studying ?

توبه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب تنمية مهارة الكتابة

- Write a biography of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :
"Farouk Shousha"

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

1. Asking and giving opinions :

السؤال عن وإعطاء الآراء :

Questions

1. What do you think about studying online ?

١. ما رأيك في الدراسة عبر الإنترنت ؟

2. What do you think about recycling ?

٢. ما رأيك في إعادة التدوير (الأشياء) ؟

Answers

- I like it as it saves a lot of time.
- أحب هذا النوع من الدراسة لأنه يوفر الكثير من الوقت.

- I don't like it because I can't discuss things with my friends.
- أنا لا أحب هذا النوع من الدراسة لأنها لا تتيح لي الفرصة لمناقشة الأشياء مع أصدقائي.

- I think it is a solution to many of our environmental problems.
- اعتقد إنها حل للعديد من مشاكلنا البيئية.

2. Asking and answering questions about radio broadcasting :

توجيه أسئلة والإجابة عليها عن البث الإذاعي :

- Was radio broadcasting very important in the last century ?
Why ?

- هل كان البث الإذاعي له أهمية كبيرة في القرن الماضي ؟ ولماذا ؟

- Yes, it was very important as it was one of the main sources of news.

- نعم، كان مهم جداً لأنه كان أحد المصادر الرئيسية للأخبار.

On

LESSONS **3 & 4**

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Mr Ayman is talking to Ahmed who came late to the office.

Ahmed : Good morning, Mr Ayman.

Mr Ayman : Good morning, Ahmed.

Ahmed, why are you late ?

Ahmed : Sorry, Mr Ayman (1)

Mr Ayman : (2) ?

Ahmed : I got up late because I had a toothache last night and I couldn't sleep well.

Mr Ayman : It's OK. (3) ?

Ahmed : No, I didn't see a doctor because it was late. Can I have your permission to leave early today to see a doctor?

Mr Ayman : (4) How are you feeling now ?

Ahmed : (5) Thanks a lot.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To send a programme or some information by radio or TV means to

a. donate b. broadcast c. include d. click

2. We add the suffix to get the noun from the verb "govern".

a. -er b. -or c. -ed d. -al

3. The film starts at ten o'clock. The synonym of "start" is

a. fail b. begin c. stop d. achieve

4. The antonym of "noisy" is

a. loud b. quiet c. low d. high

Media now and in the past

5. We add the prefix to get the opposite of the adjective "expensive".

a. ir- b. in- c. il- d. im-

6. I read a news story that is true on the internet yesterday. The word "true" means

a, false b, inaccurate c, incorrect d, accurate

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. **SB** The owner explained that there (will) be over 100 new jobs.

2. The governor (told) that the park was the biggest in Egypt.

3. Soha said that (my) mobile was broken.

4. Munir (told to) me "I can't attend the party".

5. She said that she (be) reading.

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

تحت إشراف

"A biography of Safia el-Mohandes"



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

festival (n)	مهرجان	nature reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية
teenager (n)	مراهق	meeting (n)	اجتماع - مقابلة
apparently (adv)	على ما يبدو - بكل وضوح	skills (n)	مهارات
sports star (n)	بطل رياضي	climber (n)	متسلق
sports centre (n)	مركز رياضي	path (n)	طريق - ممر

تلميح Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 51 WB page 104

traditional (adj)	تقليدي	phrase (n)	عبارة
son (n)	ابن	response (ed) (v), (n)	رد - استجابة
volunteers (n)	متطوعين	probably (adv)	من المحتمل
sports team (n)	فريق رياضي	pollution (n)	تلوث
tick (ed) (v)	يشير - يضع علامة	Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة
recently (adv)	حديثاً / مؤخرًا	national news (n)	الأخبار المحلية

Lesson 6

SB page 52 WB page 105

spelling mistakes (n)	أخطاء هجائية	jewellery (n)	مجوهرات
hours (n)	ساعات	possible (adj)	ممكن - محتمل
facts (n)	حقائق	happen (ed) (v)	يحدث - يقع
normally (adv)	عادة	reply (ied) (v), (n)	رد - رد
listening (n)	الاستماع	TV news	نشرة الأخبار التليفزيونية
writing (n)	الكتابة	round (adj)	دائري (الشكل)
finally (adv)	أخيراً - في الختام	hole (n)	ثقب - حفرة
act (ed) (v)	يمثل - يؤدي دور	work (ed) (v), (n)	يعمل - عمل

rain (ed) (v), (n)	تمطر - مطر	stadium (n)	استاد (رياضي)
coast (n)	ساحل	summarise (d) (v)	يلخص
film (ed) (v), (n)	يصور فيلم - فيلم	add (ed) (v)	يضيف

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
know	knew	known
meet	met	met
speak	spoke	spoken
think	thought	thought
get	got	got/gotten
fall	fell	fallen
break	broke	broken
sit	sat	sat

Collocations

متكلمات لفظية

do	an interview	يجري حوار	have	a meeting	يعقد اجتماع
get	a job	يحصل على وظيفة	have	a picnic	يذهب في نزهة
give	warning	يحذر	make	a question	يكون / يكتب سؤال

تلميح هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات (وللمزيد من التعريفات انظر قاموس المعاصر اللغوي).

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

apparently	according to what you have heard is true	على ما يبدو - بوضوح
festival	a day or time for people to celebrate something	مهرجان
meeting	a situation when groups of people meet to discuss something	اجتماع
according to	as said by someone or as shown by something	طبقاً لـ
warning	something that tells you about something dangerous or bad that might happen	تحذير

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 5 SB page 51

Adel : Fawzi, did you know that they are having a new food festival⁽¹⁾ next month in our village.

Fawzi : Really? That's good. Why are they having it?

Adel : According to⁽²⁾ the newspaper, it is to celebrate⁽³⁾ the opening⁽⁴⁾ of a new restaurant. It's opening next to the water tower.

Fawzi : That's good news.

Adel : Have you heard that they think more tourists will visit the village, too?

Fawzi : Yes, tourists like visiting traditional⁽⁵⁾ villages like ours. What type of restaurant will it be?

Wael : Apparently⁽⁶⁾ it's going to be a modern Egyptian restaurant.

Adel : Wow, it'll probably be expensive. But we should go to the food festival.

Fawzi : Yes, all our friends want to go, too.

Wael : I heard that you need to buy a ticket. I'll find out how much it is.

Fawzi : Good idea.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مهرجان (2) طبقاً لـ (3) يحتفل (4) افتتاح (5) تقليدي (6) على ما يبدو

Videoscript

• on Lesson 5 SB page 51

If you look up in Cairo, you will see some tall skyscrapers⁽¹⁾. But the tallest building of them all is Cairo Tower, which is on Gezira Island. This is 187 metres high and it is one of the tallest buildings in Africa.



Check Vocabulary

(1) ناطحات سحاب

The tower first opened in 1961. It was built by the famous Egyptian architect⁽²⁾ Naoum Shebib. Shebib also built another tall building in Cairo – the Thabet-Thabet building. This skyscraper is more than 100 metres high.

The design of the tower looks like a type of flower called the pharaonic lotus flower⁽³⁾. This is the national⁽⁴⁾ flower of Egypt. It was very important in Ancient Egypt because it represented⁽⁵⁾ birth⁽⁶⁾ and life.

The Cairo Tower is very popular with tourists, who visit it to see all of the city from the top. Sometimes, you can even see the Pyramids of Giza in the distance⁽⁷⁾. You can even have a meal at the top of the tower. My sister said that she ate fresh fish there! At night, the tower is illuminated⁽⁸⁾ with lights. People say that it looks very beautiful.

Soon, the tallest building in Africa will be in Egypt. The Iconic Tower⁽⁹⁾ in the New Administrative Capital⁽¹⁰⁾ will be more than 385 metres tall when it is built.

Are there any skyscrapers or tall buildings in your town or city?

Check Vocabulary

(2) مهندس معماري (3) زهرة اللوتس الفرعونية (4) قومي (5) تمثل (6) الميلاد
(7) على بعد (8) مضاء (9) البرج الابدوني (10) العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة

Reading

• on Lesson 5 WB page 104

Adam : Have you heard that a famous sports star is going to visit our village ?

Taha : Really ?

Adam : Yes. According to⁽¹⁾ this website, the famous basketball player is going to watch a children's match at the sports centre⁽²⁾.

Taha : That's good.

Adam : Did you know that the basketball player went to school in our village ?

Taha : No, I didn't know that.

Adam : Apparently⁽³⁾, he might send his son⁽⁴⁾ to the school, too.

Taha : That's good news.

Adam : I heard that his son is already good at basketball, but he's only five!

Taha : Wow !

Check Vocabulary

(1) طبقاً لـ (2) مركز رياضي (3) على ما يبدو (4) ابن

on Lesson 5 WB page 104

Noha : Did you know that Randa's cousin is a **famous**⁽¹⁾ newsreader ?

Hania : No, I didn't know.

Noha : Apparently, she reads the **local**⁽²⁾ news every night at 10 pm.

Hania : Really ?

Noha : According to my mother, she is very good at her job.

Hania : That's good.

Noha : I heard that she might work for the **national**⁽³⁾ news soon.

Hania : Wow!

Noha : Have you heard that she is visiting Randa tomorrow ?

Hania : No! We should **try**⁽⁴⁾ and meet her.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مشهور (2) محلي (3) وطني (4) يحاول

on Lesson 6 SB page 52

Shaïmaa's interview

What is a **normal**⁽¹⁾ working day like ?

I start my day early. We **have a meeting**⁽²⁾ at 8 am and we decide which new stories we will put on the news that day. After that, I **normally**⁽³⁾ spend a long time on the internet and **talk to**⁽⁴⁾ people on the phone. Then I **go out**⁽⁵⁾ with a camera operator and we **do some interviews**⁽⁶⁾ and I write about what I'm going to say.



What do you like about your job ?

I like meeting different people and **finding out**⁽⁷⁾ more about the world and the things that are happening in it. At first, it was **exciting**⁽⁸⁾ to be on the TV, but it is normal for me now !

What don't you like about your job ?

I don't like the long hours and sometimes we **report on**⁽⁹⁾ bad news and that can be very difficult.

Check Vocabulary

(1) عادي / معتاد (2) يفقد لقاء (3) بشكل عادي (4) يتحدث إلى (5) يخرج
(6) يجري لقاءات (7) يكتشف (8) مثير (9) يكتب / يتحدث عن

How did you get your job ?

I studied **media**⁽¹⁰⁾ and Arabic at university and then I **worked for**⁽¹¹⁾ a newspaper for a **while**⁽¹²⁾. Someone at the newspaper thought that I would be good on TV and told me about a job working in TV news.

What skills did you need to do your job ?

I think you have to be interested in the world around you and also like meeting lots of different people. You need to be good at listening and writing.

Check Vocabulary

(10) الإعلام (11) يعمل لدى (12) فترة قصيرة

on Lesson 6 WB page 105

I work for an English language **news website**⁽¹⁾.

I started at a newspaper, but I think more people read news online now, so I **prefer**⁽²⁾ this job. Lots of different **journalists**⁽³⁾ send me their articles, and I have to **decide**⁽⁴⁾ which ones are the most important. These will be the first ones that our readers will see.



Before the article **goes on the website**⁽⁵⁾, I also have to check the facts that are in it. I look at two or three different websites that I trust to do this. Then I check the writing. Sometimes, there are **spelling mistakes**⁽⁶⁾ or the language is not very easy to understand. It is my job to make the article as easy to understand as possible. Finally, I have to choose photographs to go with the article. Sometimes a **photographer**⁽⁷⁾ sends these, but usually we get them from other websites.



I studied English and **media**⁽⁸⁾ at university.

First, I wanted to be a journalist, but then I decided that I preferred this job. It is very interesting because I can look at so many people's articles.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يقرر / يحدد (2) يُفضل (3) صحفيين (4) يوقع إخباري
(5) يضع على الموقع (6) أخطاء هجائية (7) مُصور فوتوغرافي (8) الإعلام

• on Lesson 7 SB page 53

Last week, we decided to spend the weekend in Sharm El-Shiekh. We took our friend's car. Unfortunately, the car broke down. We asked a mechanic from the nearest village to come as soon as possible. He checked the car well. Then, the mechanic decided to take the car back to the garage. It was pulled all the way to our city!



• on Lesson 7 SB page 53

A. NEW NATURE RESERVE⁽¹⁾

This weekend, a new nature reserve will open on the coast⁽²⁾. The reserve will protect many fish, birds and sea animals, including turtles. The nature reserve will be a good place for families to walk and have a picnic⁽³⁾. A scientist said, "We hope people will visit to learn more about the environment of our wonderful coast."

B. CLIMBERS⁽⁴⁾ FOUND!

Two men who got lost⁽⁵⁾ when climbing a mountain have been found. The climbers took the wrong path⁽⁶⁾ by mistake⁽⁷⁾ and then one of them fell and broke his leg. They were on the mountain for four days. A police officer said, "They are tired and hungry but happy to be home."

Check Vocabulary

- عن طريق الخطأ (7) ممر/طريق (6) يضل الطريق (5) متسلقين (4) يذهب في نزهة (3) ساحل (2) محمية طبيعية (1)

• on Lesson 7 WB page 106

"I've always liked taking photographs. However⁽¹⁾, I never wanted to be a photographer. I have always wanted to be a camera operator. It is a great job and it is always different. Today, I am working at a sports stadium⁽²⁾. Tomorrow, I will be working inside. I am filming⁽³⁾ a meeting⁽⁴⁾ with some important people! I have never met the governor of Cairo before. I am looking forward to⁽⁵⁾ it!"

Check Vocabulary

- يتطلع إلى (5) مقابلة (4) يصور فيلم (3) استاد رياضي (2) على الرغم من (1)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

according to	طبقاً لـ	in TV news	في الأخبار التلفزيونية
in the Cairo tower	في برج القاهرة	good at	جيد في
put on the news	يضع في الأخبار	at the sports centre	في المركز الرياضي
on the internet	على شبكة الإنترنت	on the website	على موقع الإنترنت
talk on the phone	يتحدث في الهاتف	for a while	لمدة قصيرة
That's good news!	هذه أخبار جيدة!	by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ
That's bad news!	هذه أخبار سيئة!	food festival	مهرجان الطعام
Good idea.	فكرة جيدة.	respond to	يرد على
make ... easy to understand	يجعل ... سهل الفهم	go out with	يخرج مع
spend a long time on	يقضي وقت طويلاً على	go with	يتماشى مع
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	go on	يستمر / يظل على
working day	يوم عمل	have a hat on	يرتدي قبعة
at first	في البداية	come out of	يخرج من
report on	يجري تقرير عن	wait on the road	ينتظر على الطريق
work for	يعمل لدى	climb a mountain	يتسلق جبل
serve food	يقدم طعام	take the wrong path	يتخذ الممر الخاطئ

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- Every year, a/an is held to celebrate the spring in March.
a. interview b. meeting c. festival d. film
- Mohamed Salah is a sports He's very famous.
a. centre b. star c. cast d. skill
- The mountain reached the top after seven hours.
a. drivers b. holders c. editors d. climbers
- My teacher works hard to improve our in English
a. time b. skills c. facts d. power

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

5. **SB** The will serve traditional food.
a. tower b. meeting c. restaurant d. playground
6. **SB** The will protect many fish, birds and sea animals.
a. aquarium b. museum c. reserve d. circus
7. **WB** A: There's a lot of on this beach. B: That's bad news.
a. sand b. shells c. pollution d. lives

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. My uncle has a and two daughters. I love my three cousins.
a. mother b. nephew c. son d. cousin
9. The charity asks for to help collect food for the poor.
a. volunteers b. organizers c. climbers d. stars
10. We sent an email to the governor and we're waiting for his
a. fact b. response c. job d. field
11. Mom always asks me to the end of the stories, she doesn't tell it to me.
a. reply b. work c. guess d. meet

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. The editors decide the best article to on the news.
a. hang b. make c. put d. find
13. Turtles of water to lay their eggs on land.
a. go to b. come out c. wait on d. put on
14. Short, simple sentences the story easy to understand.
a. make b. put c. act d. do

Definitions

التعريفات

15. means according to what you have heard is true.
a. Unexpectedly b. About c. Apparently d. Really
16. The is a day or time for people to celebrate something.
a. competition b. interview c. meeting d. festival
17. A is a situation when groups of people meet to discuss something.
a. festival b. meeting c. show d. exhibition

18. A is something that tells you about something dangerous or bad that might happen.
a. invitation b. festival c. warning d. review

Guessing the meaning

تخمين المعنى

19. At first, it was exciting to be on TV but it is for me now.
a. normal b. interesting c. amazing d. wonderful
20. There're no sides in the shape. It's
a. triangle b. square c. round d. rectangle
21. I'm not sure they're at home. That's
a. final b. possible c. fact d. news

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
normal عادي طبيعي	usual	abnormal - unusual غير طبيعي - غير عادي
exciting شيق - مثير	interesting	boring ممل
famous مشهور	known	infamous - unknown عادي - غير مشهور
true صحيح	right - correct	false - wrong خاطي
difficult صعب	hard	easy سهل
different مختلف	unusual	similar - same - usual مشابه - معتاد
wonderful رائع	awesome-amazing	bad - terrible ردي - سيئ

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix/Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Example مثال
un -	تعطي عكس المعنى	unable غير قادر
ab -	تعطي عكس المعنى	abnormal غير طبيعي
- ing	يحول من فعل إلى اسم	warning تحذير meeting اجتماع

- er	يحول من فعل إلى اسم	climber	متسلق
- ion	يحول من فعل إلى اسم	pollution	تلوث
- ly	يكون الظرف من الصفة	apparently	على ما يبدو

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The synonym of the word "true" is
a. possible b. wrong c. false d. right
- The test was really hard. The antonym of the word "hard" is
a. right b. difficult c. far d. easy
- I don't like poets. I think they're boring. The antonym of the word "boring" is
a. lazy b. usual c. exciting d. similar
- This project is wonderful. It 'll help develop the village. The synonym of the word "wonderful" is
a. awesome b. similar c. usual d. boring
- These bags are all different. Which one is yours ? The antonym of the word "different" is
a. similar b. false c. interesting d. exciting
- She is a famous artist. The antonym of the word "famous" is
a. unknown b. great c. same d. right
- We add the suffix to get the noun from the verb "meet".
a. -ment b. -ed c. -ly d. -ing
- The suffix can be used to get the noun from the verb "pollute".
a. -ment b. -ion c. -ed d. -ly
- We add the suffix to get the noun from the verb "climb".
a. -ed b. -er c. -est d. -ful
- We use the suffix to get the noun from the verb "warn".
a. -ing b. -ly c. -or d. -ion
- To give the opposite of the adjective "normal", we add the prefix
a. up- b. ab- c. dis- d. un-

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارف (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)

Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

مهاراة القراءة

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 52 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 292 ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Choose the correct answer :

- **Determining the main idea** تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية

1. The best title for the passage is

- skills needed for different jobs.
- kinds of food in different countries.
- social media
- holidays

B. Answer the following question :

- **Making inference** عمل استنتاج

2. Infer how was the job of the journalist before the internet.

- **Summarising a text** تلخيص النص

3. Give a brief summary for the last paragraph in two lines in your own words.

2. Writing Corner

مهاراة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على تنمية مهارة الكتابة

- The job of a journalist, isn't easy, but interesting.
١. وظيفة الصحفي ليست سهلة ولكنها شيقة.
- He spends a lot of time on the internet and on the phone.
٢. يقضى الصحفي فترة طويلة على الإنترنت والهاتف.
- He needs a camera operator with him all the time.
٣. يحتاج لمصور معه طوال الوقت.
- He does some interviews with some people.
٤. يقوم بإجراء بعض المقابلات الشخصية مع بعض الناس.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

stuck - governor - sports - ever - never - journalism

1. My favourite team won yesterday!
2. I have been to a museum.
3. I studied to be an editor or a journalist.
4. The is the most important person in my area.
5. When the car can't move. It means it is

تدريب
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على مهارة الكتابة

- Write a review of about ONE HUNDRED and TEN 110 words on :
"The job of the web designer"

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

▶ Reporting news :

تقديم تقارير إخبارية :

Stimuli	Responses
1. Have you heard that a famous sports star is going to visit our village ? ١. هل سمعت أن نجم رياضي مشهور سيزور قريتنا ؟	- Really ? - حقا ؟
2. Yes. According to the newspapers, the famous football player is going to watch a children's match at the sports centre. ٢. نعم. وفقاً للصحف، سوف يشاهد لاعب كرة القدم المشهور مباراة للأطفال في المركز الرياضي.	- That's good. - هذا جيد.
3. Did you know that the football player went to school in our village ? ٣. هل تعلم أن لاعب كرة القدم ذهب إلى مدرسة في قريتنا ؟	- No, I didn't know that. - لا، أنا لم أعرف ذلك.
4. Apparently, he might send his son to that school, too. ٤. على ما يبدو، أنه أيضاً أرسل ابنه إلى تلك المدرسة.	- That's good news. - إنها لأخبار سارة.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Ashraf is phoning his friend Mustafa to congratulate him on passing his final exams.

Ashraf : Hello, Mustafa. How are you ?

Mustafa : (1)

Ashraf : (2) ?

Mustafa : Yes. I've passed my final exams.

Ashraf : (3) ! What about your marks ?

Mustafa : I got full marks. I couldn't believe myself.

Ashraf : Well done ! (4) ?

Mustafa : The results are on the school website.

Ashraf : Can you send me the school website ?

Mustafa : (5)

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

interesting - climbing - be - interested - mountains - was

Some people do strange and dangerous sports. For example, my friend is (1) in climbing (2) He dreams of (3) Mount Everest in the future to (4) like Omar Samra who did it in May, 2013.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We add the suffix to get the adverb of the adjective "apparent".

- a. -y b. -al c. -ly d. -er

2. means as said by someone or as shown by something.
a. Different to b. According to c. Depend on d. proud of
3. We add the prefix to get the opposite from the adjective "able".
a. im- b. un- c. re- d. il-
4. The test was really difficult. The synonym of the word "difficult" is
a. easy b. right c. hard d. possible
5. The antonym of the word "wonderful" is
a. similar b. same c. bad d. wrong
6. She didn't intend to break it. She did it by
a. mistake b. path c. nature d. festival

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The doctor told me that I (have to) take that medicine.
2. My mother (told me) "I will go shopping for an hour."
3. Ola (says to) Nadeen that she wants to buy a nice bag.
4. Ashraf told his daughter that he (is staying up) late at work that night.
5. Marwa says that she (went) to the club every Friday.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجان عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of the job of the journalist"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتي



If you got ●, you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد،
فقم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

At the end of this unit, I will be able to في نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادراً على أن

1 Learn important vocabulary اتعلم مفردات لغوية هامة

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> web designer | <input type="checkbox"/> trust |
| <input type="checkbox"/> camera operator | <input type="checkbox"/> tourism |
| <input type="checkbox"/> witness | <input type="checkbox"/> governor |
| <input type="checkbox"/> tournament | <input type="checkbox"/> article |

2 Read and write sentences using reported speech statements.

اقرأ واكتب جمل عن الجمل الخبرية في صيغة الكلام غير المباشر.

- ☐ Hatem said that he could play chess well.
☐ She said that he had seen the film.
☐ A witness said that the building was on fire.
☐ The owner explained that there would be over 100 new jobs.

3 Talk about media.

اتحدث عن الإعلام.

- ☐ A : What sort of media do you trust most ?
☐ B : I trust the newspapers.
☐ A : What job would you like to do in the media ?
☐ B : I would like to be a journalist.

Master your term جزء للمتابعة في كراسة المعاصر

جزء للمتابعة الشهرية بعد كل ثلاث وحدات

لمزيد من التدريبات

Review

on unit 11

SB page 53

WB page 106

Speaking

1. Discussing types of news

مناقشة أنواع الأخبار

A: Which type of media do you trust most?

B: I prefer the newspapers and TV programmes.

2. Describing a picture from the news.

وصف صورة من الأخبار

A: What caused this flood in the city centre?

B: The picture shows that a large water pipe burst.

3. Reporting news: تقديم تقارير إخبارية

A: Have you heard that a famous sports star is going to visit our village?

B: Really?

A: Yes. According to the newspaper, the famous football player is going to watch a children's match at the sports centre.

B: That's good.

Language

• Reported speech "statement"

الجملة الخبرية في صيغة الكلام غير المباشر

Using reporting verbs such as:

say/tell / explain

• changing tenses

* Ahmed said, "the park is the biggest in Egypt".

* Ahmed said that the park was the biggest in Egypt.

Vocabulary

صحفي

قارئ الأخبار

مدير صحفي

ماسورة مياه

شاهد

محلي

تحذير

جلد

بطولة / دورة (مباريات)

تغير المناخ

السياحة

يق / ثقة

مقال

محافظ

مقابلة شخصية

طبيعي

محمية طبيعية

سلحفاة

على ما يبدو

نجم رياض

journalist

newsreader

editor

water pipe

witness

local

warning

leather

tournament

climate change

tourism

trust

article

governor

interview

normal

nature reserve

turtles

apparently

sports star

Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة
معالجة جديدة لأنماط وأنشكال مختلفة
لمهارة الكتابة

A (review / biography / short story)

News story on social media / Your favourite type of media / A famous person.



Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة لاستئارة أفكار لتنمية مهارة الكتابة

- Which job do you like to do in the media?
- What sorts of media would you like?
- What is the strangest news have you heard in your town?



Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

- journalist
- newsreader
- camera operator
- editor

- pipe burst
- witness
- tournament
- climate change
- governor

- university
- interested
- nature reserve
- motorbike
- witness



Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتركيب مساعدة

- I prefer working for a newspaper as

- A witness said that

- In the photo, the man was

- It's important to



Practise

تدرب على مهارة الكتابة

Write a review of about ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The job you'd like to do in the media"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Vocabulary

photographer	مصور	football tournament	دوري كرة قدم
designer	مصمم	climate change	تغير مناخي
newsreader	قارئ النشرة	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
witness	شاهد	environment	البيئة
water pipe	ماسورة مياه	linguist	عالم باللغة - لغوي
owners	ملاك	sports centre	مركز شباب
leather	جلد	broadcasting	بث

مفردات لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

2. Language

- Ahmed told⁽¹⁾ Heba that he would visit Alexandria the following day.
- He said he would⁽²⁾ give her the book next day.
- Heba said that it had been⁽³⁾ noisy.

قواعد لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

Check Language

- فعل قول في جملة في صيغة الكلام غير المباشر في حالة الجملة الخيرية وتم تحويل الزمن للماضي
- جملة في صيغة الكلام غير المباشر وتم تحويل الفعل الناقص will إلى would
- جملة في صيغة الكلام غير المباشر وتم تحويل الزمن من ماضي بسيط لماضي تام

3. Speaking

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. Which type of media do you trust the most ?	- I prefer the newspapers and TV programmes.
2. Which job would you like to do in the media ? Why ?	- I would like to be a journalist as I like researching and writing news articles.
3. Was radio broadcasting very important in the last century ? Why ? - هل كان البث الإذاعي له أهمية كبيرة في القرن الماضي ؟ ولماذا ؟	- Yes, it was very important as it was the one of the main source of news. - نعم، كان مهم جدًا لأنه كان أحد المصادر الرئيسية للأخبار.



A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Adham is asking his cousin Jana about the job that she would like to do in the future.

Adham : Good evening !

Jana : Good evening !

Adham : Jana, we had a nice English lesson at school today.

Jana : (1) What was it about ?

Adham : It was about jobs. (2) ?

Jana : I would like to be an English teacher. (3) ?

Adham : I'd like to be a doctor. Why would you like to be an English teacher ?

Jana : (4) Why would you like to be a doctor ?

Adham : (5)

Jana : Excellent ! Helping ill people is something great.

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

teach - free - get - click - do - teaches

Some people like doing voluntary work. This work is for (1) as they don't (2) any money for it. It is really a great feeling to (3) such work. We should (4) our children the importance of voluntary work.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Your goal is something that you want to do. First, you should decide what that goal is. Do you want to pass an exam ? Do you want to be a doctor ? Do you want to be wealthy ?

Think about what you want and decide on your goal. You should write your goal on a piece of paper. Put your goal poster on your wall and look at it every day. Then, decide what you have to do to achieve **حقق** your goal.

Some people never reach their goal because they think it is impossible. You should think positively, Don't think "the exam is difficult and I will probably fail it, "instead you should think "The exam is difficult, but I have worked hard and will pass it". People who think negatively seldom reach their goals, so be positive!

We are most successful at things we enjoy. So, you should try to enjoy your work. Look at your goal poster. Think how happy you will be when you have reached your goal. Think about that happiness while you are working and you will enjoy your work.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The main idea of the passage is that
a. our goals are always impossible to be achieved
b. if you want to achieve your goal, you will achieve it
c. some successful people don't achieve their goals
d. deciding your goals won't help you to achieve them
- People who think negatively seldom **نادراً** reach their goals so try not to be
a. negative b. positive c. active d. brave
- The synonym of the word "**wealthy**" is
a. interested b. successful c. poor d. rich

b. Answer the following questions :

- According to the passage, how can we achieve our goals ?
.....
- Summarize the third paragraph of the passage using your own words.
.....
- Which job do you think people will succeed in ?
.....

C. Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- To get the noun of the verb "present" we add the suffix
a. -able b. -sion c. -en d. -er
- A/An is the person who researches and writes news articles.
a. engineer b. journalist c. operator d. officer
- To form the opposite of the adjective "normal", we add the prefix
a. ab- b. en- c. dis- d. il-
- They knocked down the local house to rebuild it. The antonym of the word "local" is
a. normal b. national c. international d. boring
- The synonym of "normal" is
a. abnormal b. usual c. unusual d. boring
- All the groceries fell down from the bag. There must be a in it.
a. high b. hole c. hell d. hill

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- Emy (said) me that she would come back late.
- Our teacher said (this) he had explained the lesson twice.
- Hala told Mona that she (will join) a sports club.
- Omar (said to) his father that he needed ten pounds.
- The head teacher told the students that they (have to) come early.

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

اجابته في نهاية الكتاب

"A biography of Farouk Shousha"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 11 for Al-Azhar students

بانتظار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Mona and Yara are talking about a new water park.

Mona : Hi Yara. How are things ?

Yara : I'm fine, thanks.

Mona : Did you hear about the new water park in our town ?

Yara : (1) Where is it ?

Mona : It's in downtown.

Yara : (2) ?

Mona : It took two years to be built.

Yara : What about spending the weekend there ?

Mona : (3)

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations :

1. Ask your friend about his favourite way of getting news.

2. You're asked about your opinion of studying online.

3 Write a paragraph of six sentences on "the journalist"

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختر ذكائك

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I was really cross. The word "cross" here means

a. happy b. pleased c. angry d. rich

2. The teacher told his pupils that the earth

a. being round b. be round c. is round d. round

3. "There will be over 50 new jobs", the manager.

a. told b. said c. explained d. reported

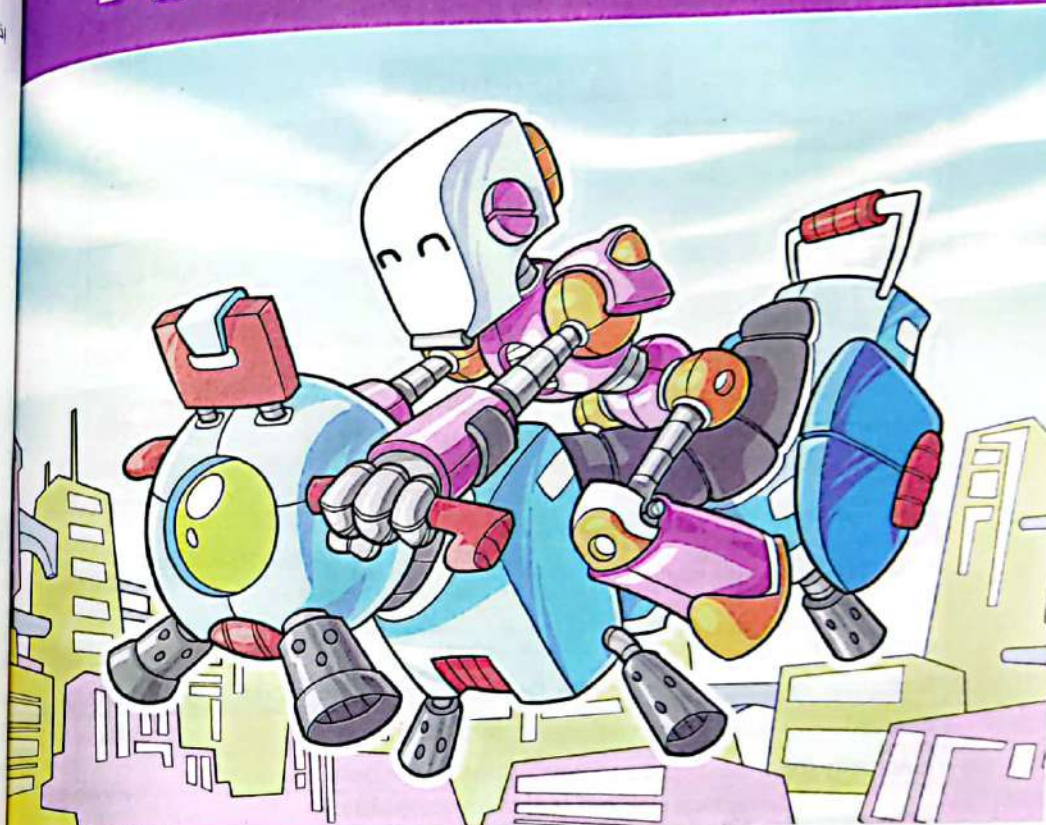
4. "Well-known" is the synonym of

a. legal b. accurate c. unknown d. famous

UNIT 12

Into the future

SB pages 54-63 WB pages 107-113



Objectives

Reading :

A text about future technology; a blog about personal goals; an article about future cities in Africa; a text about driverless cars

Writing :

A paragraph about personal goals and ambitions; a short report about a future technology

Listening :

A conversation about future predictions; a radio programme about learning in the future; students

talking about their goals; talking about a city in the future

Speaking :

Making predictions; discussing future ability; discussing personal goals; expressing certainty and uncertainty about the future

Language :

will / won't be able to

Life Skills :

Critical thinking and self-management

Master your term في الشهيرة في Master your term
 • للمتابعة اليومية و الشهيرة في Master your term
 • قاموس المعاصر للغوى • ملحق المعاصر للأزهر الشريف
 • ملحق A week is enough

للتدوين
 • ملحق A week is enough

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

cycle lane (n)	حارة ركوب الدراجات / ممشى الدراجات	robotics engineer (n)	مهندس أجهزة إنسان إلى (روبوتات)
electric bus (n)	حافلة كهربائية	3D printer (n)	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد
e-sports player (n)	لاعب رياضات إلكترونية	solution (n)	حل
assistant (n)	مساعد	temperature	درجة حرارة
device (n)	جهاز		

- تلميح** Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية انظر نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 54 & 55 WB page 107

Arab (n/adj)	شخص عربي - عربي الجنسية	prediction (n)	تنبؤ - نبوءة
lane (n)	حارة / ممشى	robot (n)	إنسان إلى
e-sports (n)	الرياضات الإلكترونية	robotics (n)	علم الروبوتات - علم الفواعل الآلية
firefighter (n)	رجل إطفاء	3D = three - dimensional (adj)	لثلاثي الأبعاد
hero (n)	بطل	percent (n)	بالمائة
electricity (n)	الكهرباء		

Lesson 2

SB pages 56 & 57 WB page 108

apply(ied) (v)	يتقدم بطلب	challenge (n)	تحدي
charge (d) (v)	يشحن	energy (n)	طاقة
coronavirus (n)	فيروس كورونا	print (ed) (v)	يطبع
during (prep)	أثناء	mask (n)	قناع
fabric (n)	قمماش	online learning (n)	التعلم على الإنترنت
farmland (n)	أرض زراعية	price (n)	سعر / ثمن
floating (adj)	عائم	produce (d) (v)	يولد / ينتج

robot teacher (n)	مُعَلِّم آلي	solar panels (n)	الخلايا الشمسية
business meeting (n)	اجتماع عمل	virtual reality (n)	الواقع الافتراضي
visitor (n)	زائر	passport (n)	جواز سفر
seal (n)	مقمة (عجل البحر)		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المصارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
ride يركب	rode	ridden
rise يرتفع	rose	risen
wear يرتدي	wore	worn
hear يسمع	heard	heard
mean يعني / يقصد	meant	meant
hurt يؤذي / يؤلم	hurt	hurt
lose يفقد - يخسر	lost	lost
smell يشم	smelt	smelt

- تلميح** هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.
 وللمزيد من التعريفات انظر قاموس المعاصر اللغوي

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

assistant	somebody who helps a person do their job	مساعد
device	• a machine or equipment for a particular job • electric equipment that can do a special job	جهاز
e-sports player	a player of online video games	لاعب رياضات إلكترونية
online learning	education or teaching that you can have on the internet	التعلم عن بعد
robotics engineer	a person whose job is to design or work with robots	مهندس أجهزة إنسان إلى
solution	• a way to deal with or answer a puzzle or question • a way to solve a problem or answer a question	حل
3 D printer	a machine that can make copies of whole objects	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد

temperature	how hot or cold something is	درجة الحرارة
virtual reality	when a computer makes you think that you are in a real place using pictures and sound	الواقع الافتراضي
cycle lane	a special place where people can cycle on roads	حارة ركوب الدراجات / ممشى الدراجات

Collocations

leave	university	ينهي الدراسة الجامعية	use	online learning	يستخدم التعلم عن بعد
make	predictions	يتنبأ	do	projects	يقوم بعمل مشاريع
	designs	يصنع تصميمات		presentations	يقوم بإعداد عرض تقديمي
	3D models	يصنع نماذج ثلاثية الأبعاد		homework	يقوم بإعداد الواجب المدرسي
ride	bikes	يركب الدراجات			
grow	food	يزرع محاصيل غذائية			

II Listening and Reading

Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 55

1

Girl 1 : Look, this article says that cities across the world are building new cycle lanes⁽¹⁾. This one is in Beijing⁽²⁾. It goes above the city.

Girl 2 : That looks amazing!

Girl 1 : According to the article, the most popular way to travel in future won't be by fast train or driverless car, it will be by bike.

Girl 2 : Do you think that's possible?

Girl 1 : Not really. It's good that some cities are building new cycle lanes, but I think there will always be quicker and easier ways to travel.

Girl 2 : Hmm ... I think you're right.



Check Vocabulary

مشي الدراجات (1) بكين (عاصمة الصين) (2)

2

Boy 1 : So, this article is about the energy that we will use in future.

Boy 2 : What does it say?

Boy 1 : It says that we will all be using more renewable energy⁽³⁾. In fact⁽⁴⁾, by 2050, all of our energy will be renewable.

Boy 2 : I agree. We have to change to renewable energy to protect the planet.

3

Girl 3 : It says here that we will need a lot more scientists⁽⁵⁾ in the future.

Girl 4 : Well, there are already a lot of jobs that people need science for. And in the future, science will be more important.

Girl 3 : Why?

Girl 4 : Well, with problems like climate change⁽⁶⁾, we will need new ideas and new technology. We need scientists for this.

Girl 3 : Oh yes. I see what you mean.

4

Boy 3 : Look at this e-sports tournament⁽⁷⁾. 60 million people watched it online.

Boy 4 : Yes, e-sports are becoming really popular.

Boy 3 : It says here that e-sports will be more popular⁽⁸⁾ than football by 2030.

Boy 4 : I don't think that will happen. Billions of people watch football matches. E-sports are popular, but they won't be more popular than football.

Boy 3 : No, I don't think they will.

Check Vocabulary

أكثر شعبية (8) بطولة (7) التغير المناخي (6) علماء (5) في الحقيقة (4) طاقة متجددة (3)

on Lesson 2 SB page 57

Interviewer : Well, we've all got our own ideas about what life will be like in the future. Perhaps we'll be able to control devices⁽¹⁾ with our eyes or travel in planes that go into space ... But what will education⁽²⁾ be like? Dr Leila Hamed, an expert⁽³⁾ in education and technology, is here to tell us more.



Check Vocabulary

خبير (3) التعليم (2) أجهزة (1)

Dr Leila : So, Dr Leila Hamed. How do you think education will be different in the future?

Dr Leila : Well, ⁽⁴⁾recently, all students have been doing more **online learning**.⁽⁵⁾ And I'm sure that they'll do more of their learning this way in the future.

Interviewer : So what are the **advantages**⁽⁶⁾ of online learning?

Dr Leila : The great thing about online learning is that you don't need lots and lots of books, so you can work anywhere. Students will be able to complete a school project **wherever**⁽⁷⁾ they are. And they won't be able to lose their homework!

Interviewer : **That's true!**⁽⁸⁾ ... And what kind of new technology could we see in the classroom?

Dr Leila : I think **3D printers**⁽⁹⁾ will be very important in the future. Students will be able to use these to make all kinds of things.

Interviewer : So will they be able to **print**⁽¹⁰⁾ anything they like?

Dr Leila : No, they won't be able to print very large things or objects made from certain **materials**,⁽¹¹⁾ but they will be able to print **models**⁽¹²⁾ and even make their own designs.



Check Vocabulary

(4) حديثاً - مؤخراً	(5) التعلم عن بعد	(6) مزايا	(7) أينما	(8) هذا صحيح
(9) طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	(10) يطبع	(11) مواد	(12) نماذج	

Interviewer : Great! ... I've heard that some places, such as restaurants, shops and even hospitals are starting to use robot **assistants**.⁽¹³⁾ Do you think that we could use robot assistants in schools?

Dr Leila : No, I don't think so. I think that in future, robots will help with simple jobs in some places, but it would be very difficult to make a robot that could teach a lesson! So, I don't think that we will see robots in the classroom.

Interviewer : **That's a pity.**⁽¹⁴⁾ It would be fun to have a robot teacher!

Dr Leila : Well, lessons in the future will **definitely**⁽¹⁵⁾ be fun! Teachers already use the internet for videos and **educational**⁽¹⁶⁾ games. In the future, it's going to be even more exciting. Students will be able to use **virtual reality**⁽¹⁷⁾ to discover new things or explore places that are far away or that existed in the past.

Interviewer : So you think that in a history lesson, students will be able to visit ancient Egypt?

Dr Leila : Yes, they will! Of course, the students won't be able to **taste**⁽¹⁸⁾ the food or smell the flowers, but they will be able to see the people and places.

Interviewer : That does **sound**⁽¹⁹⁾ exciting! ... But what about **traditional**⁽²⁰⁾ teaching? Will students still listen to the teacher and answer questions? Will they do talks, projects and **presentations**?⁽²¹⁾

Dr Leila : Yes, of course! These things will always be important. It's the teacher's job to present the lesson and make sure that students **understand**.⁽²²⁾ But technology will help to make them more exciting.

Interviewer : Well, it's been really interesting talking to you, Dr Leila Hamed. Thank you!

Dr Leila : You're welcome.

Check Vocabulary

(13) مساعدين	(14) هذا مؤسف	(15) بالتأكيد	(16) تعليمي	(17) الواقع الافتراضي
(18) يتذوق	(19) يبدو	(20) تقليدي	(21) عروض	(22) يشهم

Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 56

THE TECHNOLOGY OF TOMORROW

Here are there things that could be part of our lives in the future.

Floating farms

One of the biggest problems we will have in the future is how to **feed**⁽¹⁾ the world. As the **population**⁽²⁾ **grows**⁽³⁾ and sea levels **rise**⁽⁴⁾, we won't be able to grow the food we need on the **farmland**⁽⁵⁾ we have. One **solution**⁽⁶⁾ is to build **floating**⁽⁷⁾ farms on the sea. The farms will have **solar panels**⁽⁸⁾ so they will be able to **produce**⁽⁹⁾ their own electricity.



Check Vocabulary

(1) يُطعم	(2) عدد السكان	(3) ينمو / يزداد	(4) يرتفع	(5) أرض زراعية
(6) حل	(7) عالم	(8) ألواح شمسية	(9) يُولّد / ينتج	

Energy shirts

Have you **heard of**⁽¹⁾ a shirt that can **charge**⁽²⁾ your phone? Scientists have made a new **fabric**⁽³⁾ that produces electricity as it moves. This means that we'll be able to charge our **devices**⁽⁴⁾ as we run or walk outside.



Check Vocabulary

(1) يسمع عن	(2) يشحن	(3) قماش	(4) أجهزة
-------------	----------	----------	-----------

Robot assistants

When we go to hospital in the future, we may see doctors, nurses... and **robots**⁽¹⁾! During⁽²⁾ the **coronavirus**⁽³⁾ **pandemic**⁽⁴⁾, **robot assistants**⁽⁵⁾ worked in hospitals in Rwanda.



Check Vocabulary

(1) مساعدين	(2) أثناء	(3) فيروس كورونا	(4) جائحة	(5) أجهزة إلكترونية
-------------	-----------	------------------	-----------	---------------------

They checked people's **temperatures**⁽⁶⁾, **collected**⁽⁷⁾ information and even **reminded**⁽⁸⁾ people to **wear masks**⁽⁹⁾! More importantly, they helped to keep hospital workers **safe**⁽¹⁰⁾.

Check Vocabulary

(6) درجة حرارة	(7) يجمع	(8) يُذكر	(9) يرتدى قناع	(10) آمن
----------------	----------	-----------	----------------	----------

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 advice / a device

* advice (n)

نصيحة (اسم لا يُعد)

ex.: - My **advice** to you is to exercise more and more to get fitter.

* device

جهاز (اسم يُعد) يؤدي وظيفة معينة

ex.: - This **device** is used to check people's temperatures.

2 food - feed

* food (n)

طعام

ex.: - In the future, the world needs to grow more **food**.

* feed (v) fed - fed

يُطعم

ex.: - Manar is **feeding** her baby.

ex.: - Mom always **feeds** hens in the morning.

3 pandemic - epidemic

* pandemic

جائحة (انتشار مرض بشكل سريع حول العالم)

ex.: - Coronavirus **pandemic** is worrying the whole world.

* epidemic

وباء (انتشار مرض بشكل سريع في مكان محدد)

ex.: - Plague has become an **epidemic** in some countries.

4 virtue - virtual

* virtue (n)

الفضيلة

ex.: - Loyalty **الولاء**, courage **الشجاعة** and respecting the old are great **virtues**.

* virtual (adj)

افتراضي / واقعي

ex.: - Facebook is a **virtual** world.

ex.: - What you say seems **virtual**. I trust you.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	on the road	على الطريق
find good solutions to	يجد حلول جيدة لـ	in tall buildings	في مباني طويلة
in about a year's time	خلال حوالي عام	keep people safe	يحافظ على الناس آمنين
in the same way	بنفس الطريقة	produce electricity	يُنتج كهرباء
moves up	يرتفع/يتصاعد	waste less food	يُضيع طعام أقل
save ... from	ينقذ ... من	part of our lives	جزء من حياتنا
by 2040	قبل سنة ٢٠٤٠	on the farmland	في الأرض الزراعية
in the correct order	في الترتيب الصحيح	Have you heard of... ?	هل سبق لك أن سمعت عن ... ؟
give reasons	يقدم أسباب		
in different ways	بطرق مختلفة	around one third of...	حوالي ثلث...

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key Vocabulary

- He is interested in designing or working with robots. He is a/an
a. sailor b. pilot
c. robotics engineer d. astronauts
- This maths question is very difficult. Can you help me find the ?
a. population b. solution c. pollution d. presentation
- All cities will have so it will be fun to go by bike.
a. robotics engineers b. cycle lanes c. 3D printers d. e-sports

SB and WB Exercises

- SB By 2050, all of our energy will be
a. horrible b. terrible c. renewable d. impossible
- SB By 2100, 95 of people will live in tall buildings.
a. lane b. percent c. prediction d. transport
- SB The farms will have so they will be able to produce their own electricity.
a. robots b. solar panels c. assistants d. problems

- SB During the coronavirus , robot assistants worked in hospitals in Rwanda.
a. pandemic b. device c. collection d. project

El-Moasser Exercises

- You should wear a over your face to avoid coronavirus pandemic.
a. task b. mask c. label d. charge
- We can't travel to another country without a
a. passport b. solar panel c. tape measure d. label
- Sea may rise in the future.
a. level b. label c. table d. moral

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- Wind can be used to electricity.
a. produce b. reduce c. introduce d. feed
- Don't throw your old clothes. You can give them to the poor.
a. into b. away c. off d. on
- A : Have you heard Mo Salah ? B : Yes, he's the greatest footballer in Liverpool now.
a. off b. of c. from d. at

Definitions

- The is someone who helps a person do their job.
a. sailor b. assistant
c. player d. robotics engineer
- A is a machine that can make copies of whole objects.
a. 3D shop b. 3D printer c. 3D speed d. 3D market
- A is a machine or equipment for a particular job.
a. nail b. hammer c. device d. 3D printer
- A is a way to deal with or answer a puzzle or question.
a. temperature b. solution c. device d. problem

Guessing the meaning from the text

- When you find the size of something by using a ruler, this means that you it.
a. ride b. measure c. apply d. rise
- WB At the museum, you can see how the Ancient Egyptians lived using
a. solution b. virtual reality
c. temperature d. online learning

20. **WB** My mother is studying, but she doesn't visit the university.
She uses
a. equipment b. online learning c. electric buses d. cycle lane
21. **WB** The train does not use oil. It is
a. robotic b. heroic c. electric d. pandemic

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/opposite المضاد
popular شعبي - معروف	well-known / famous	unknown غير معروف
safe آمن	protected	dangerous / unsafe خطير / غير آمن
rise يرتفع	grow / increase	decline / decrease ينقل
check يفحص	examine / test	ignore يتجاهل
different مختلف	various	similar / alike متشابه
hurt يؤذي / يؤلم	damage	cure بعالج
ability القدرة	capability	inability عجز / عدم القدرة

Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
- ic	تكون (صفة)	Arabic اللغة العربية heroic بطولي robotic آلي
- able	تكون الصفة من الفعل	renewable متجدد
- ment	تكون الاسم من الفعل	equipment معدات
dis -	تكون العكس	disappear يختفي
- ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	importantly على نحو مهم
- er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	worker عامل player لاعب printer طابعة
- y	تكون الصفة	healthy صحي windy عاصف
- ant	تكون الاسم من الفعل	assistant مساعد

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- To make the noun of the verb "equip", we add the suffix
a. -ist b. -er c. -ness d. -ment
- Football is one of the most popular sports around the world. The synonym of the word "popular" is
a. unattractive b. well-known c. unknown d. busy
- Don't waste your money on objects you don't need. The antonym of the word "waste" is
a. lose b. rise c. ignore d. save
- To form the adjective of "hero", we add the suffix
a. - ern b. - ic c. - y d. - able
- We can make the opposite of "appear" by adding the prefix
a. im- b. ir- c. dis- d. un-

III Language

Remember تذكر

1. The future with "will" : (will) المستقبل باستخدام

Formation التكوين

1 **Affirmative Statements**
الجملة الخبرية
المثبتة

Subject + **will** + **(inf.)**
الفاعل سوف مصدر الفعل

ex. He will go to the zoo.

2 **Negative Statements**
الجملة الخبرية
المنفية

Subject + **will not / won't** + **(inf.)**
الفاعل won't مصدر الفعل

ex. He won't go to school tomorrow.

(a) Yes / No question :

(أ) السؤال بـ «هل» :

Will + subject + (inf.) +?
الفاعل مصدر الفعل

ex. - Will you play football with me ?

- Yes, I will.

- No, I won't.

3 Interrogative
صيغة الاستفهام

(B) Wh-question :

(ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

question word + will + subject + (inf.) +?
كلمة الاستفهام الفاعل مصدر الفعل

ex. - What will you eat for lunch ?

Usage الاستخدام

Prediction without evidence :

نستخدم (will + inf.) عند التنبؤ بأحداث في المستقبل (بدون دليل واضح على حدوث الشيء) تأتي معها كلمات مثل :

I'm sure	expect	think	hope	probable	probably	perhaps
أنا متأكد	يتوقع	يعتقد	يتمنى	محتمل	من المحتمل	ربما

هنا في هذه الجملة اتحدث عن رأيي في الطقس ولكن ليس معي دليل إذا ما كان الطقس سيكون لطيفاً أم لا.

ex.: - I think the weather will be nice later.

- By 2050, all of our energy will be renewable.

- E-sports are popular, but they won't be more popular than football.

كما يمكن ان تستخدم في الحالات الآتية

(1) Quick decision :

(أ) عند اتخاذ قرار سريع (لحظة الكلام) :

ex.: - I'm hungry. I'll have a sandwich.

- The phone is ringing, I'll answer it.

(2) Request :

(أ) عند طلب شيء من شخص :

ex.: Will you shut the door, please ?

(3) Offer :

(أ) عند عرض أو تقديم شيء :

ex.: I will help you with your homework.

(4) Facts in the future :

(أ) عند ذكر حقيقة في المستقبل :

ex.: Next year, I will be 17 years old.

2. Will/ won't be able to :

Expressing ability and inability in the future :

التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة في المستقبل :

Usage الاستخدام

- We use (will be able to) to talk about ability in the future.

نستخدم (will be able to) للتعبير عن القدرة على القيام بشئ ما في زمن المستقبل.

1 Affirmative
الإثباتSubject + will be able to + (inf.).
فاعل مصدر الفعل

ex. The farms will be able to make their own electricity.

2 Negative
النفيSubject + won't / be able to + (inf.).
فاعل will not to مصدر الفعل

ex. We won't be able to grow the food we need.

(a) Yes / No question :

(أ) السؤال بـ «هل» :

3 Interrogative
صيغة الاستفهامWill + subject + be able to + (inf.) ?
الفاعل مصدر الفعل

ex. Will we all be able to travel to space ?

• Yes, you will.

• No, you won't.

(B) Wh-question :

(ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

question word + will + subject + be able to + (inf.) ?
أداة استفهام فاعل مصدر الفعل

ex. What will you be able to do in the future ?

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB & WB Exercises

1. **SB** I think more people (ride) bikes in the future.
2. **SB** By 2100, 95 percent of people (lived) in tall buildings.
3. **WB** What (be) the weather like tomorrow?
4. **WB** How big (Cairo be) in 2050?
5. **WB** Talia speaks Japanese, so she (not be able) to apply for the job in Tokyo.
6. **WB** Hamid can't find his passport. He (be able) to travel to the business meeting in England tomorrow.
7. **WB** It's very windy, so we (not be) able to go to the beach today.
8. **SB** Nawal hopes that she will be able to (working) as an engineer when she's older.
9. **WB** They (not be) able to feed the monkeys tomorrow.

El-Moasser Exercises

10. The journey to Aswan will (took) only 12 hours.
11. What materials will the house (being) made of?
12. What will the houses (looking) like?
13. I think there (be) lots of solar panels in the future.
14. I think we will (to use) electric cars.
15. I think there (are) robot teachers in the future.
16. I think we (live) on the moon; it is my dream.
17. Adel has hurt his leg, so he (not able to) play football on Saturday.

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.
تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)
 Part 2 فى ملحق (Master Your Term)

1. Reading Corner

مهاراة القراءة

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 SB page 56 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 318 ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions:

- **Making inference** : عمل استنتاج

1. How do you think the new technology will help us?

- **Making prediction about upcoming events** : تنبؤ للأحداث المتوقعة

2. What will happen if we use floating farms on the sea in the future?

- People will have more and better food.

- **Summarising a text** : تلخيص نص

3. Summarize the first paragraph of the text in one sentence.

2. Writing Corner

مهاراة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على تنمية مهاراة الكتابة.

1. One of the biggest problems we will have in the future is how to feed the world.

١. واحدة من أكبر المشاكل التى سنواجهها فى المستقبل هى كيف نُطعم العالم.

2. We won't be able to grow the food we need on the farmland we have.

٢. لن نستطيع أن نزرع الطعام الذى نحتاجه على الأراضى الزراعية التى نملكها.

3. Floating farms on the sea is a type of technology that will help people to have more and better food.

٣. المزارع العائمة على البحر هى نمط من أنماط التكنولوجيا التى تساعد الناس أن تكون لديهم طعام أكثر وأفضل.

4. The farms will have solar panels to produce their own electricity.

٤. سوف تحتوى المزارع على ألواح شمسية لإنتاج الكهرباء الخاصة بها.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

levels - been - charge - be - wasted - Robot

1. There won't enough land to grow food in the future.
2. Have you heard of a shirt that can your mobile ?
3. assistants worked in hospitals in Rwanda.
4. Around one third of our food is every year.
5. Farmland is disappearing because sea are rising.

تدريب على مهارة الكتابة.
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين
ثم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

- Write a review of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:
"The technology of tomorrow"

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about making predictions and future ability :
توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن عمل تنبؤات والتعبير عن القدرة المستقبلية :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. What do you think people will ride in the future ? ١. ما وسيلة المواصلات التي تعتقد سوف يقوم الأشخاص بقيادتها في المستقبل ؟	- I think that more people will ride bikes in the future. - اعتقد أن عدد أكبر من الأشخاص سيقوم بقيادة الدراجات في المستقبل ؟
2. Do you think e-sports will become more popular than football ? ٢. هل تعتقد أن الرياضات الإلكترونية سوف تصبح أكثر انتشاراً من كرة القدم ؟	- No. I think they won't be more popular than football. - لا اعتقد أنهم لن يكونوا أكثر انتشاراً من كرة القدم.
3. What do you think we will be able to do at school in the future? ٣. ماذا تعتقد سوف يمكننا القيام به في المدرسة في المستقبل ؟	- I think that we'll be able to make 3D models. - اعتقد أننا سنكون قادرين على صنع نماذج ثلاثية الأبعاد.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Ali is asking Seif about a problem people may face in the future.

Ali : Can I ask you some questions, Seif.

Seif : Sure. (1)

Ali : What problems will we have in the future ?

Seif : (2)

Ali : The ice on mountains will melt ! (3)

Seif : That's a result of climate change.

Ali : Does that mean rising in temperatures of the earth ?

Seif : (4)

Ali : I think pollution is the cause of many problems.

Seif : (5)

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

have - future - past - comfortable - will - were

Our life now is different from our grandparents' life many years ago.

It (1) be also different from our grandchildren's life

in the (2) Our grandparents aren't able to enjoy our

(3) life and our grandchildren will (4)

a more comfortable one. It's the life tradition.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We add the suffix to get the noun of "assist".

a. -ant

b. -ment

c. -al

d. -ity

2. The education or teaching that you can have on the internet is called
 a. virtual reality b. online learning
 c. solar panel d. business meeting
3. A doctor checks people who are ill. The word "checks" is the same as
 a. ignores b. examines c. damages d. loses
4. It is safe to stay here. The antonym of the word "safe" is
 a. dangerous b. smart c. fat d. tasty
5. We can make the opposite of "appear" by adding the prefix ".....".
 a. im- b. dis- c. un- d. ir-
6. If you have a problem, you should find a
 a. challenge b. solution
 c. pollution d. population

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مكتب عند في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of how learning will be like in the future"



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

internship (n)	فترة تدريب	distance (n)	مسافة
marathon (n)	سباق الجري (ماراثون)	set up (phr. v)	ينشئ / يُقيم
professional qualification	مؤهل مهني	skill (n)	مهارة
goal(n)	هدف	dream(n)	حلم
monorail(n)	قطار إحدادي الخط (مونوريل)	cashless(adj)	غير نقدي
business districts(n)	منطقة الأعمال التجارية		

تنويه ▪ Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 ▪ Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
 ▪ Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية انظر نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 58 & 59 WB page 109

explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	achieve(d)	ينجز
goal (n)	هدف	train(ed)(v)	يتدرب
improve (d) (v)	يُحسن - يتحسن	blog(n)	مدونة إلكترونية
local (adj)	محلي	apartment (n)	شقة سكنية
online course	دورة تدريبية على الإنترنت	architect	مهندس معماري
professional (adj)	محترف	engineering (n)	الهندسة
qualification (n)	مؤهل	sports person (n)	لاعب رياضي
accountant (n)	محاسب	sports team (n)	فريق رياضي
ambitions (n)	طموحات	university (n)	الجامعة
dictionary(n)	قاموس-معجم	volunteer (n)	متطوع
charity(n)	جمعية خيرية	business person	صاحب أعمال تجارية

Lesson 4

SB page 60 WB page 110

African (adj)	أفريقي	public transport (n)	المواصلات العامة
capital (n)	العاصمة	rainwater (n)	ماء المطر

disability (n)	إعاقة	renewable (adj)	متجدد
disabled (adj)	من ذوي الهمم	sports stadium (n)	ستاد رياضي
link (ed) (v)	يربط / يربط	roofs (n)	أسقف
smart (adj)	ذكي	expert (n)	خبير
population (n)	السكان	wind turbine (n)	دوارة الرياح
east (n)	شرق		

New places

New Administrative Capital	Green City Kigali
مدينة العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة	المدينة الخضراء (في كيجالي عاصمة روندا)
Diamniado Lake City	The Gate Towers
مدينة ديامنيديو (في داكار عاصمة السنغال)	أبراج البوابة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التمرير الثالث
break يكسر - يتعطل	broke	broken
rewrite يعيد كتابة	rewrote	rewritten
redo يعيد القيام بـ	redid	redone
mean يعنى - يقصد	meant	meant
meet يقابل	met	met
throw يلقي	threw	thrown
drive يقود	drove	driven

تلويح هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات. وللمزيد من التعريفات انظر قاموس المعاصر اللغوي

Study these definitions

distance (n)	how much space is between two things	مسافة
internship (n)	when you work, often without pay, to learn about a job	فترة تدريب (الامتياز)
marathon (n)	a running race of around 42 kilometres	سباق الجرى (ماراثون)
professional qualification	something that shows you have special training to do a job	مؤهل مهني

set up (phr.v) to start a business

ينشئ / يُقيم

skill (n) the ability to do something well

مهارة

Collocations

get	a professional qualification يحصل على مؤهل مهني	meet new people	يقابل أشخاص جدد
	a good job يحصل على وظيفة جيدة	start a business	يبدأ مشروع تجارى
	an internship يحصل على فترة تدريب	an online course	يحضر دورة تدريبية على الإنترنت
join	a sports team ينضم لفريق رياضي	the marathon	يشارك في سباق العدو
make	a plan يُخطط	a job	يقوم بأداء وظيفة
set	a goal يُحدد هدف	an internship	يقوم بأداء فترة التدريب
give	a home to يعطى مأوى / مسكن لـ		

II Listening and Reading

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 58

Narrator : Taha

Taha : First of all,⁽¹⁾ I want to finish my education⁽²⁾ and do well in my exams. But when I leave school, I don't want to become a business person or an accountant.⁽³⁾ My dream is to become a professional⁽⁴⁾ basketball player. I've been playing basketball since I was six and I love it. I play for my local team. I practise every evening, because I want to improve⁽⁵⁾ my skills. My ambition⁽⁶⁾ is to join the national team⁽⁷⁾ and play for my country.



Check Vocabulary

(1) في البداية (2) تعليم (3) محاسب (4) محترف (5) يحسن - يطور (6) طموح (7) الفريق القومي

Narrator : Fatma

Fatma : My ambition is to become an architect. I think it would be amazing to look at buildings in a city that I had designed. I know it won't be easy, so I'm going to work very hard. I need to pass my exams to go to university. When I've finished university, I'm going to get an **internship**⁽⁸⁾ with a good **company**⁽⁹⁾.



Narrator : Khaled

Khaled : I love computers, so when I finish school, I'd like to work for an **IT**⁽¹⁰⁾ company. I'm going to do an online course to get some professional **qualifications**⁽¹¹⁾. That will mean that I can get a really good job one day. I could even **set up**⁽¹²⁾ my own business one day!



Narrator : Malak

Malak : I'm not sure what I want to do when I'm older, but I'd like to do something to help other people or to help protect the environment. I think it's important to get a good education so I'd like to go to university, but I'm also going to work as a volunteer. I think it will be a good way to **find out**⁽¹³⁾ more about what kind of job I want and to meet new people.



Check Vocabulary

(8) فترة تدريبية (9) شركة (10) تكنولوجيا المعلومات (11) مؤهلات (12) يؤسس (13) يكتشف

on Lesson 3 WB page 109

1

Injy : I'm Injy. I know which job I want to do. I'm going to study very hard for many years, but when I finish, I'll get a good job. I'm going to design some amazing buildings. They'll all use **renewable energy**⁽¹⁾.

Check Vocabulary

طاقة متجددة (1)

2

Hany : My name's Hany. I'm also going to study hard for many years. I want to learn how to help people who are sick. I think this is a really important job. I'll **probably**⁽²⁾ work in a hospital.

3

Hoda : I'm Hoda. When I was little, my **grandparents**⁽³⁾ bought me a toy. It could walk and talk! I'm going to do a job which will make toys like this even better in the future. I'm going to design **machines**⁽⁴⁾ that will walk and talk and also be able to help people do things.

4

Amir : I'm Amir. Before I take a job that **pays**⁽⁵⁾ me, I'm going to do something to help people. There are many people who do not have homes or enough to eat. I'm going to help a **charity**⁽⁶⁾ that makes these people's lives better.

Check Vocabulary

جمعية خيرية (6) يدفع (5) آلات (4) ايجاد (3) من المحتمل (2)

Videoscript

on Lesson 4 SB page 60

More than five years ago, the government⁽¹⁾ decided to build a **new capital**⁽²⁾ city in Egypt. It is going to be **located**⁽³⁾ east of Cairo. The government wanted to **create**⁽⁴⁾ this new city because the **population**⁽⁵⁾ of Egypt is very big, and it is growing. In the future, there will be more people who want to live in cities like Cairo, Alexandria and Giza.

The new city will have homes for⁽⁶⁾ more than six million people. These people will be able to visit parks, shops, an **opera house**⁽⁷⁾ and restaurants. There will also be jobs for these people. Lots of people will be able to work here because the government and many **businesses**⁽⁸⁾ will move here.

The new city is going to be a smart city. This means that it will use technology to do a lot of things, such as control **traffic**⁽⁹⁾, control the energy that people use and make the city a safe place to live.

Check Vocabulary

تعداد السكان (5) يخلق (4) تقع (3) العاصمة الجديدة (2) الحكومة (1)
حركة المرور (9) المشاريع التجارية (8) دار الأوبرا (7) موطن لـ (6)

People will be able to use this technology to do many everyday things. For example, if you want to buy something in the shops, you won't need money. You will be able to use your phone to pay for⁽¹⁰⁾ things. And if you want to get around⁽¹¹⁾ the city, you will be able to use a monorail⁽¹²⁾. A monorail is a train that often travels above the ground. Will you live and work in the new capital city when you are older?

Check Vocabulary

قطار أحادي الخط (مونوريل) (12) يتجول (11) يدفع لـ (10)

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 59



My goals for the future

By Hussein

I love maths and science, so when I leave preparatory school, I'd like to go to a technology school⁽¹⁾. My dream is to become a robotics⁽²⁾ engineer. Robotics engineers can create⁽³⁾ anything from machines⁽⁴⁾ for hospitals to robots that go into space. Technology schools help students with the skills that I will need to work well with this technology, although it won't be easy. You need to pass a test to get into a technical school.

Students who are successful often work in factories and businesses⁽⁵⁾ to get experience⁽⁶⁾, and often get jobs there when they leave school.

Sport is also a big part of my life. I like playing handball and football, but my favourite sport is running. I'm in a local team and we usually run 10 kilometres per day, but we're going to train to run longer distances⁽⁷⁾. I'd love to do the Egyptian marathon⁽⁸⁾ when I'm old enough.



Check Vocabulary

مشاريع تجارية (5) آلة (4) بينكر (3) علم الروبوتات (2) الصنعة (1)
سباق الجري الماراثون (8) مسافة (7) خبرة (6)

Finally, I want to do something to help other people. When I'm older, I'm going to work as a volunteer at weekends. There is a children's hospital near my apartment⁽⁹⁾. Volunteers go to the hospital to read to the children and play games with them. I think that would be a great thing to do, so I'm going to ask how I can help.

Check Vocabulary

شقة سكنية (9)

on Lesson 3 WB page 109

I'm good with numbers, so I'm going to get a good job with a business in Cairo. I'll probably do an internship first. But this is an important job. All businesses need to know how much money they have! That's why I'm going to be an accountant.

on Lesson 4 SB page 60

Our cities of the future

Africa's population⁽¹⁾ is growing quickly. Experts⁽²⁾ believe that by 2050, there will be twice⁽³⁾ as many people in Africa as there are today. Many African⁽⁴⁾ countries are planning exciting new cities, where people can live, work and study. What will these cities of the future be like?

Check Vocabulary

أفريقي (4) مرتين (3) الخبراء (2) عدد السكان (1)

New Administrative Capital⁽¹⁾

My country is planning for a new administrative capital in the desert, east of Cairo. The New Administrative Capital is going to have modern universities, offices and hotels. There will be a monorail⁽²⁾ passing through the business districts⁽³⁾.



Check Vocabulary

مناطق تجارية (3) قطار أحادي الخط مونوريل (2) العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة (1)

Electric trains will **link**⁽⁴⁾ the city to other cities around Egypt. The city is designed to work with smart technology. **Roofs**⁽⁵⁾ will be covered in solar panels. The shops will be **cashless**⁽⁶⁾, and they will have more green spaces to walk **round**⁽⁷⁾ in the city.

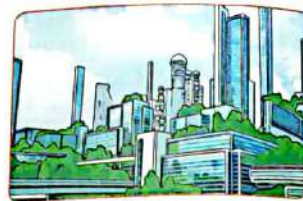
Dalia, 15, Egypt

Check Vocabulary

يُنْجِل (7) بدون نقود (6) أسقف (5) يربط بـ (4)

Diamniadio Lake City

My country is planning an amazing new city : Diamniadio Lake City. It will have modern apartments, offices, hotels, shopping centres and sports stadiums. There will be schools and universities. A new train will connect the new city with our capital city, Dakar, so people will be able to travel between the cities easily.



Oumar, 16, Senegal

The Green City Kigali

I live in the **capital**⁽¹⁾ city of Rwanda, Kigali. It's a beautiful city and a lot of people come here to live. Now, there is a plan to **create**⁽²⁾ a new part of the city : Green City Kigali.



The buildings will use **renewable**⁽³⁾ energy and **reuse**⁽⁴⁾ **rainwater**⁽⁵⁾. There will be **cycle lanes**⁽⁶⁾ and good public transport, but it will also be easy to walk around the city. I think there will be lots of cities like this in Africa one day.

Alice, 15, Rwanda

Check Vocabulary

ممر الدراجات (6) ماء المطر (5) يعيد استخدام (4) مُتجدد (3) يُنشئ (2) العاصمة (1)

on Lesson 4 WB page 110

Cities of the future

What will cities be like in the future ? Architects are already planning how city life could be better for all of us. Here are some of their ideas.



Cities need water, but at the moment, most rainwater is **taken away from**⁽¹⁾ our cities. In the future, cities will have **areas**⁽²⁾ which will **collect**⁽³⁾ water when it rains. Then people will be able to use the water for plants, cleaning, etc.

Cities will have houses for many people, but they will also have big parks. The trees and other plants will give us clean air, and also **give a home to**⁽⁴⁾ animals and birds. There will also be city farms. People will grow their own food in gardens on **roofs**⁽⁵⁾.

The city will only use renewable energy. This won't come from outside the city, but will be made by solar panels and **wind turbines**⁽⁶⁾ on buildings.

Transport will be very fast, safe and cheap. Cars will be driverless. That means there will be more **space**⁽⁷⁾ for people to walk or **cycle**⁽⁸⁾. People will be healthier, and life will be easier for people with **disabilities**⁽⁹⁾.

Check Vocabulary

أسطح / أسقف (5) يكون مأوى لـ (4) يجمع (3) مناطق (2) يُؤخذ بعيداً عن (1) إعاقه (9) يقود دراجة (8) فراغ (7) دائرة الرياح (6)

General Notes on Reading & Listening

Professional - amateur

* professional

مُحترف (يلعب من أجل المال)

ex.: Mo Salah is a **professional** footballer. He gets the most money among other players.

* amateur

هاو (يلعب من أجل المتعة)

ex.: Amateur players don't get money. They play for fun.

2 set up - set for

* set up

ex.: John set up a new business in Africa in 2000.

* set for

ex.: He set for a short trip in Alaska last week.

يقيم - يؤسس - يشيد

يبدأ رحلة

Important Expressions & Prepositions

work as	يعمل كـ	explore space	يستكشف الفضاء
get on	يركب (وسيلة مواصلات)	save someone's life	ينقذ حياة شخص
do the Egyptian marathon	يشارك في الماراثون المصري	grow quickly	ينمو / يزداد بسرعة
at weekends	في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع	travel from... to...	يسافر من... إلى...
take... away from	أأخذ... بعيداً عن	burn fossil fuels for	يحرق الوقود الحفري لـ
goals for the future	أهداف مستقبلية	on roofs	على أسطح المباني
twice as many people	ضعف عدد السكان	walk around	يتجول حول
come from outside	يأتي من الخارج	run longer distances	يجري لمسافات أطول
work without pay	يعمل بدون مقابل / أجر	set up business	يؤسس شركة / أعمال تجارية
city life	حياة المدينة	throw away	يلقي / يتخلص من

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- Many young people take a/an in a business to learn about the job.
a. entrance b. distance c. internship d. marathon
- I am going to do an online course to get some professional
a. apartments b. qualifications c. gates d. distances
- Hany is training daily so that he can run longer
a. entrances b. distances c. adventures d. towers

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

- SB It is important to have goals and for the future.
a. ambitions b. weekends c. pollution d. capitals

- SB Electric trains will the city to other cities around Egypt.
a. cycle b. move c. link d. produce

- WB Fares designed a game, but then his computer broke, so he has to it.
a. repaint b. redo c. reuse d. rewrite

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

El-Moasser Exercises

- My job is a robotics engineer.
a. medicine b. skill c. space d. dream
- Yasser works with numbers. He wants to be a/an
a. accountant b. volunteer c. cook d. dentist
- Don't throw these plastic bottles away, we can them.
a. redo b. reuse c. replay d. recontrol

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- In the past, footballers were, but now they are paid.
a. amateur b. professional c. crowded d. smart
- Astronauts travel in spaceships to space.
a. build b. invent c. invite d. explore
- What time are we going to set a voyage in the sea?
a. up b. for c. into d. off
- Don't get the bus while it is moving.
a. away b. out c. off d. of
- My uncle, Omar, worked a teacher of English before he died.
a. for b. away c. on d. as

Definitions

- A/An is a running race of around 42 kilometres.
a. athletics b. marathon c. canoe d. goal
- To means to start a business.
a. set down b. set up c. set off d. set in
- Something that shows you have special training to do a job is called a professional
a. degree b. document c. marathon d. qualification
- A/An means when you work, often without pay, to learn about a job.
a. skill b. entrance c. internship d. distance

Guessing the meaning from the text

19. When you travel around a place in order to learn about it. This means you it.
a. create b. explore c. achieve d. set up
20. When you don't get any money for your work. This means you work as a/an
a. engineer b. architect c. volunteer d. trainer
21. When someone can't use a part of their body. This means he/she is
a. professional b. disabled c. amateur d. renewable

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/Opposite المضاد
improve	يحسن	damage يدمر
professional	محترف	amateur هاو
set up	يؤسس	finish / stop ينهي / يوقف
online	متصل بالإنترنت	offline غير متصل
protect	يحمي	endanger يتعرض للخطر
cheap	رخيص	expensive غالي الثمن
succeed	ينجح	fail يفشل
leave	يغادر	arrive / come يصل / يأتي
modern	حديث	old / ancient قديم / عتيق
ask	يسأل - يطلب	give / reply يعطي / يرد
	develop	
	expert	
	start / organize	
	connected to the internet	
	defend / guard	
	inexpensive	
	pass / achieve	
	go	
	new / up-to-date	
	inquire	

Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples امثلة
mono-	تستخدم بمعنى إحدى	monorail قطار إحدى الخط
re-	يقوم بأداء الفعل مرة ثانية	rewrite يعيد كتابة replay يعيد لعب - يذيع شي مسجل reuse يعيد استخدام redo يعيد فعل شي

	تعطي عكس المعنى	disability إعاقة
dis-	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	professional احترافي / مهني
-al	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	accountant محاسب
-ant	تعطي عكس المعنى	driverless بدون سائق
-less		cashless غير نقدي

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- We add the prefix "....." to verbs to mean do again.
a. im- b. ir- c. un- d. re-
- The antonym of the word "professional" is
a. qualified b. amateur
c. incredible d. fantastic
- My friend Ali is online now. That means he is now.
a. staying home b. connected to the internet
c. walking d. leaving home
- We add the suffix "....." to form the noun of "account".
a. -ship b. -ment c. -ant d. -less
- The prefix gives the opposite of the word "ability".
a. im- b. dis- c. ir- d. re-
- New Alamein City is a beautiful, modern city. The synonym of the word "modern" is
a. ancient b. new c. old d. fantastic
- WB** I can't read your writing, Azza. Please, can you it, so it is clearer?
a. recycle b. replay c. rewrite d. remake
- WB** They had to stop the football match because it was raining. They have to it next week.
a. replay b. reuse c. rewrite d. redo

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.
للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)
Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

تنويه

1. Reading Corner

مهاراة القراءة

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 3 SB page 59 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 336 ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Making inference :** عمل استنتاج
1. How can you infer from the text that Hussien wants to be a robotics engineer ?

- **Summarising a text :** تلخيص نص
2. Summarise the last paragraph of the passage in your own words.

- **Making prediction about upcoming events :** تنبؤ للأحداث المتوقعة
3. What is Hussien going to work when he becomes older ?
- He is going to work as a volunteer at weekends.

2. Writing Corner

مهاراة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

عمل تساعدك على تنمية مهارة الكتابة.

1. I love maths and science, so I'd like to go to university to study engineering.
أ. أحب الرياضيات والعلوم لذلك أحب أن أذهب للجامعة لدراسة الهندسة.
2. My dream is to become a robotics engineer.
ب. حلمي هو أن أصبح مهندساً للروبوتات.
3. I should work hard to achieve my goal.
ج. يجب علي أن أعمل بجد لكي أحقق هدفي.
4. It would be amazing to make something that could explore space or help save someone's life.
د. من المدهش عمل شيء يستطيع استكشاف الفضاء أو ينقذ حياة شخص ما.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete :

goals - local - but - part - playing - distances

1. Sport is a big of my life.
2. I like handball and football.
3. I'm in a team and we meet every week.
4. I'm training so that I can run longer
5. It's important to have and ambitions.

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a review of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"Your goals for the future"

3. Speaking Corner

مهاراة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about discussing personal goals :
توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن مناقشة الاهداف الشخصية :

Questions	Answers
1. What's your dream job ? أ. ما هي وظيفة أحلامك ؟	- My dream job is to be a doctor. - وظيفة أحلامي هي أن أكون طبيب.
2. What can you do to get your dream job ? ب. ماذا تستطيع فعله لتصل لوظيفة أحلامك ؟	- I can set up my goals first, and work hard to get them. - أستطيع تحديد أهدافي أولاً وأعمل باجتهاد لأصل إليهم.
3. What are your other goals ? ج. ما هي أهدافك الأخرى ؟	- To work as a volunteer at weekends and help other people. - أن أعمل متطوع في العطلات وأساعد الآخرين.
4. What can you do to achieve them ? د. ماذا تستطيع فعله لتحقيق تلك الاهداف ؟	- I will join a charity that helps people. - سوف انضم لجمعية خيرية تساعد الأشخاص.

General Exercises

• Understand • Apply • Create

LESSONS 3 & 4

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Mohamed is at the chemist's to buy some medicines for his father.
Mohamed : Good evening, doctor. Can I have these medicines, please ?

A chemist : Good evening. (1) Let me see the prescription *روشتة*.

Mohamed : (2) Do you have all of them ?

A chemist : (3) The last medicine isn't available today.

Mohamed : (4) ?

A chemist : It will be available tomorrow afternoon.

Mohamed : (5) ?

A chemist : Sorry. We don't have delivery services.

Mohamed : Never mind. I'll come tomorrow to get it.

A chemist : Great. Here is the rest of the medicines.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. means how much space is between two things.

- a. Distance b. Apartment c. Accident d. Internship

2. To form the noun of the verb "account", we use the suffix

- a. -ive b. -able c. -ment d. -ant

3. Blood donation is very important, it may someone's life.

- a. live b. save c. accuse d. survive

4. She has the ability to create nice shapes with paints. The synonym of the word "create" is to

- a. explore b. discover c. invent d. invite

5. He managed to set up his own business after graduation. The antonym of "set up" is

- a. arrive b. protect c. fail d. finish

6. To get the antonym of the noun "ability", we use the prefix

- a. dis- b. il- c. re- d. en-

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I think people (able to) live on the moon in the future.

2. It has been said that there (are) houses under the sea water in the future.

3. (you be able to) travel into space in the future ?

4. Employees will be able (did) their work from home in the future.

5. Astronauts expect that they (are able to land) on Mars in the future.

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

عجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of your dream job".

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

definitely (adv)	بال تأكيد	passenger (n)	راكب / مسافر
likely (adj) (adv)	مُحتمل / وارد	road signs (n)	إشارات الطريق
driverless (adj)	ذاتي القيادة (بدون سائق)	controls (n)	مفاتيح التحكم
drone (n)	طائرة بدون طيار	law (n)	القانون
engine (n)	مُحرك	device (n)	جهاز
flying car (n)	السيارة الطائرة		

تلميح Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary لخصية أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 61 WB page 111

agree (d) (v)	يوافق	positive (adj)	إيجابي
disagree (d) (v)	يرفض	smart apartments	شقق سكنية ذكية
negative (adj)	سلبى	completely (adv)	تماماً / كلياً
perhaps (adv)	ربما	match (ed) (v)	يناسب / يلائم

Lesson 6

SB page 62 WB page 112

answer (n)	حل	introduce (d) (v)	يقدم
busier (adj)	أكثر ازدحاماً	land (ed) (v)	يهبط
helicopter (n)	طائرة مروحية	noisy (adj)	مزعج
In fact,	في الحقيقة	test (ed) (v), (n)	بُحْث / اختبار
effect(ed)(v)	يؤثر على	develop (ed) (v)	يطور
company(n)	شركة	race(n)	سباق

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
hear يسمع	heard	heard
think يعتقد	thought	thought

speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken
fly يطير	flew	flown

تلميح هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.
 وللمزيد من التعريفات انظر قاموس المعاصر اللغوي

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

definitely	certainly, without doubt	بال تأكيد
law	the rules that people in a country or place must follow	قانون
likely	probably going to happen or probably true	محتمل / وارد
probably	almost certain	من المحتمل
control	the ability to make something do what you want	يتحكم في

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

make	a law يصدر قانون	do	testing يقوم بإجراء اختبارات
	less pollution يسبب تلوث أقل		
	sure يتأكد		

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 61

Amal : What do you think our city will be like in 2050, Huda?
 Huda : Hi Amal ... Well, I think there will definitely be more people in our city.
 Amal : So will there be lots of smart new apartments⁽¹⁾ in the city centre for them to live in? Huda: Hmm... I'm not sure.
 Amal : Really?⁽²⁾ Why not?
 Huda : There might be some new apartments in the city centre,⁽³⁾ but these could be very expensive.
 Amal : So where will everyone live?

Check Vocabulary

وسط المدينة (3) حقاً (2) شقق (1)

- Huda : I think there will **probably**⁽⁴⁾ be new apartments around the city.
 Amal : And what about **shops**⁽⁵⁾ and **restaurants**?⁽⁶⁾
 Huda : Yes, I'm sure that there will be more of these. **Perhaps**⁽⁷⁾ there will be a new **shopping centre**,⁽⁸⁾ too.
 Amal : And what will the city **look like**?⁽⁹⁾ Will there be more **tall buildings**?⁽¹⁰⁾
 Huda : Yes, I think that's very likely. Tall buildings are a good idea in cities because there isn't much land to build on.
 Amal : But with tall buildings, a new shopping centre and restaurants, our city could look **completely**⁽¹¹⁾ different.
 Huda : I don't think so. There are lots of **historic**⁽¹²⁾ buildings in the city, and it's important to protect these.

Check Vocabulary

(4) من المحتمل	(5) محلات تجارية	(6) مطاعم	(7) ربما	(8) مركز تجاري
(9) تشبه	(10) مبان شاهقة	(11) تماماً - بالكلية	(12) تاريخي	

on Lesson 5 SB page 111

- Aya : Look at this **quiz**⁽¹⁾ about the future? Shall we do it, Lina?
 Lina : OK, Aya. What's the first question?
 Aya : One. In the future, everyone will go to university. Nobody will **leave school**⁽²⁾ at 18. What do you think?
 Lina : I don't think so. Some people will find university too difficult. They will learn different **skills**⁽³⁾ **instead**.⁽⁴⁾
 Aya : Yes, I **agree**.⁽⁵⁾ Two. All cars will be driverless. Nobody will be able to drive their own car any more.
 Lina : I'm not sure. There will **definitely**⁽⁶⁾ be driverless cars, but there will probably be **normal**⁽⁷⁾ cars too. What do you think?
 Aya : Yes, I agree. There might be a few normal cars that important people can drive. Last question: All energy will be from the sun.
 Lina : I think that's very **likely**,⁽⁸⁾ don't you?
 Aya : Well, I'm sure that we'll all use renewable energy. But perhaps there will be other **forms of energy**,⁽⁹⁾ such as wind.

Check Vocabulary

(1) اختبار قصير	(2) ينهي الدراسة	(3) مهارات	(4) بدلاً من	(5) يوافق
(6) بالتأكيد	(7) طبيعي	(8) من المحتمل	(9) أشكال الطاقة	

II Listening and Reading

Reading

on Lesson 6 SB page 62

A technology that will change our lives

By Munir Osman

How will driverless improve our lives ?

In future, **driverless**⁽¹⁾ cars will change all of our lives. We will be able to travel anywhere without **touching**⁽²⁾ the **controls**⁽³⁾ or even looking at the road !

Driverless cars will also be better for the environment because they will be electric.

What problems do we still need solutions for ?

However, there are still some problems. Car companies will have to **do lots of testing**⁽⁴⁾ to **make sure**⁽⁵⁾ that the cars are **completely**⁽⁶⁾ safe. We will also have to make new laws and we might even have to change some of our **road signs**⁽⁷⁾ so that the cars computers can read them.

When will driverless cars be on our roads ?

So, when will we be able to travel in driverless cars ? Some experts believe that we will have to wait until 2030 **at the earliest**⁽⁸⁾. Others think that driverless cars will be here much sooner, but we may still need people at the controls **to begin with**⁽⁹⁾.

How does the writer feel about driverless cars ?

It's **impossible**⁽¹⁰⁾ to know who is correct, but we can be sure of one thing : driverless cars will be part of our future. I'm **looking forward to**⁽¹¹⁾ taking my first journey in one.



Check Vocabulary

(1) ذاتي القيادة	(2) يلمس	(3) مفاتيح التحكم	(4) يقوم بإجراء العديد من الاختبارات	(5) يتأكد
(6) تماماً	(7) إشارات الطريق	(8) على أقرب تقدير	(9) بشكل مبدئي	(10) مستحيل
			(11) يتطلع إلى	

• on Lesson 6 WB page 112

Flying cars

For this week's project, I researched⁽¹⁾ flying cars⁽²⁾. We now have the technology⁽³⁾ that will be able to make flying cars. In fact,⁽⁴⁾ engineers think that flying cars will be more like helicopters⁽⁵⁾ than planes. That is because helicopters can take off⁽⁶⁾ from small areas in cities. They will use electricity, because electric engines⁽⁷⁾ are not very noisy⁽⁸⁾.



Although there are difficulties⁽⁹⁾, flying cars might be the answer⁽¹⁰⁾ to a lot of problems. Cities are becoming busier⁽¹¹⁾ and traffic on the ground is becoming worse. If there were flying cars, people could fly to work from far away. They would not have to live in big cities. Flying cars could land⁽¹²⁾ on the roofs of buildings, and that would mean more space in the streets for people to enjoy. Electric flying cars would make less pollution⁽¹³⁾, too.

Already, a company in Germany has developed a flying taxi. It will be able to carry one passenger⁽¹⁴⁾ and might start flying in 2022. However, journeys⁽¹⁵⁾ will be very expensive. People also worry⁽¹⁶⁾ that flying cars might not be very safe. If there were a lot of flying cars above a city, it could be very dangerous! For example⁽¹⁷⁾, what would they do in bad weather, or if there were a lot of birds? And what about planes?

In conclusion⁽¹⁸⁾, we already have the technology to make drones⁽¹⁹⁾ and other things that can fly. I think that it's very likely we will see flying cars in the future.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يُجرى أبحاث على	(2) السيارة الطائرة	(3) تكنولوجيا	(4) في الحقيقة	(5) طائرة مروحية
(6) تُفَاع	(7) محرك	(8) مزعج	(9) صعوبة	(10) حل
(11) أكثر ازدحاماً	(12) يهبط	(13) يُسبب تلوث أقل	(14) راكب / مسافر	(15) رحلة
(16) يقلق	(17) على سبيل المثال	(18) الخلاصة	(19) طائرة بدون طيار	

• on Lesson 7 SB page 63

In the future, I think there will be new types of transport so that we will be able to travel everywhere faster. This means we will be able to save time and do more things in a day.

Magda

It's important to help protect the environment, but we won't be able to get all of our energy from solar farms and wind turbines for many years. We will need to build more of them. We will also need more cycle lanes in cities so people will be able to travel without using energy at all.

Fares

I'm sure that in the future, we will be able to send more spacecraft into space. But the planets in our solar system are too far away for people to travel to, so astronauts won't be able to visit them.

Nasser

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 The suffix "- less"

للحظ : المقطع less - يستخدم بمعنى «بدون»

- driverless بدون سائق
- homeless بدون مأوى
- hopeless يائس
- helpless عاجز

2 control - the controls

- * control (led) (v)

يتحكم بـ / يسيطر على

ex.: You should control everything you do.

- * controls (n)

مفاتيح التحكم (سيارة - جهاز ... الخ)

ex.: You should know how to use the controls of this machine.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

follow rules	يتبع قواعد	until 2030	حتى سنة ٢٠٣٠
at the earliest	على أقرب تقدير	all our lives	طوال حياتنا
in conclusion	الخلاصة	feel about	يشعر تجاه
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	better for	أفضل لـ

take off	تُقلع (الطائرة)	on roads	على الطرق
to begin with	بشكل مبدئي	centre of the city	وسط المدينة
the city will be like	سوف تبدو المدينة	look completely different	يبدو مختلف تمامًا

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- You can drive a car using the
a. drones b. internships c. controls d. helicopters
- The government will make new to save people's life in Egypt.
a. controls b. laws c. problems d. predictions
- WB** We already have the technology to make and other things that can fly.
a. drones b. engines c. roofs d. floors

SB and WB Exercises

- SB** Car companies will have to do lots of testing to make sure that the cars are safe.
a. probably b. likely c. lately d. completely
- SB** Driverless cars will be better for the environment because they will be
a. impossible b. electric c. high d. unsafe
- WB** When you touch the car controls, you want to the car.
a. damage b. drive c. describe d. design
- WB** People also that flying cars might not be very safe.
a. hurry b. worry c. develop d. stay
- WB** Helicopters can off from small areas in cities.
a. make b. take c. plan d. do
- WB** Electric flying cars would make less
a. journey b. environment c. pollution d. population

El-Moasser Exercises

- That man is my uncle. Come with me and I'll you to him.
a. produce b. introduce c. break d. pass

- That road means to turn left.
a. transport b. sign c. service d. truck
- Flying cars might be the to a lot of problems.
a. project b. answer c. pollution d. space

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- sure that we have enough money for the sandwiches.
a. Make b. Do c. Give d. Take
- The government always laws to control the society المجتمع.
a. does b. makes c. gets d. achieves

Definitions

- The is the rules that people in a country or place must follow.
a. engine b. law c. pollution d. company
- means almost certain.
a. Strongly b. Definitely c. Probably d. Likely
- means certainly, without doubt.
a. Definitely b. Likely c. Probably d. Slightly
- means probably going to happen or probably true.
a. Slightly b. Likely c. Probably d. Definitely

Guessing the meaning

- My English is improving. "Improving" means getting
a. worse b. better c. up d. around
- WB** Cities are becoming and traffic on the ground is becoming worse.
a. quieter b. healthier c. busier d. better

Vocabulary Study :

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
impossible مستحيل	unbelievable	possible ممكن
difference اختلاف / فرق	variety	similarity تشابه
definitely بالتأكيد	certainly	probably من المحتمل
agree يوافق	accept	disagree / refuse / reject يرفض
land يهبط	come down	take off تُقلع

Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples امثلة
dis -	تعطي عكس المعنى	disagree يرفض
im -	تعطي عكس المعنى	impossible مستحيل
-y	تكون صفة من اسم	noisy صاخب
-ly	تكون الظرف	completely تماماً probably من المحتمل
-less	تعطي معنى بدون	driverless بدون سائق

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- You can make an adjective from the noun "noise" by adding the suffix ".....".
a. -ful b. -er c. -y d. -ly
- The prefix "....." can form the antonym of the word "possible".
a. un- b. dis- c. im- d. il-
- We add the prefix at the beginning of the word "agree" to get the antonym of it.
a. il- b. ir- c. in- d. dis-
- The suffix can be used to get the adverb from the word "slight".
a. -ful b. -able c. -ment d. -ly
- The word "accept" is the synonym of the word ".....".
a. refuse b. agree c. disagree d. come down
- The suffix means 'without'.
a. -ful b. -ly c. -ness d. -less

Stop here!



- اختبار مصغر للأزهر الشريف.
- طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.
للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)
Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

مهارة القراءة

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 WB page 112 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 352 ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Determining the main idea تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية

- The best title for the passage is
a. flying planes b. flying rockets
c. flying cars d. flying bikes

B. Answer the following questions :

- Making inference عمل استنتاج

- Why do you think that engineers think that flying cars will be more like helicopters than planes ?

- Summarising a text تلخيص نص

- Summarise the last paragraph of the passage in your own words.

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على تلمية مهارة الكتابة.

- Driverless cars are a type of technology that will change our lives.
١. السيارات ذاتية القيادة (بدون سائق) هي نمط من أنماط التكنولوجيا اننى سوف تغير حياتنا.
- We will be able to travel anywhere without touching the controls.
٢. سنكون قادرين على السفر إلى أى مكان بدون لمس أجهزة التحكم.
- Driverless cars will be better for the environment because they will be electric.
٣. السيارات ذاتية القيادة (بدون سائق) ستكون أفضل للبيئة لأنها ستكون كهربائية.
- Some experts think that driverless cars will be ready in 2030.
٤. يعتقد بعض الخبراء أن السيارات ذاتية القيادة (بدون سائق) ستكون جاهزة في عام ٢٠٣٠.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

able - will - dream - were - doesn't - protect

1. When driverless cars be ready on our roads ?
2. In the future, we won't be to fly.
3. He want to be a business person.
4. Malak would like to help the environment.
5. Taha's is to be a professional sports person.

تدريب
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين
قد بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

- Write a review of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:
"Flying cars"

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Expressing certainty and uncertainty about the future :
التعبير عن التأكد وعدم التأكد عن المستقبل :

Certainty التأكد

- I think that's very likely.
أنا أعتقد أن هذا محتمل جداً
- I'm sure that
أنا متأكد أن
- There will definitely be
من المؤكد أنه سيكون هناك
- What do you think your city will
be like in 2050 ?
في رأيك كيف ستبدو مدينتك في عام ٢٠٥٠ ؟

Uncertainty وعدم التأكد

- I don't think so.
أنا لا أعتقد ذلك.
- I'm not sure.
أنا غير متأكد.
- There will probably be
من المحتمل أنه سيكون هناك
- Perhaps there will be
ربما سيكون هناك
- There might be
من المحتمل أنه سيكون هناك
- I think there will definitely be
more tall buildings.
أعتقد أنه من المؤكد أنه سيكون هناك مباني
عالية أكثر.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 5 & 6

Understand Apply Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Hamza is late and asks his father to drive him to school.

Hamza : Good morning, dad. Can you do me a favour ?

Father : Good morning, Hamza. (1)

Hamza : I have an exam and I'm late to school. (2)

Father : Sure. (3) ?

Hamza : I'll be ready in ten minutes. (4) ?

Father : I'm ready now. I will get the car ready and wait for you.

Hamza : (5) You are really great.

Father : What time should you be at school ?

Hamza : At 8 o'clock.

Father : That's great. We'll be on time.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

sure - reuse - by - pollute - into - polluted

We must keep our environment clean to live a healthy life. We
shouldn't (1) it by throwing any chemical wastes
(2) rivers and seas. We must (3) rainwater and
make (4) that we save all kinds of energy.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. means probably going to happen or probably true.
a. Impossibly b. Definitely c. Certainly d. Likely
2. Every clue has a/an to make it done.
a. answer b. fire c. test d. law

3. It's an amazing offer. I can't refuse it. The synonym of the word "refuse" is

- a. gain b. beat c. accept d. reject

4. To get the opposite meaning of the word "driver", we add the suffix

- a. -tion b. -y c. -less d. -in

5. We add the prefix to get the opposite of the word "possible".

- a. ir- b. dis- c. im- d. un-

6. I can't find the difference between the twins. The antonym of the word "difference" is

- a. variety b. similarity c. ability d. challenge

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- Do you think al-Ahly will be able to (won) the World Cup for Clubs in the future ?
- Nader hopes that he (able to) travel abroad when he graduates.
- What (you able to) do when you leave school ?
- I don't think that their company will be able to (competing) in this international trade.
- What do you think robots will be able (doing) in 2050 ?

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

عبارات عن الحياة المستقبلية

"A review of future homes"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



.....

.....

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتي

ممتاز
جيد جدا
جيد
غير جيد

If you got , you need to revise the unit again on the next page.
فم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على  غير جيد ، فم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

At the end of this unit, I will be able to في نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادرًا على أن

1 Learn important vocabulary اتعلم مفردات لغوية هامة

- | | |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> renewable energy | <input type="checkbox"/> challenges |
| <input type="checkbox"/> cycle lanes | <input type="checkbox"/> e-sports players |
| <input type="checkbox"/> floating farms | <input type="checkbox"/> robot assistant |
| <input type="checkbox"/> online learning | <input type="checkbox"/> driverless cars |

2 Read and write sentences using (will/won't + inf. - will / won't be able to + inf.) اقرأ واكتب جمل عن التنبؤات في المستقبل والتحدث عن المقدرة في المستقبل.

- ☐ The weather will be hot tomorrow.
- ☐ Salma will be able to achieve her goals in the future.
- ☐ Nawal hopes that she will work as an engineer when she is older.
- ☐ By 2010, 95 percent of people will live in tall buildings.

3 Talk about making prediction, future ability and personal goals اتحدث عن عمل تنبؤ و القدرة المستقبلية والأهداف الشخصية.

- ☐ All energy will be renewable by 2050.
- ☐ Driverless cars will be easier and better for the environment.
- ☐ I don't think we'll be able to play games in our lessons.
- ☐ My dream job is to be a robotics engineer.

Master your term جزء للمتابعة في كراسة المعاصر .
جزء للمتابعة الشهرية بعد كل ثلاث وحدات .

لمزيد من التدريبات



Review

on unit 12

SB page 63

WB page 113

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
ممرات الدراجات علم الروبوتات متجدد تنبؤات المزارع الصائمة أرض زراعية ألواح شمسية أجهزة أقنعة أهداف يحسن يبدع فترة تدريب يستكشف سيارات بدون سائق قوانين سيارات طائرة طائرات بدون طيار محركات كهربائية	<p>1. (will / won't) + inf. لعمل تنبؤات في المستقبل. ex.: By 2025, all of our energy will be renewable. ex.: E-sports won't be popular than football.</p> <p>2. (will/won't) be able to + inf. للتحدث عن القدرة في المستقبل. ex.: Scientists will be able to find solutions to some problems. ex.: We won't be able to grow food we need on the farmland we have.</p> <p>3. (be) going to + inf. ex.: He is going to work as a volunteer.</p>	<p>1. Making prediction and talking about future ability. 1. What do you think people will use in the future? - I think people will use driverless cars in the future. 2. What do you think you will be able to do at school in the future? - I think we will be able to make 3D models.</p> <p>2. Discussing personal goals : 1. What's your dream job? - My dream is to be an astronaut. 2. What can you do to get your dream job? - I can study well and work hard.</p> <p>3. Expressing certainty and uncertainty about the future : * What do you think our city will be like in 2050? - I think there will definitely be more tall buildings.</p>

Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة
معالجة جديدة لأنماط وأشكال مختلفة
لمهارات الكتابة

A (review / biography / short story)

(Floating farms / Future technology / Your dream job / Driverless cars)

مجموعة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لتنمية مهارة الكتابة



Brainstorming

- How do you think future technology will help people?
- What is your dream job?
- How can you achieve your goals?
- What are your other goals?



Vocabulary

- robotics	- e-sports players	- measure
- solution	- robot assistant	- solar panels
- devices	- floating farms	- feed
- create	- public transport	- sea levels
- goals	- driverless cars	- predictions
- laws		- smart label

مفردات لغوية مساعدة



Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتركيب مساعدة

- I think	- There will definitely be
- I'm going to work as	- There might be
- My dream job is	- I'm sure
	- There will probably be



Practise

تدرب على مهارة الكتابة

Write a review of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"Future technology"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضوع اختبار) في كل وحدة والتي تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع تدريبات الوحدة و كل التدريبات الخاصة بالملحق.

Unit 12

Vocabulary

farmland	أرض زراعية	improve	يحسن
solution	حل	experts	خبراء
solar panels	ألواح شمسية	driverless cars	سيارات بدون سائق
label	ملصق	laws	قوانين
e-sports players	لاعبى الرياضات الإلكترونية	create	يُبدع
taste	يتذوق	explore	يستكشف
goals	أهداف	flying cars	سيارات طائرة

2. Language

- They will collect⁽¹⁾ and reuse rainwater.
- People will be able to⁽²⁾ use the water for plants.
- They won't be able to feed⁽³⁾ the chickens.
- Youssef is going to be⁽⁴⁾ a doctor.
- Why will⁽⁵⁾ Ali have to work hard?

نولاد لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

Check Language

- (will) (will) في زمن المستقبل البسيط باستخدام
- (will be able to) (will be able to) القدرة في المستقبل باستخدام
- (will be able to) (will be able to) يأتي الفعل بعدها في صيغة المصدر
- (be going to) (be going to) فعل خط مستقبلي باستخدام
- (will) (will) استهامة في زمن المستقبل باستخدام

وتألف لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار

3. Speaking

- Making prediction and personal goals.

عمل تنبؤ ومناقشة الأهداف الشخصية.

Questions	Answers
1. Do you think that all energy will be renewable by 2050?	- Yes, I think so.
2. What is your dream job?	- My dream job is to be a scientist.
3. What can you do to achieve your goals?	- I can work hard to achieve them.

Test

on Unit 12

- Understand
- Apply
- Create

A. Language Functions

1. Finish the following dialogue :

Walid wants to borrow his sister's calculator.

Walid : Hi, Mona. I want to borrow your calculator tomorrow morning.

Mona : Hi, Walid. (1)

Walid : It is for tomorrow morning only because I have an exam.

Mona : Where is your calculator?

Walid : (2) I asked my father to buy me another one, but he refused. (3)

Mona : Yes, I will give it to you. (4)

Walid : I will bring it back tomorrow at 11 a.m. after the exam. You are the best sister.

Mona : (5)

Walid : I promise you I won't forget it at school.

Mona : OK. I wish you the best for your exam.

B. Reading Comprehension

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

busy – should – online – disconnected – improve – improves

To get a good job isn't an easy thing. You have to (1) your skills. You (2) do some courses in English and computer. If you are (3) , you can do them (4) It's very important to take it seriously.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Over the past thirty-five years, computers and the internet have become more and more important to us. In fact, depending on computer technology continues to grow every day. We seem to use computers for almost everything these days, in shopping, driving our car or, communicating with relatives and colleagues.

This progress in computer technology has led to install computers in every classroom and to "connect" every school to the

تلمبه
يمكنك حل الاختبار
إلكترونيًا وتصويبه



internet. Then, we began to use tablets at schools. Both educators and students alike have been forced to keep up with this new technology. Teachers have found that even though they themselves are still trying to learn the most basic of tablet skills, they are expected to teach students the same experience.

Some people would ask about the role that tablets could play in education. Some educators claim that students given the opportunity to use them in a classroom setting will get better grades than those who learn without having had this experience. They say that using tablets will make the classroom a better place to teach the ideas that students need to become brighter, more successful adults.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The main idea of the passage is that
 a. there is no need to use the computer and the internet.
 b. students only need the computer and the internet.
 c. the computer and the internet have become necessary in our life.
 d. the teachers and the students don't like using the computer at all.
- The progress in computer technology led to
 a. forgetting communication
 b. installing computers in classrooms
 c. losing our goals
 d. having much time
- Using tablets in classrooms will
 a. make classrooms better place
 b. stop students from being creative
 c. make students learn slower
 d. make learning of no use

b. Answer the following questions :

4. How do you think using the internet at the classroom can be useful to the students ?

5. How can using the internet be more useful to our students in the future ?

6. Summarize the last paragraph of the passage using your own words.

C. Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- During my travels, road guide me to the correct way.
 a. events
 b. incidents
 c. signs
 d. festivals
- The synonym of the verb "hurt" is
 a. cure
 b. damage
 c. provide
 d. sail
- The ability to do something well is a/an
 a. internship
 b. apartment
 c. dream
 d. skill
- The prefix makes the verb appear into the opposite.
 a. un -
 b. ir -
 c. im -
 d. dis -
- Protecting the environment is all people's responsibility. The opposite of the word "protecting" is
 a. reserving
 b. damaging
 c. supporting
 d. boasting
- We add the suffix to form the noun from the verb "work".
 a. - ed
 b. - er
 c. - ment
 d. - able

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- He (isn't able to) join the main team unless he trains hard.
- (astronauts able to) travel to Mars in 2045 ?
- They won't (able to) attend the conference this year because of coronavirus disease.
- Omar is a clever student. I think he will (joins) a good faculty.
- Ali hopes he will (being able to) buy that car next year.

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

موضوع: مستقبل التعليم

"A review of driverless cars"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Stop here!

1. Mini-Test on unit 12 for Al-Azhar students

اختبر معلمي لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nader and Ziad are talking about their dream jobs.

Nader : Hi, Ziad. What is your dream job ?

Ziad : I would like to become a robotics engineer.

Nader : (1)

Ziad : Because it is my father's job. What about you ?

Nader : (2)

Ziad : I think it is easy to work in hospital.

Nader : (3)

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You are asked about your dream job.

2. Your friend talks with you about driverless cars.

3 Write a paragraph of six sentences on:

"Your dream job"

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبّق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

- is something that shows you have special training to do a job.
a. Distance b. Internship c. Skill d. Set up
- Don't throw away this bottle. We can it.
a. replay b. rearrange c. repeat d. reuse
- Nawal hopes that she will to work as an engineer when she is older.
a. be b. been able c. be able d. be able to
- Future cities have many so many people will live there.
a. problems b. facilities c. dreams d. opposites
- It is arranged. We to Alexandria this summer.
a. are going b. will go c. go d. be going

Review D

SB pages 64 & 65 WB pages 114 & 115



تدوينة
للتدريبات على الثلاث
وحدات
Master your term

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 64

City centre floods⁽¹⁾

Hundreds of people in a city in Germany⁽²⁾ were surprised⁽³⁾ to see flood water running through the streets of their neighbourhood⁽⁴⁾ last night. Heavy rains⁽⁵⁾ flooded this part of the city in less than an hour. Many people had to leave their homes and 15 people were taken to hospital.



Mr Muller, a local businessman, said, "I saw the water going down our big, wide street. I was very frightened."⁽⁶⁾ Mrs Werner, who also lives in the neighbourhood, said, "The floods have damaged⁽⁷⁾ our beautiful home and our business. We don't know what we'll do. "This flood wasn't the only one to hit the area in recent years. In 2018, a flood damaged over 1,000 buildings. Mr Wagner, who owns⁽⁸⁾ the local bakery⁽⁹⁾ said, "The weather is getting worse. We've seen floods on the TV, but now we have them here !"

Check Vocabulary

(1) فيضان	(2) دولة ألمانيا	(3) مندهش	(4) حي	(5) امطار
(6) خلف	(7) يدمر	(8) يملك	(9) مخبز	

on Lesson 1 WB page 114

Today in history⁽¹⁾, we learned about cities. Our teacher said that cities were usually built in safe places where there was water. However, he told us that people had chosen some strange⁽²⁾ places for some cities.



Check Vocabulary

(1) مادة التاريخ	(2) غريب
------------------	----------

- For example, he told us that people had built **Venice**⁽³⁾ on 124 small islands. They had to put lots of long pieces of wood into the wet **soil**⁽⁴⁾. Then they built the houses on top of the wood. **According to**⁽⁵⁾ our teacher, the wood is still there, under the houses!
- He also told us about **Mexico City**⁽⁶⁾. Did you know that the city was first built in a lake called Lago de Texcoco? They put a lot of soil in the lake, and built a city on this! I think that in the future we will be able to build cities in many different but **safer**⁽⁷⁾ places for example, we will have the technology to build cities on mountains.

Check Vocabulary

- أكثر أماناً (7) مدينة المكسيك (6) وفقاً لـ - بحسب (5) تربة زراعية (4) مدينة البندقية (3)

on Lesson 2 SB page 65

In the next ten to 20 years, life will be very different **compared to**⁽¹⁾ life today. Our cities, the **way**⁽²⁾ we study and the way we work will all be different. People like you or me will be able to go into **space**⁽³⁾, but the biggest change will be at work. Soon, **robots**⁽⁴⁾ will be able to do most of the jobs. Robots can already think for themselves. With the right computer programs, robots **journalists**⁽⁵⁾ will be able to write sports reviews and newspaper articles. Robots will fly our planes and drive our cars. Robot doctors will soon **replace**⁽⁶⁾ **human**⁽⁷⁾ doctors. You will describe your **illness**⁽⁸⁾ to your robot doctor, which will then be able to look at people with the same illness, and choose the best **medicine**⁽⁹⁾ for you, Robot doctors won't be able to do everything. They just have to be better than human doctors. We won't be able to stop robots from being a big **part of**⁽¹⁰⁾ our lives in the future.



Check Vocabulary

- مقارنة بـ (1) طريقة - أسلوب (2) فضاء (3) إنسان آلي (4) صدفي (5) دواء (9) مرض (8) بشري (7) يستبدل بـ (6) جزء من (10)

Answers

of Main Book Topics

Unit 7

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"A review of a natural wonder in Egypt"

Egypt has a lot of natural wonders which cannot be seen in other places all over the world. The Kharga Oasis is one of Egypt's natural wonders. It is surrounded by desert, far from the River Nile. It is visited by more and more tourists every year. It is full of date palm trees. These dates can be exported to a lot of other places in addition to selling them in many shops in the local area.

Oases in general lie in remote places. Sometimes it is difficult to be reached especially in extreme weather. People prefer visiting near places to remote ones. If they are visited, it is also difficult to stay in for a few days. There are no many hotels or many houses around oases; simply because oases lie in the desert!

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A short story I have read recently"

It is a story about horses; their life, their habits and their loyalty **ولاء**. A horse is an animal which can feel and sense like people. Black Beauty is a horse born kind and beautiful. He never kicks or bites even when people make him sad. He treats his owner gently. If there are any dangers on the road, he stops at once to save the lives of his riders. If it is owned by a poor person, he never complains. He may not get enough food and may get ill but he goes on working. Sometimes he travels to long distances and difficult destinations and stays calm. He also may feel pains and there are some bad owners who hit their horses. I think the moral of this story that animals are not machines!

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A review of mongooses"

There are a lot of kinds of mongooses in the world. A mongoose has a long body, with short legs and a long tail. Their bodies are covered by thick fur. Mongooses can see and hear very well, which helps them to find food and avoid danger. They are famous for fighting snakes. They are able to kill snakes by biting them.

There are a lot of mongooses in Africa, Asia and parts of Europe. It lives in forests, wetlands or grasslands, under the ground or rocks.

Mongooses are also very famous for killing rats, so they were taken to live in several islands in Hawaii to control the rat populations there. They also eat birds, frogs, lizards, seeds, eggs and nuts.

Unfortunately, mongooses are endangered, mainly because of deforestation and loss of habitat.

Test on Unit 7

"A short story I have read"

Once upon a time there was a friend whose name is Gafaar. Gafaar is sixteen years old, but he is very talkative. He claims to know everything about any subject. When a friend of ours says he is ill, Gafaar behaves like a doctor and tells him about the medicine and what he should and should not do! When a friend says he or she has a party, Gafaar tells them about what they should buy and how to celebrate!

The last time Gafaar's talk was about how brave he is. A friend says he has a problem with a street man who always bullies him and his sister and as usual Gafaar told him that he should fight against this bully to stop him from doing that again.

When this friend made Gafaar face the street bully to show him how he would fight against him, Gafaar escaped and did not appear again!

Unit 8

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"A review of how to protect our planet"

Our planet is in danger and I think this is because of some global issues قضايا. One of these dangerous problems that endanger our planet is removing trees!

Trees are a source of life. They give out oxygen and take in carbon dioxide. They also absorb pollutants in the atmosphere as they act like filters to our breathing. Apart from that, we get most of our materials in life from trees like wood, paper, fruits, seeds ... etc.

The bad thing is that trees are removed for financial مالى reasons! They are removed to make more space for building houses or hotels. They are removed to get and sell more of their wood and this, of course is a big mistake. Killing a source of life will lead to more and more global problems such as global warming, deforestation and desertification. We should control that by planting more trees.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A review about a recycling project"

We all enjoy having new mobile phones, but what should we do with our old phones? Should we keep throwing them away?

Mobile phones are made from many dangerous materials and these materials are of course destroying the environment. Man depends greatly on plastic on his life. Plastic is an enemy for the environment. Plastic is very difficult to be removed. It damages the sea life too. It can not be burnt under ground.

No one can deny that it is not easy to make mobile phones. They need to have a lot of important materials inside them like plastic, iron and glass. When we throw away a phone, these materials can be very bad for the environment. I think that one day, we will not need to buy a new phone every few years. People will design phones by themselves. If we stop throwing away old materials, we will benefit our environment.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A review about how to stop pollution"

Man has created a lot of things that benefit him but are harmful to nature. Man is the main reason for destroying nature and making pollution.

Pollution is caused by greenhouse gases such as carbon dioxide. These are made when we burn fossil fuels such as oil. Also, pollution is created by cutting down trees. When we cut down trees, the carbon dioxide stays in the air.

The best solution to stop pollution is that we have to depend on cleaner renewable energy such as solar energy and wind power. We must start recycling more rubbish. Stopping cutting down trees and forests is a must too. If we recycle more paper, we can avoid cutting down our forests.

Finally, both the government and people should encourage planting more trees either in streets or at homes.

Test on Unit 8

"A biography about a famous person I admire"

My friend Magdi is the person I admire. Magdi was born by nature sociable and beloved by all people. Getting in touch with a lot of people has pros and cons. One of its cons is that there are weak people

who hate seeing you in good condition and at the same time dealing with them in the same kind way. Magdi has made mistakes because of dealing with those people but the good thing is that Magdi admits يعترف his mistakes and says he learns lessons and messages from his mistakes. His best wise saying is "It is not blame to make mistakes but the blame is not to be taught from your mistakes!"

He says his mistakes never stopped him to deal with all kinds of people but never repeat your former mistakes. I believe in his words and I see he is a role model because he touched something we all suffer from. I have learned from him that we live and learn!

Unit 9

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"A review of a day I spent in a place I will never forget"

Last summer, I read an advertisement about a three-day holiday in Sharm El-Sheikh. The idea was new because I had never stayed in a hotel before. I booked and set off. In fact, I enjoyed the journey from the very recent time. The hotel was fantastic and the service was very good. The hotel had almost everything you need. Moreover, the city is very beautiful. It has a lot of activities. I enjoyed the sea and the water sports. I went snorkelling and saw the coral reefs.

I also visited Dahab and Ras Mohamed National Park which has rare kinds of fish.

The one and only disadvantage of this journey was the long distance as the journey took about seven hours but I recommend visiting Sharm El-Sheikh one day.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A review of what I do to help the environment"

I can protect my environment! It is always said; "A good brain is in a fit body!" and I say "A good brain and a fit body are in a clean environment!" It is time to fight for a better future and a clean protected environment. What we can do to our environment is much! We can stop dumping rubbish in streets. We can stop dropping waste in rivers. We can stop using bad-fuel cars. We will not achieve progress and be a great country without having a clean environment. We must control our complete dependence on fossil fuels to reduce carbon dioxide. It is necessary to plant more trees and save electricity. Using air conditions takes too much electricity. This is bad because it produces a huge amount of carbon dioxide. We can turn off lights and computers after using them.

At the end, I'd like to say that using recycled materials is a good solution to reduce pollution and keep our environment clean.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A review of the Great Green Wall"

Desertification has become a great problem many countries suffer from and we must find a solution to it. Desertification happens when green land becomes desert. The Great Green Wall is an initiative set up in 2007 by the African Union to solve the problem of desertification in the Sahel region of Africa. Sahel region suffers from ماعانى droughts. People do not always farm the land well there. People also grow less amounts of food and lose their homes there.

The Great Green Wall will plant millions of trees and plants across Africa to create

a growing green landscape. It is expected that this wall will be the biggest living thing in the world. It will create jobs for 10 million people. The trees and plants will improve the land for farming again.

This will help in creating a clean environment and reducing desertification.

Test on Unit 9

"A review of how to be a successful person"

Success is not given on a silver plate! If you want to be a successful person, you have to work for it. There are some points you have to go through if you want to be successful. First, working hard is a golden key making you successful.

A man with no goal is a man with nothing! Second, believing in yourself and having confidence ثقة. Self-confidence is an important factor in achieving one's goal. Third, never look at what distracts يشتت you. As you are going for your goal, you meet some people who may distract and disturb what you are doing. The best piece of advice is to leave them and go on!

Don't forget that hanging around positive people is also a tool to be successful. Reading and knowledge are weapons to defend yourself against failure.

Finally, I'd like to say that failure is not the opposite of success but it is a step to success!

Unit 10

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"A biography of Ayman Ragab"

Ayman Ragab is an Egyptian scientist who has always been interested in space science. NASA has been trying to understand what it can do with the rubbish that space journeys produce. Astronauts use a lot of plastic, paper and

other waste on their journeys to space and this of course is a big problem.

NASA started a competition asking the world's best scientists to try and find a solution. Ayman Ragab entered the competition and came second in 2019. He suggested using jets of air to make the waste smaller and then help to recycle it!

Ayman is from the village of al-Dababiya near Luxor and graduated in Engineering from Aswan University. He has worked as a teaching assistant at the same university and now works as a researcher for a university in Finland.

Since he won his prize, he has worked on NASA's Technology Transfer Project which looks at how to use the latest technology in space, and he has recently found ways to save energy when there is little gravity.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A review of satellite technology"

We couldn't live without satellite technology! If we had not discovered space, we would not have known a lot of the world secrets! Satellites allow us to study the weather all around the world. Lots of people have satellite TV so that they can watch their favourite shows and sports matches. Satellite phones can work anywhere in the world. They help us greatly in places far from cities, such as mountains or deserts. Before satellites were invented, people had always used maps to find their way. Now most people use GPS. GPS sends signals to receivers on earth which work out where we are. We have GPS in cars, on phones and even in some modern motorbike helmets.

I see that we should spend more and more money to explore more and more about space to know a lot of the universe secrets.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A review of the International Space Station"

The International Space Station is a place where astronauts live and work when they go into space. It orbits the earth every day. It's one of the brightest objects in the sky and it can be seen without using a telescope.

Lots of countries helped to make the Space Station and astronauts from all around the world have stayed on it.

Life on the Space Station is different from life on earth in many ways. In space, washing, sleeping and eating can be difficult!

Although life is difficult and different on space, communication is not a problem. Astronauts can send emails or make phone calls to their families and friends.

Technology has made it more and more easy for astronauts not to suffer during their travel and stay in space stations. They now find remedies علاج for most side effects that the previous astronauts have complained about.

Test on Unit 10

"A biography of Dr Farouk El-Baz"

Egypt is rich in her human power and I am always proud of their worldwide sons who have become worldwide scientists known all over the world. One of those Egyptians is Dr Farouk El-Baz. He is a great scientist and a geologist. After studying the moon, Farouk started studying deserts on earth. He used satellites to find rivers that were under the sand. This work has helped Egypt and other countries to find new water. He also helped to show astronauts where they could find underground water in the desert. Before

this work, he had helped to develop special cameras on the space shuttle.

Scientists had done a lot of research before the first person walked on the moon. Farouk El-Baz helped to plan where Apollo 11 should land on the moon and taught astronauts which rocks to take from the moon.

To sum up, I'd like to say such great scientists should be valued and encouraged to help our world more and more!

Unit 11

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"A review about a job that I would like to do in the media"

We now live in the age of open skies and media. Life has changed a lot from the past even in our choice of careers. Before now, there were journalists, newsmen and writers but today, there are bloggers and youtubers!

I'd like to be a famous youtuber. I always have groups of new and inventive ideas from which some companies and owners are not brave enough to present. I can make my own channel on youtube application and if I succeeded, I would have a large number of views and of course I would get a lot of money. I see that social media has given a lot of job opportunities to a lot of young people to achieve their dreams. On the other hand I cannot deny that this has also brought some disadvantages.

To sum up, I'd like to say that for every plus, there is a minus. We should decrease the negative sides and increase the positive ones.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A biography of Safia el Mohandes"

Safia el Mohandes was born in Cairo. Her father was a famous linguist. He encouraged her to read Arabic books and novels. Safia also studied English literature at the university and graduated from the Faculty of Arts.

The first broadcast in Africa and in the whole Arab world was the Egyptian radio broadcasting. Safia was the first female voice on the radio.

She presented programmes for women and for children. Her most famous programme was "Housewives" which presented news, educational advice and drama for the whole Egyptian family.

Safia was very kind and helpful to all radio broadcasters. She helped everyone and so she was called "The mother of broadcasters".

She was the head of the radio broadcasting until she retired in 1982.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A review of the job of the journalist"

Honesty is the main quality in the job of the journalist. The job of a journalist is not an easy one. It needs hard work all around the day. This sometimes requires sleeplessness.

Meeting different people and finding out more about the world is a main part of the job. The job includes spending long time on the internet and talking to people on the phone too. You have to be interested in the world around you. You also need to be good at listening and writing.

Unfortunately, there are some journalists who give fake news and report on unreal facts to attract more readers and earn more money. This is a misuse for the job of a journalist.

Finally, I'd like to say that honesty is the most important characteristic that remarks any job!

Test on Unit 11

"A biography of Farouk Shousha"

Farouk Shousha was born in Damietta. He went to a nearby elementary school. He went to the local library at a very early age and was able to read many books in the Arabic language.

Now, he is a well-known radio presenter and a famous poet. He studied at Cairo University and graduated from the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum. He worked as a radio presenter and later on as a TV presenter too.

He always liked poetry and Arabic literature. In his programmes, Shousha always talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and its rich literature. For this reason, he was called "The guardian of the Arabic language". He won the Nile Prize for Literature in 2016.

Finally, I'd like to say; the more sincere you are at your job, the more you become successful.

Unit 12

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"A review of how learning will be like in the future"

Before now, the learning process depended on books, blackboards and classrooms. In fact, the process develops all the time, came after that the whiteboard, CDs and DVDs. Next, came the educational programmes and the smart boards. Today, we are in the age of online learning. The educational platforms have controlled the learning process.

I think, in the near future, the computer and the robots will develop thinking! Computers may choose what suits the mentality عقلية and the age of the learner. And they will decide on the quality and the quantity of the curriculum منهج

To sum up, I'd like to say no one can predict where technology will lead us!

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A review of your dream job"

To achieve your goal is to reach your dream job. My dream job is to become a famous writer. From the early age, I loved reading stories and its reviews.

Writing is a talent موهبة that requires special skills, so I started to take a course during the summer vacation. The year after the course, I joined a writing competition in my school and came the second.

After I finish my school, I hope I will join the Faculty of Arts and study at the press department. My role model is Naguib Mahfouz and I'd like to not only be a writer but a man of literature as well. I hope to win the Nobel Prize of literature one day.

At the end, I'd like to say if you have a goal, you must work for it.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A review of future homes"

Technological development is a never-ending process. Every day technology offers us surprises that appear at first amazing and as soon as time passes it becomes a part of history.

I think future homes will be connected to the internet and our mobile phones. If there were no persons at home, I would manage to open my home and begin getting my meal ready through my mobile. I think technological applications will have a great role at home. There will be an application that adjusts يضبط the temperature so we will of course dispense with نستغني عن air conditioning. There will be an application that cooks meals. There will be an application that organises the demands of the home and puts them in

the correct order. I think there will be also an application that washes clothes and dishes. Technology may not surprise us if it develops an application for teaching our children instead of schools and teachers!

Test on Unit 12

"A review on driverless cars"

In the future, driverless cars will change all of our lives. We will be able to travel anywhere without touching the controls or even looking at the road! Driverless cars will also be better for the environment because they will be electric. However, there are still some problems. Car companies will have to do lots of testing to make sure that the cars are completely safe. We will also have to make new laws and we might even have to change some of our road signs so that the cars computers can read them.

Some experts believe that we will have to wait until 2030. Others see that driverless cars will be here much sooner. Of course it's impossible to know who is correct, but we can be sure of one thing: driverless cars will be part of our future.

Unit 7

lessons 1 & 2

rain (ed) (v), (n)	تمطر - مطر
frog (n)	ضفدع
online article (n)	مقال على الإنترنت
tourists (n)	سياح
visitors (n)	زوار
lake (n)	بحيرة
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش
litter (n)	مخلفات - مهملات
bin (n)	سلة المهملات
turtle (n)	سلحفاة
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل
ship (n)	سفينة
road (n)	طريق
furniture (n)	أثاث
daughter (n)	ابنة
add (ed) (v)	يضيف
half of	نصف
a piece of	قطعة من
in the middle of	في منتصف
far from	بعيد عن
look like	يشبه

lessons 3 & 4

group (n)	مجموعة
fire (n)	نيران
hole (n)	حفرة - ثقب
flag (n)	علم
letter (n)	حرف
repeat (ed)	يكرر
bees (n)	النحل

design (ed)	يصمم
panda (n)	دب الباندا
unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
look for	يبحث عن
light (ed) (v), (n)	يضيء - إضاءة
roof (n)	سقف

lessons 5 & 6

lizard (n)	سحلية
bodies (n)	أجسام
opinion (n)	رأي
regularly (adv)	بانتظام
insects (n)	حشرات
cave (n)	كهف
near (adv)	بالقرب من
spiders (n)	عناكب
photographer (n)	مصور فوتوغرافي
believe (d) (v)	يصدق - يعتقد
shells (n)	صدف
sea shore (n)	شاطئ البحر

Unit 8

lessons 1 & 2

radio programme	برنامج إذاعي
project (n)	دراسة - مشروع
rubbish (n)	شحمة
die (d) (v)	يموت
probably (adv)	ربما / من المحتمل
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث
chemicals (n)	مواد كيميائية
save (d) (v)	يوفر
history (n)	تاريخ

create (d), (v)	يحدث / ينتج
oceans (n)	محيطات
environment (n)	البيئة
decide (d) (v)	يقرر
blog (n)	مدونة إلكترونية
graph (n)	رسم بياني
Jordan	الأردن
design (ed) (v)	يصمم
clean energy	طاقة نظيفة

lessons 3 & 4

sunglasses (n)	نظارة شمسية
net (n)	شبكة
cotton (n)	قطن
art (n)	الفن
afraid (adj)	خائف
leather (n)	جلد
handbag (n)	حقيرة يد
discussion (n)	مناقشة
centre (n)	مركز
connect(ed) (v)	يربط / يصل
machine (n)	آلة
surprised (adj)	مدهش
university (n)	جامعة
afraid (adj)	خائف
plan (n)	خطة
waste (n)	التبذير / الإسراف
factory (n)	مصنع

lessons 5 & 6

invite (d) (v)	يدعو
attractive (adj)	جذاب
travel (ed) (v)	يسافر
quite (adv)	إلى حد ما
safe (adj)	آمن

temperature (n)	درجة حرارة
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح
poster (n)	ملصق
section (n)	قسم - جزء
windy (adj)	عاصف

Unit 9

lessons 1 & 2

building (n)	مبنى
countries (n)	بلاد - دول
cheese (n)	جبنه
show (ed) (v)	يعرض - يوضح
paint (ed) (v)	يدهن - يلون
address (n)	عنوان
protect (ed) (v)	يحمي
sea animals (n)	الحيوانات البحرية
important (adj)	هام
volleyball (n)	الكرة الطائرة
match (n)	مباراة
healthier (adj)	أكثر صحة
anywhere (adv)	في أي مكان

lessons 3 & 4

title (n)	عنوان
enough (adv), (adj)	بما فيه الكفاية
computer (n)	حاسب آلي
television (n)	تلفاز
lights (n)	المصابيح - الأنوار
correct (ed) (v)	يصحح
weather (n)	طقس
area (n)	منطقة
sunny (adj)	شمس
quickly (adv)	بسرعة

dictionary (n)
electricity (n)
money (n)
inside (adj), (adv)

قاموس لغوي
كهرباء
نقود
بداخل

lessons 5 & 6

the countryside (n)
desert (n)
park (n)
town (n)
ground (n)
dialogue (n)
tourists (n)
map (n)
everyone
information (n)
open (adj)
save (d) (v)
facts (n)
description (n)
describe (d) (v)
quiz (n)
table (n)
however

الريف
صحراء
حديقة
مدينة صغيرة
الأرض
محادثة
سائحين
خريطة
كل شخص
معلومات
مفتوح
يحفظ
حقائق
وصف
يصف
اختبار
جدول
مع ذلك

Unit 10

lessons 1 & 2

competition (n)
international (adj)
dream (ed) (v / n)
prepare (v)
engineer (n)
specific (adj)

مسابقة علمية
دولي
يحلم - حلم
يعد / يجهز
مهندس
مُعَيّن / مُحدّد

enter (ed) (v)
surface (n)
luck (n)
mark (n)
rock (n)
train (ed) (v)
experiences
Arab (n)
horse riding
design (ed) (v/n)
Earth (n)
improve (d) (v)
object (n)
stronger (adj)
Rome
hotel (n)
Italian (adj)

lessons 3 & 4

diagram (n)
boots (n)
check (ed) (v)
comfortable (adj)
land (ed) (v/n)
research (ed) (n/v)
river (n)
storm (n)
system (n)
type (n)
useful (adj)
action (n)
bat (n)
doll (n)

مخطط / رسم بياني
بذاء برفقة طويلة
يتحقق من
مريح
بسيط / أرض
بث / أبحاث / يجري بحث
نهر
عاصفة
نظام
نوع
مفيد
لث / حركة
نفاث
هبة

till (adv/conj)
clock (n)

حتى / لغاية
ساعة حائط

lessons 5 & 6

Chinese (adj), (n)
map (n)
successfully (adv)
appear(ed) (v)
facts (n)

صيني - اللغة الصينية
خريطة
ينجاح
يظهر
حقائق

Unit 11

lessons 1 & 2

down (adv)
story (n)
idea (n)
below (adv)
around (adv)
type (n)
hope (d) (v)
soon (adv)
text (n)
business (n)
coat (n)
metal (n), (adj)
round (adj)
report (n)
part (n)
local (adj)
wooden (adj)
square (n)
holiday (n)
items (n)
lunchtime (n)
strong (adj)

تحت
قصة
فكرة
أدنى - تحت
حوالي
نوع
يأمل - يتمنى
قريباً
نص
شركة
معطف
معدن - معدني
دائري
تقرير
جزء
محلي - موضعي
خشبي
مربع
أجازة
عناصر - أشياء
وقت الغداء
قوي

lessons 3 & 4

carry (ied) (v)
world (n)
language (n)
might
village (n)
farm (n)
share (d) (v)
partner (n)
true (adj)
hotel (n)

يحمل
عالم
لغة
ربما
قرية
مزرعة
يشارك
شريك - زميل
صحيح
فندق

lessons 5 & 6

cousin (n)
restaurant (n)
player (n)
weekend (n)
look at
Arabic (n)
like (d) (v)
police officer (n)
handbag (n)
sir
madam

ابن / ابنة (العم/العمة/الخال/الخالة)
مطعم
للاعب
عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
ينظر إلى
اللغة العربية
يحب - يبدو
ضابط الشرطة
حقيفة يد
سيدي
سيدة

Unit 12

lessons 1 & 2

percent (n)
toy (n)
transport (n)
ability (n)
challenge (n)
collect (ed) (v)
waste (ed) (v)

بالمائة
لعبة
النقل / المواصلات
القدرة
تحدي
يجمع
يهدر / يسرف

taste (d) (v)	يتذوق
remind (ed) (v)	يذكر
population (n)	تعداد السكان
type (n)	نوع

lessons 3 & 4

course (n)	دورة تدريبية
machine (n)	آلة
protect (ed) (v)	يحمي
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية
blog (n)	(منشور) في مُدونة
train (ed) (v)	يتدرب
create (d) (v)	يبتكر
area (n)	منطقة
entrance (n)	مدخل
cycle (d) (v)	يقود دراجة
roof (n)	سقف
twice (adv)	مرتين

lessons 5 & 6

phrase (n)	عبارة
difference (n)	اختلاف / فرق
difficulty (n)	صعوبة
impossible (adj)	مستحيل
worry (ied) (v)	يقلق
touch (ed) (v)	يلمس
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
journey (n)	رحلة
research (ed) (v)	يجري أبحاث على

Notes

SECTION 3

Answers of The Main Book (3rd Prep)

إجابات كتاب الشرح المعاصر للصف الثالث الإعدادي

Unit (7)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. d. oasis | 2. b. wonders |
| 3. b. surrounded | 4. b. springs |
| 5. a. national | 6. b. pollute |
| 7. c. newsagents | 8. a. lay |
| 9. c. fill | 10. c. palm tree |
| 11. d. bright | 12. b. caracal |
| 13. b. habitat | 14. a. show |
| 15. c. into | 16. b. polar |
| 17. c. grassland | 18. b. forest |
| 19. d. wetland | 20. b. coastal |
| 21. a. shape | 22. c. volunteer |

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| 1. b. - al | 2. d. unusual |
| 3. b. effect | 4. a. save |
| 5. c. foreigners | 6. c. - ern |
| 7. b. un- | 8. b. peak |
| 9. c. endanger | 10. d. - ion |

Exercise on (Language)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. (know) | known |
| 2. (found) | are found |
| 3. (call) | called |
| 4. (sell) | are sold |
| 5. (surround) | is surrounded |
| 6. (is) | are |
| 7. (with) | by |

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 8. (visiting) | visited |
| 9. (describe) | is described |
| 10. (are) | is |
| 11. (Do) | Are |
| 12. (admire) | are admired |
| 13. (with) | by |
| 14. (make) | made |
| 15. (clean) | are cleaned |
| 16. (lay) | are laid |
| 17. (doesn't) | isn't |
| 18. (are) | is |

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Finish the following dialogue :

- I'm fine.
- Do you agree with me ?
- Yes, of course.
- How many tourists visit Egypt every year ?
- They like to visit the Pyramids.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. d. seaside | 2. a. oasis |
| 3. a. - al | 4. b. polluted |
| 5. d. re- | 6. b. newsagent |

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. (make) | are made |
| 2. (visit) | is visited |
| 3. (surround) | is surrounded |
| 4. (call) | is called |
| 5. (sometimes clean) | is sometimes cleaned |

4. Write (110) words on the following :

Students' own answers

Lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. b. fossils | 2. c. preserved |
| 3. b. length | 4. d. whale |
| 5. a. scientists | 6. b. parked |
| 7. b. published | 8. b. pull |
| 9. d. ingredients | 10. b. capital |
| 11. c. give | 12. a. to |
| 13. c. endanger | 14. b. carriage |
| 15. a. stable | 16. a. deforestation |
| 17. b. Species | 18. d. owner |
| 19. b. treat | 20. c. special |

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| 1. c. unknown | 2. d. un- |
| 3. c. -y | 4. b. amazing |
| 5. c. discovered | 6. d. warm |

Exercise on (Language)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. (publish) | published |
| 2. (were) | was |
| 3. (painting) | painted |
| 4. (built) | was built |
| 5. (carried) | were carried |
| 6. (call) | were called |
| 7. (did) | was |
| 8. (destroyed) | were destroyed |
| 9. (lose) | lost |
| 10. (is) | was |
| 11. (caught) | was caught |
| 12. (using) | used |
| 13. (did) | was |
| 14. (with) | by |
| 15. (holding) | held |
| 16. (invented) | was invented |

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Finish the following dialogue :

1. Do you know Rome ?
2. Have you ever been to Rome ?
3. 2.7 million people live there.
4. The Colosseum.
5. I don't know.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1. Ingredients | 2. Unfortunately |
| 3. Was | 4. owner |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1. d. carriage | 2. b. famous |
| 3. c. saves | 4. c. - y |
| 5. b. un- | 6. a. treats |

4. Write (110) words on the following :
Students' own answers

Lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| 1. b. confused | 2. c. fur |
| 3. b. aim | 4. d. avoid |
| 5. b. alone | 6. c. postman |
| 7. b. organises | 8. b. kill |
| 9. c. seeds | 10. b. population |
| 11. b. for | 12. d. for |
| 13. d. have | 14. b. caracal |
| 15. b. Fur | 16. c. label |
| 17. b. Lifestyle | 18. b. Introduction |
| 19. a. form | 20. d. good |

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 1. c. thick | 2. d. well |
| 3. a. un- | 4. a. lazy |
| 5. d. -able | |

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Finish the following dialogue :
 1. I lost my calculator.
 2. How did this happen ?
 3. Did you look for it ?
 4. Look for it again.
 5. Thanks, dad.
2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

1. confused	2. didn't
3. direction	4. famous
3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. light	2. b. - ly
3. c. difficult	4. d. arranged
5. b. in-	6. b. fur
4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. (visiting)	visited
2. (cook)	were cooked
3. (find)	was found
4. (build)	are built
5. (break)	broke
5. Write (110) words on the following :
Students' own answers

Test on Unit 7

1. Finish the following dialogue :
 1. Yes, of course.
 2. Where is it ?
 3. Does it have coasts ?
 4. No, thanks.
 5. You are welcome.
2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

1. wildlife	2. species
3. tourists	4. looked

Exercises on lessons 7 & 8

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :
 - a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
 1. c. We all are responsible for solving the problem of litter
 2. b. synonyms
 3. a. adds
 - b. Answer the following questions :
 4. Yes, I think so.
 5. Recycling paper and plastic can solve the problem of litter.
 6. We should recycle litter.
4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. en-	2. c. normal
3. a. -ation	4. b. habitat
5. b. empty	6. c. remote
5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. (score)	was scored
2. (make)	is made
3. (build)	built
4. (build)	was built
5. (Does)	Was/Is
6. Write (110) words on the following :
Students' own answers

Unit (8)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
- | | |
|---------------------|----------------|
| 1. b. Deforestation | 2. b. Oxygen |
| 3. d. solar | |
| 4. a. air pollution | 5. b. landfill |
| 6. c. fossil fuels | 7. b. Seagra |

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| 8. b. cause | |
| 9. b. Carbon dioxide | 10. a. oil |
| 11. b. renewable | 12. d. getting |
| 13. b. at | 14. b. from |
| 15. c. make | 16. c. Melting |
| 17. a. Landfill site | 18. c. Absorb |
| 19. c. Carbon dioxide | 20. b. dangerous |
| 21. c. larger | |

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1. b. stop | 2. b. -ing |
| 3. c. non- | 4. d. failed |
| 5. c. -able | 6. a. re- |
| 7. b. -ion | |

Exercise on (Language)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. (burned) | burn |
| 2. (happened) | will happen |
| 3. (be) | will be |
| 4. (would) | will |
| 5. (go) | goes |
| 6. (speaking) | speak |
| 7. (took) | take |
| 8. (lived) | live |
| 9. (do) | will do |
| 10. (ate) | eat |
| 11. (goes) | go |
| 12. (buys) | buy |
| 13. (didn't) | don't |
| 14. (send) | 'll send |
| 15. (being) | be |
| 16. (would) | will |
| 17. (you feel) | will you feel |

Exercise on (Language)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|-------------|----------|
| 1. (plant) | to plant |
| 2. (buying) | to buy |

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------|
| 3. (to burn) | burning |
| 4. (recycling) | to recycle |
| 5. (cut) | cutting |
| 6. (played) | playing |
| 7. (visit) | visiting |
| 8. (keeping) | to keep/keep |
| 9. (attending) | to attend |
| 10. (to live) | living |
| 11. (given) | giving |
| 12. (spend) | to spend |
| 13. (not retiring) | not to retire |
| 14. (to steal) | stealing |
| 15. (finding) | to find |
| 16. (to swimming) | swimming |
| 17. (cycling) | to cycle |
| 18. (shout) | shouting |
| 19. (damaged) | damaging |
| 20. (eating) | to eat |

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Finish the following dialogue :

1. And you ?
2. What are you doing at the weekend ?
3. I'm visiting my village.
4. My family.
5. By car.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. c. renewable | 2. a. succeed |
| 3. d. continue | 4. c. Farming |
| 5. a. -al | 6. b. non- |

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|-------------|----------|
| 1. (throw) | throwing |
| 2. (watch) | watching |
| 3. (clean) | to clean |
| 4. (rained) | rains |
| 5. (would) | will |

4. Write (110) words on the following :

Students' own answers

Lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. c. weaving | 2. b. cartridge |
| 3. c. fabric | 4. b. threads |
| 5. b. traditional | 6. a. bricks |
| 7. b. way | 8. b. broken |
| 9. c. wool | 10. d. Social media |
| 11. a. to | 12. d. laugh |
| 13. c. give | 14. d. ink |
| 15. a. weaver | 16. b. loom |
| 17. a. thread | |
| 18. c. sports playground | |
| 19. b. joined | |
| 20. c. in the place of | |

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. c. -ed | 2. a. incorrect |
| 3. b. modern | 4. c. damaged |
| 5. b. -al | 6. d. above |

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Finish the following dialogue :

1. How can I help you ?
2. What is renewable energy ?
3. The solar energy.
4. No, it is not.
5. Of course, renewable energy is useful.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

- | | |
|------------|---------|
| 1. weaving | 2. loom |
| 3. weave | 4. will |

Lessons 5 & 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------|
| 1. d. lovely | 2. b. full |
| 3. d. old-fashioned | |
| 4. c. latest | 5. d. Fabric |
| 6. d. un- | |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1. (go) | to go |
| 2. (have) | will have |
| 3. (not come) | won't come |
| 4. (buy) | to buy |
| 5. (not avoid) | don't avoid |

5. Write (110) words on the following :
Students' own answers

Lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. d. herbs | 2. c. Sea grass |
| 3. b. speech | 4. b. washing |
| 5. c. coast | 6. b. colourful |
| 7. b. temperature | 8. d. healthy |
| 9. c. reuse | 10. a. rainforests |
| 11. b. windy | 12. a. by |
| 13. a. teach | 14. d. Nevertheless |
| 15. c. About | 16. a. for |
| 17. c. seagrass | 18. b. disappeared |
| 19. d. colourful | 20. b. reminds |
| 21. c. conclusion | |

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| 1. c. un- | 2. b. -ive |
| 3. b. -ous | 4. c. safe |
| 5. b. finish | 6. b. -er |
| 7. c. convenient | 8. b. antonym |
| 9. d. beautiful | |

Exercise on (Language)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1. (that's why) | However |
| 2. (why) | this is because |
| 3. (That's why) | Nevertheless |
| 4. (This is because) | That's why |
| 5. (so) | because |
| 6. (because) | however |
| 7. (that's why) | this is because |
| 8. (that's because) | that's why |
| 9. (because) | that's why |
| 10. (that's why) | because |
| 11. (so) | however |
| 12. (because) | that's why |
| 13. (that's why) | because |
| 14. (because) | Nevertheless |
| 15. (because) | that's why |
| 16. (that's why) | because |
| 17. (However) | that's why |
| 18. (This's because) | that's why |
| 19. (However) | because |
| 20. (That's why) | nevertheless |

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6**1. Finish the following dialogue :**

- Thanks.
- Why?
- What's wrong?
- He's getting better now.
- I hope he will be well soon.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 1. save | 2. turn |
| 3. ride | 4. will |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| 1. c. plain | 2. b. ocean |
| 3. d. re- | 4. b. Seagrass |
| 5. d. -y | 6. d. begin |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|--------------|---------|
| 1. (waiting) | wait |
| 2. (make) | making |
| 3. (score) | scoring |
| 4. (joined) | to join |
| 5. (smoke) | smoking |

5. Write (110) words on the following :

Students' own answers

Test on Unit 8**1. Finish the following dialogue :**

- I want to ask you a question.
- In Geography.
- What does the word "ocean" mean?
- Do you want anything else?
- Thank you.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 1. pollution | 2. air |
| 3. dioxide | 4. driving |

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- b. Charles Dickens, biography
- d. earn money.
- d. difficult.

b. Answer the following questions :

- Many of the ideas for the stories of his novels and the characters in them came from the hard time he lived in.
- Yes, I think so. Most successful people had hard childhood.
- Charles started to work in his early childhood because his father went to prison.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. b. live | 2. c. continue |
| 3. d. -ion | 4. a. weave |
| 5. c. expensive | 6. c. dis- |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 1. (drink) | drinking |
| 2. (speak) | speaking |
| 3. (reward) | to reward |
| 4. (allowed) | allow |
| 5. (improve) | to improve |

6. Write (110) words on the following :
Students' own answers

Unit (9)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. b. Recycle | 2. a. products |
| 3. b. level | 4. a. solve |
| 5. d. protect | 6. c. Fields |
| 7. b. electric | 8. c. toothbrush |
| 9. c. petrol | 10. b. nature |
| 11. a. up | 12. c. save |
| 13. d. by | 14. b. Bamboo |
| 15. a. Rechargeable | 16. c. Reusable |
| 17. b. Seedling | 18. d. Sustainable |
| 19. d. electricity | 20. b. answer |

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. b. waste | 2. b. lower |
| 3. b. young | 4. c. un- |
| 5. a. -al | |

Exercise on (Language)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------|
| 1. (not use to use) | did use to use |
| 2. (wasting) | waste |
| 3. (don't) | didn't |
| 4. (use to) | used to |
| 5. (turned) | turn |
| 6. (use sent) | use to send |
| 7. (used) | use |
| 8. (do) | did |
| 9. (for) | to |
| 10. (sings) | sing |
| 11. (used to) | use to |
| 12. (used) | use |
| 13. (not used) | didn't use |
| 14. (is) | does |
| 15. (is) | was |
| 16. (doesn't) | isn't |
| 17. (being) | be |
| 18. (had) | have |
| 19. (am using) | used |
| 20. (do) | did |

Exercise on (Language)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. (are) | were |
| 2. (can) | could |
| 3. (live) | lived |
| 4. (move) | would move |
| 5. (not be) | wouldn't be |
| 6. (will) | would |
| 7. (studies) | studied |
| 8. (live) | lived |
| 9. (have) | would have |
| 10. (not cut down) | didn't cut down |
| 11. (have) | had |
| 12. (am) | were |
| 13. (can) | could |
| 14. (doesn't) | didn't |

15. (encourages)
16. (will)
17. (did)
18. (getting)
19. (will sleep)
20. (know)

encouraged
would
do
get
would sleep
knew

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Finish the following dialogue :

1. It was useful.
2. We should turn off light after using it.
3. What else ?
4. What else do you suggest ?
5. That's right.

2. Read and complete the text with words form the following list :

- | | |
|----------|-----------------|
| 1. light | 2. rechargeable |
| 3. off | 4. to do |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. c. battery | 2. c. reach |
| 3. d. old | 4. c. -able |
| 5. b. re- | 6. d. safe |

4. Write (110) words on the following :

Students' own answers

Lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------|
| 1. b. solar | 2. c. produce |
| 3. c. green | |
| 4. b. air conditioning | |
| 5. c. remote control | |
| 6. d. way | 7. d. landfill |
| 8. a. absorb | 9. b. with |
| 10. d. lively | |
| 11. c. Air conditioning | |
| 12. b. promise | 13. d. Destroy |

14. c. remote
16. c. green

15. b. cheap

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1. c. make | 2. c. simple |
| 3. d. small | 4. b. in- |
| 5. b. cheap | |

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Finish the following dialogue :

1. I miss you.
2. Where have you been ?
3. What about you ?
4. Because it is small.
5. Thank you.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1. b. -able | 2. b. expensive |
| 3. c. dis- | 4. a. damaged |
| 5. b. remote control | |
| 6. c. renewable | |

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|---------------|----------|
| 1. (not will) | wouldn't |
| 2. (don't) | didn't |
| 3. (been) | be |
| 4. (have) | had |
| 5. (will) | would |

4. Write (110) words on the following :

Students' own answers

Lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| 1. c. interview | 2. b. solar |
| 3. a. region | 4. b. produce |
| 5. a. permission | 6. d. reduce |

7. b. energy
9. b. farm
11. b. doing
13. a. up
15. b. Desertification
17. a. farm
19. b. improve
21. b. clean
8. c. plan
10. b. research
12. c. In
14. d. create
16. a. region
18. c. interrupts
20. c. drought

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. pretty
3. d. safe
5. d. ugly
7. b. -ing
9. b. -ing
2. a. partially
4. b. conclusion
6. d. increases
8. c. dis-
10. b. included

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Finish the following dialogue :

1. Congratulations!
2. I will be 17.
3. When will it be ?
4. Will you come ?
5. I'd like a watch.

2. Read and complete the text with words form the following list :

1. Personally
2. opinion
3. countryside
4. used

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. region
2. b. ugly
3. b. dis-
4. c. -ly
5. b. unsafe
6. a. complicate

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. (meet) would meet
2. (am) were
3. (will) would
4. (have) had
5. (will) would

5. Write (110) words on the following :
Students' own answers

Test

on Unit 9

1. Finish the following dialogue :

1. I am looking for a mobile phone.
2. What do you think of this one ?
3. How much is it ?
4. I want something cheaper.
5. It is made in Japan.

2. Read and complete the text with words form the following list :

1. solar
2. clean
3. inexpensive
4. would

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. Magdy and Mr. Samir
2. c. was a big liar
3. a. proved that Magdy was not telling the truth

b. Answer the following questions :

4. He is a liar. It's a bad habit.
5. No one believes a liar.
6. No. Because he is a liar.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. -ly
2. d. destroy
3. d. turbines
4. a. in-
5. b. Sustainable
6. c. damage

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. (doesn't used) didn't use
2. (playing) to play
3. (lose) lost
4. (helped) help
5. (using) use

6. Write (110) words on the following :
Students' own answers

Unit (10)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. b. solar | 2. b. lens |
| 3. c. planets | 4. a. orbits |
| 5. d. astronomer | 6. a. planets |
| 7. a. competition | 8. c. retire |
| 9. a. trip | 10. b. of |
| 11. b. astronaut | 12. a. telescope |
| 13. d. station | 14. b. gravity |
| 15. b. spacecraft | 16. d. researcher |
| 17. a. working | 18. c. designed |
| 19. b. arrange | |

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| 1. b. -ly | 2. c. -ian |
| 3. b. lately | 4. d. in- |
| 5. c. remote | 6. c. particular |

Exercise on (Language)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. (using) | used |
| 2. (dream) | dreaming |
| 3. (be) | have been |
| 4. (read) | has read |
| 5. (do) | has been doing |
| 6. (read) | has been reading |
| 7. (be) | been |
| 8. (create) | created |
| 9. (came) | come |
| 10. (win already) | already won |
| 11. (be) | been |
| 12. (do) | doing |
| 13. (had) | have |

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------|
| 14. (studied) | studying |
| 15. (already) | ever |
| 16. (since) | for |
| 17. (for) | since |
| 18. (since) | for |
| 19. (for) | all |
| 20. (graduates) | graduated |
| 21. (has been reading) | read |
| 22. (never) | yet |

Exercise on (Language)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1. (walked) | had walked |
| 2. (revise) | had revised |
| 3. (paints) | painting |
| 4. (has) | had |
| 5. (take) | took |
| 6. (cooks) | had cooked |
| 7. (listened) | listening |
| 8. (goes) | went |
| 9. (seeing) | saw/had seen |
| 10. (leaving) | had already left |
| 11. (go) | went |
| 12. (don't) | didn't |
| 13. (leave) | left |
| 14. (be) | was |
| 15. (goes) | went |
| 16. (is) | was |
| 17. (be) | been |
| 18. (did) | had done |
| 19. (studied) | studying |

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Finish the following dialogue :

- How can I help ?
- I want to go to the sun hotel.
- Yes, please.
- No, it isn't.
- How much does the ticket cost ?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

- | | |
|--------------|---------|
| 1. walked | 2. has |
| 3. astronaut | 4. Mars |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. d. space station | 2. a. -ly |
| 3. d. ancient | 4. b. un- |
| 5. c. correct | 6. b. nonspecific |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1. (work) | has been working |
| 2. (built) | has built |
| 3. (you have) | Have you |
| 4. (be) | been |
| 5. (arrive) | had arrived |

5. Write (110) words on the following :
Students' own answers

Lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. b. braces | 2. c. trainers |
| 3. b. continents | 4. b. fellow |
| 5. c. verses | 6. b. receiver |
| 7. b. signal | 8. a. helmet |
| 9. b. shines | 10. b. take |
| 11. c. climate | 12. a. find |
| 13. d. GPS | 14. c. toiler |
| 15. a. braces | 16. b. helmet |
| 17. b. signal | 18. b. passed |
| 19. a. wireless | |

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| 1. b. -ful | 2. c. -less |
| 2. a. let | 4. d. receive |

General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

1. Finish the following dialogue :

- I'm doing my homework.
- Yes, of course.
- What is the antonym of the word "sad" ?
- Were you good at English at school ?
- Thanks.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 1. become | 2. quick |
| 3. systems | 4. important |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------|
| 1. b. un- | 2. a. receive |
| 3. c. satellite receiver | |
| 4. a. remote | |
| 5. c. -les | 6. b. signal |

4. Write (110) words on the following :
Students' own answers

Lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. c. sailor | 2. d. exhibition |
| 3. c. planetarium | 4. b. vehicles |
| 5. d. travel | 6. a. asteroid |
| 7. a. space | 8. b. make |
| 9. b. transport | 10. c. flat |
| 11. c. sources | 12. a. directions |
| 13. c. conversations | 14. c. make |
| 15. c. station | 16. a. orbits |
| 17. b. from | 18. c. flat |
| 19. c. diary | 20. b. circle |
| 21. d. guide | |

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. c. enormous | 2. d. im- |
| 3. b. -ese | 4. b. adjective |
| 5. c. remain | 6. a. private |

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6**1. Finish the following dialogue :**

1. Great!
2. I don't know.
3. You could collect rubbish.
4. What else ?
5. Can you help ?

2. Read and complete the text with words form the following list :

- | | |
|---------------|---------|
| 1. everywhere | 2. take |
| 3. send | 4. had |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|------------|-----------------|
| 1. c. huge | 2. b. -ly |
| 3. b. dull | 4. d. difficult |
| 5. a. im- | 6. c. sailor |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. (win) | had won |
| 2. (start) | had started |
| 3. (not come) | didn't come |
| 4. (you had) | had you |
| 5. (revise) | had revised |

5. Write (110) words on the following :

Students' own answers

Test on Unit 10**1. Finish the following dialogue :**

1. Would you mind if I attend my friend's birthday party ?
2. When will it be ?
3. Of course.

4. At her house.
5. Our friends.

2. Read and complete the text with words form the following list :

- | | |
|------------|--------|
| 1. maps | 2. GPS |
| 3. weather | 4. Can |

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. Internet can be useful and harmful
2. b. without someone's knowledge
3. b. they do things from any location

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Student's own answer.
5. Modern technology controlled everything in our world and one of the most important inventions is the internet.
6. a. We use it at homes, factories, schools, malls and hospitals.
- b. To become knowledgeable and stay well connected.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------|
| 1. c. large | 2. a. a- |
| 3. b. modern | 4. c. let |
| 5. c. space station | 6. d. -y |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1. (know) | had known |
| 2. (leave) | left |
| 3. (just) | yet |
| 4. (you go) | you gone |
| 5. (cry) | cried |

6. Write (110) words on the following :
Students' own answers

Unit (11)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. b. media | 2. c. news |
| 3. a. trust | 4. c. witness |
| 5. c. taking | 6. d. burst |
| 7. b. injured | 8. b. journalist |
| 9. b. accident | 10. c. stole |
| 11. b. pipes | 12. b. for |
| 13. d. get | 14. b. operator |
| 15. c. journalist | 16. b. photographer |
| 17. d. reader | 18. a. owner |
| 19. b. cross | 20. c. stuck |

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. a. normally | 2. d. distrust |
| 3. d. interesting | 4. b. normally |
| 5. c. nowhere | 6. b. angry |
| 7. c. no longer | 8. c. -er |
| 9. c. -ing | 10. a. fascinating |

Exercise on (Language)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|-------------|------------------|
| 1. (were) | was |
| 2. (Were) | Was |
| 3. (decide) | decided |
| 4. (break) | broke |
| 5. (buy) | bought |
| 6. (paint) | painted |
| 7. (wear) | wore/was wearing |
| 8. (were) | was |
| 9. (Was) | Were |

Answers of The Main Book

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------|
| 10. (wasn't) | |
| 11. (saw) | weren't |
| 12. (feel) | see |
| 13. (not sleep) | felt |
| | didn't sleep |

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Finish the following dialogue :

- To the bookshop.
- Yes, of course.
- Did you go to school yesterday ?
- Why were you absent ?
- Yes, we did.

2. Read and complete the text with words form the following list :

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. journalist | 2. articles |
| 3. be | 4. successful |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------|
| 1. d. web designer | |
| 2. c. -ly | 3. b. regional |
| 4. d. distrust | 5. a. re- |
| 6. c. angry | |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|-----------|--------|
| 1. (were) | was |
| 2. (Was) | Were |
| 3. (was) | were |
| 4. (buys) | bought |
| 5. (does) | did |

5. Write (110) words on the following :

Students' own answers

Lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. c. governor | 2. d. tourism |
| 3. b. graduated | 4. a. tournament |

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------|
| 5. d. voice | 6. b. language |
| 7. b. Climate change | |
| 8. a. specialises | |
| 9. c. from | 10. d. for |
| 11. b. linguist | 12. c. Retire |
| 13. b. governor | 14. a. Recycling |
| 15. c. tournament | 16. b. tired |
| 17. c. scientist | |
| 18. d. conversation | |

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. b. -ing | 2. c. -al |
| 3. a. loud | 4. c. correct |
| 5. b. everyone | 6. a. lost |
| 7. c. start | |

Exercise on (Language)

1. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. (told) | said |
| 2. (are) | was |
| 3. (have) | had |
| 4. (tomorrow) | the next day |
| 5. (is) | was |
| 6. (wants) | wanted |
| 7. (these) | those |
| 8. (don't) | didn't |
| 9. (will) | would |
| 10. (said) | told |
| 11. (him) | he |
| 12. (I) | me |
| 13. (can) | could |
| 14. (told) | said |
| 15. (is reading) | was reading |
| 16. (yesterday) | the day before |

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Finish the following dialogue :

1. I get up late.
2. Why ?
3. Did you see a doctor ?
4. Yes, of course.
5. A little better.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. b. broadcast | 2. b. -or |
| 3. b. begin | 4. b. quiet |
| 5. b. in- | 6. d. accurate |

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|--------------|---------|
| 1. (will) | would |
| 2. (told) | said |
| 3. (my) | her |
| 4. (told to) | said to |
| 5. (be) | was |

4. Write (110) words on the following :

Students' own answers

lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. c. festival | 2. b. star |
| 3. d. climbers | 4. b. skills |
| 5. c. restaurant | 6. c. reserve |
| 7. b. shells | 8. c. son |
| 9. a. volunteers | 10. b. response |
| 11. c. guess | 12. a. hang |
| 13. b. come out | 14. a. make |
| 15. c. Apparently | 16. d. festival |
| 17. b. meeting | 18. c. warning |
| 19. a. normal | 20. c. round |
| 21. b. possible | |

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. right
2. d. easy
3. c. exciting
4. a. awesome
5. a. similar
6. a. unknown
7. d. -ing
8. b. -ion
9. b. -er
10. a. -ing
11. b. uab-

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Finish the following dialogue :

1. Fine, thanks.
2. Have you passed your final exams ?
3. Congratulations!
4. Where are the results ?
5. OK. I will send it to you.

2. Read and complete the text with words form the following list :

1. interested
2. mountain
3. climbing
4. be

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. -ly
2. b. According to
3. b. un-
4. c. hard
5. c. bad
6. a. mistake

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. (have to) had to
2. (told me) said to
3. (says to) tells
4. (is staying up) was staying up
5. (went) goes

Write (110) words on the following :

Students' own answers

Test

Answers of The Main Book

on Unit 11

1. Finish the following dialogue :

1. Really.
2. What job would you like to be ?
3. What about you ?
4. Because I like English.
5. To help sick people.

2. Read and complete the text with words form the following list :

1. free
2. get
3. do
4. teach

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. if you want to achieve your goal, you will achieve it
2. a. negative
3. d. rich

b. Answer the following questions :

4. By thinking positively.
5. To achieve your goals, you should think positively.
6. The jobs they enjoy.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. -er
2. b. journalist
3. b. en-
4. b. national
5. b. usual
6. b. hole

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. (said) told
2. (this) that
3. (will join) would join
4. (said to) told
5. (have to) had to

6. Write (110) words on the following :
Students' own answers

Unit (12)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. c. robotics engineer | |
| 2. b. solution | 3. b. cycle lanes |
| 4. c. renewable | 5. b. percent |
| 6. b. solar panels | 7. a. pandemic |
| 8. b. mask | 9. a. passport |
| 10. a. level | 11. a. produce |
| 12. b. away | 13. b. of |
| 14. b. assistant | 15. b. 3D printer |
| 16. c. device | 17. b. solution |
| 18. b. measure | |
| 19. b. virtual reality | |
| 20. b. online learning | |
| 21. c. electric | |

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|-------------|------------------|
| 1. d. -ment | 2. b. well-known |
| 3. d. save | 4. b. -ic |
| 5. c. dis- | |

Exercise on (Language)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. (ride) | will ride |
| 2. (lived) | will live |
| 3. (be the weather) | will the weather be |
| 4. (Cairo be) | will Cairo be |
| 5. (be able) | will be able |

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 6. (not be able) | will not be able |
| 7. (not be) | won't be |
| 8. (working) | work |
| 9. (not be) | won't be |
| 10. (took) | take |
| 11. (being) | be |
| 12. (looking) | look |
| 13. (be) | will be |
| 14. (to use) | use |
| 15. (are) | will be |
| 16. (live) | will live |
| 17. (not able to) | won't be able to |

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Finish the following dialogue :

- How can I help you ?
- The ice on mountains will melt.
- How ?
- Yes, it does.
- Yes, you are right.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

- | | |
|----------------|-----------|
| 1. will | 2. future |
| 3. comfortable | 4. have |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. a. -ant | 2. b. online learning |
| 3. b. examines | 4. a. dangerous |
| 5. b. dis- | 6. b. solution |

4. Write (110) words on the following :

Students' own answers

Lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. c. internship | 2. b. qualifications |
| 3. b. distances | 4. a. ambitions |

5. c. link
7. d. dream
9. b. reuse
11. d. explore
13. c. off
15. b. marathon
17. d. qualification
18. c. internship
20. c. volunteer
6. b. redo
8. a. accountant
10. a. amateur
12. b. for
14. d. as
16. b. set up
19. b. explore
21. b. disabled

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. re-
3. b. connected to the internet
4. c. -ant
6. b. new
8. a. replay
2. b. amateur
5. b. dis-
7. c. rewrite

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Finish the following dialogue :

1. Of course.
2. Here you are.
3. No.
4. When will it be available ?
5. Do you have delivery services ?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. distance
3. b. save
5. c. fail
2. d. -ant
4. c. invent
6. a. dis-

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. (able to) will be able to
2. (are) will be
3. (you be able to) will you be able to
4. (did) to do
5. (are able to land) will be able to land

4. Write (110) words on the following :
Students' own answers

Lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. controls
3. a. drones
5. b. electric
7. b. worry
9. c. pollution
11. b. sign
13. a. Make
15. b. law
17. a. Definitely
19. b. better
2. b. laws
4. d. completely
6. b. drive
8. b. take
10. b. introduce
12. b. answer
14. b. makes
16. c. Probably
18. b. Likely
20. c. busier

Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. -y
3. d. dis-
5. b. agree
2. c. im-
4. d. -ly
6. d. -less

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Finish the following dialogue :

1. Sure.
2. I want you to drive me to school.
3. When will you be ready ?
4. What about you ?
5. Thanks.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

1. pollute
3. reuse
2. into
4. sure

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| 1. d. Likely | 2. a. answer |
| 3. d. reject | 4. c. less |
| 5. c. Im- | 6. b. similarity |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| 1. (won) | win |
| 2. (able to) | will be able to |
| 3. (you able to) | will you be able to |
| 4. (competing) | compete |
| 5. (doing) | to do |

5. Write (110) words on the following :

Students' own answers

Test on Unit 12

1. Finish the following dialogue :

- What for ?
- I lost it.
- Will you give it to me ?
- When will you bring it back ?
- Don't forget it at school.

2. Read and complete the text with words form the following list :

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| 1. improve | 2. should |
| 3. busy | 4. online |

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- c. the computer and the internet have become necessary in our life
- b. installing computers in classrooms
- a. make classrooms better place

b. Answer the following questions :

- Student's own answer.
- They will use them in a classroom to get better grades and then the classroom will be a better place to learn.
- Student's own answer.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1. c. signs | 2. b. damage |
| 3. d. skill | 4. d. dis- |
| 5. b. damaging | 6. b. -er |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. (isn't able to) | won't be able to |
| 2. (Is) | Will |
| 3. (able to) | be able to |
| 4. (joins) | join |
| 5. (being) | be able to |

4. Write (110) words on the following :

Students' own answers